GENESYS
AEROSYSTEMS
a Moog Company

IDU-450 EFIS Software Version 9.0A (Fixed Wing)

Pilot Operating Guide and Reference

(Fixed Wing)

EFIS Software Version 9.0A

Document 64-000103-090A

This pilot guide must be carried in the aircraft and made available to the pilot at all times. It can only be used in conjunction with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) approved Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM). Refer to the applicable AFM or Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement (AFMS) for aircraft specific information, such as unique ground tests, limitations, and emergency procedures.

See Section 9 Appendix for guidelines to print the PDF version of this guide.

Cover Image: Near Mount Cook, New Zealand

For service or repairs, contact an authorized Genesys Aerosystems dealer. For product support or inquiries regarding this pilot guide, contact Genesys Aerosystems.

One S-TEC Way, Municipal Airport, Mineral Wells TX 76067
Phone: (800) 872-7832 Fax: (940) 325-3904
www.genesys-aerosystems.com

Revision Record

Rev	Notes/Pages changed, added, or deleted by current revision	Date	Author

Retain this record in front of pilot guide. Upon receipt of a revision, insert changes and complete table below.

Revision or Edition	Revision Date	Insertion Date/Initials

Section 1 Introduction

1.1. Introduction

The Genesys Aerosystems Electronic Flight Instrument System (EFIS) is a “pilot-centered” system. While still highly automated, it presents the pilot with information necessary to make decisions and take appropriate actions. For example, the Highway-in-the-Sky (HITS) allows for highly automated approaches, but its predictive nature provides the pilot awareness of upcoming maneuvers. Instead of overloading the pilot with information and options, the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS presents only necessary information to reduce workload, decrease task complexity, and minimize confusion, which results in safer flying with less stress and fatigue.

1.2. EFIS/FMS Description

Figure 1-1: IDU-680 Input Identification

The default mode is GPS/SBAS until an RNP procedure is selected from the database when the mode changes to RNP. Each mode is clearly annunciated in each pilot’s primary field of view.

The integrated display unit (IDU) has 8 buttons along the vertical sides referenced as L1 through L4 starting at the top left corner of the display moving down and R1 through R4 from the top right corner moving down the display from a pilot’s perspective.

There are two knobs along the bottom. The left knob ❷ only controls the backlighting intensity. References throughout this guide refer to the right-hand knob ❶ and when to push and/or rotate for desired outcomes.

On the bezel between the two center knobs, a slip indicator or blank housing acts as the USB door. When lifted prior to power-up, the ground maintenance mode is initiated after power-up. If a limits change, software, or database update is planned, the USB drive must be inserted prior to power-up.

A sensor on the face of the IDU bezel measures ambient light levels. Use ❷ to control the brightness of the panel or display lighting. To adjust display lighting (illumination of the LCD display) without pushing rotate ❷ as described with panel lighting. Lighting may be controlled locally or remotely with a default state being with the local control. To adjust panel lighting (illumination of legends, knobs, inclinometer, and buttons) push and rotate ❷ clockwise to increase or counter clockwise to decrease.

NOTE:

If entering ground maintenance mode with bright light shining or reflecting directly into the display, shield the light sensor to avoid the IDU from going directly into the flight mode.

1.3. About This Guide

Operation of the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS is described in detail and divided into sections as follows:

TABLE OF CONTENTS: Locate areas by topic

INTRODUCTION (Section 1): Basic explanation of the pilot guide.

SYSTEM OVERVIEW (Section 2): Description of system and hardware; IDU behavior during initialization, warning alerts, time-critical warning alerts, master visual and aural alerts caution alerts, and advisory alerts with conditions; coloring conventions; abbreviations and acronyms; and database update procedures.

DISPLAY SYMBOLOGY (Section 3): Identification of each element of the PFD and MFD, and explanation of symbology.

REVERSIONARY MODES (Section 4): Views of displays with various sensor failed conditions and resulting symbology, as well as, examples of various configurations and display formats used with specific tables showing affected functions. Explanation of what to expect when a particular sensor fails and what changes on the display immediately or after a specified amount of time.

MENU FUNCTIONS AND STEP-BY-STEP PROCEDURES (Section 5): Menu structure of each feature and step-by-step procedures for operation of each task. Basic description of all encoder and button functions with menu tile definitions.

QUICK START TUTORIAL (Section 6): Basics necessary for flying a flight with this system. Includes simple steps to manage displays for existing flight conditions to quickly gain familiarity with where to locate controls to manipulate the system for each operation.

IFR PROCEDURES (Section 7): Detailed information and instruction about selecting and flying instrument procedures with examples of the most popular published procedures with views of referenced published procedures. Includes descriptions of selection of DPs (SIDs), published instrument approach, standard terminal arrival procedures, as well as, how the active flight plan quickly reflects changes to ATC clearances.

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (Section 8): Description of the TAWS (all classes) functionality for this fixed wing aircraft with all configurations. Defines the various parameters, which automatically apply to each mode of flight.

APPENDIX (Section 9): Contains support material and other useful information about system operation, guidance from Jeppesen, and supplemental information such as flight planning; magnetic vs. true north modes; airspeed/altitude miscompare thresholds; EFIS Training Tool; and downloading routes and user waypoints.

APPENDICES: Traffic, Remote Bugs Panel, WX-500 Lightning Strikes, Datalink, Weather Radar, Round Dials, and Search and Rescue Patterns. Sections on equipment and features not installed in every aircraft and may be removed at the discretion of the end-user.

INDEX: Alphabetical listing of terms or keywords with corresponding page numbers.

GLOSSARY: Alphabetical listing of definitions for terms.

Section 2 System Overview

2.1. Abbreviations and Acronyms

0R	No Radius
3D	Three-Dimensional
AC	Advisory Circular
ACTV	Active
ADAHRS	Air Data Attitude Heading Reference System
ADC	Air Data Computer
ADF	Automatic Direction Finder
ADS-B	Automatic Dependent Surveillance-Broadcast
AFCS	Automatic Flight Control System
AFM	Aircraft Flight Manual
AFMS	Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement
AGL	Above Ground Level
AHRS	Attitude Heading Reference System
AIRAC	Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control
AIRMET	Airmen’s Meteorological Information
ALT	Pressure Altitude
ALT SEL	Altitude Selection
AMLCD	Active Matrix Liquid Crystal Display
ANP	Actual Navigation Performance
ANT	Antenna
AOA	Angle of Attack
AP	Autopilot
APP	Waypoint is part of an Instrument Approach Procedure
APPR	Approach
APT	Airport
APV	Approach with Vertical Guidance
ARINC	Aeronautical Radio, Inc.
ARL	Auto Range Limiting (RDR-2100)
ARTCC	Air Route Traffic Control Center
AS	SAE Aerospace Standard
ASEL	Aircraft Selected Altitude

ATC	Air Traffic Control
ATT	Attitude
Baro	Barometric setting
Baro-VNAV	Barometric Vertical Navigation
BC	Backcourse navigation
BIT	Built-in-test
BRT	Brightness
BTM	Bottom
C	Celsius
CA	Course to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
CALC	as in RAIM (R2)
CAS	Crew Alerting System
CD	Course to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
CCW	Counter Clockwise
CDA	Continuous Descent Approach
CDI	Course Deviation Indicator
CF	Course to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
CI	Course to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)
CLR	Clear
CNX	Cancel
COM	Communication
CONT	Continue
CPLT	Co-Pilot
CPM	Computer Processor Module
CPU	Central Processing Unit
CR	Course to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
CRC	Cyclic Redundancy Check
CRS	Course
CSA	Conflict Situation Awareness (ADS-B)
CTRST	Contrast
CW	Clockwise
dBZ	Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z)
DCLTR	Declutter
DCND	Descend

DEC HT	Decision Height Bug
DEL	Delete
DESIG	Designate
DF	Direct to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
DFCS	Digital Flight Control System
DFLT	Default
DG	Directional Gyro
DH	Decision Height
DLNK	Datalink
DME	Distance Measuring Equipment
DO	RTCA Document
DOD	Department of Defense
DP	Departure Procedure
DR	Dead Reckoning
EFIS	Electronic Flight Instrument System
EGM	Earth Gravity Model
EGNOS	European Geostationary Navigation Overlay Service
EGPWS	Enhanced Ground Proximity Warning System
EQPMNT	Equipment
ETA	Estimated Time of Arrival
ETE	Estimated Time Enroute
ETT	EFIS Training Tool
EXCD	Exceedance
EXPND	Expand (used with Datalink)
F	Fahrenheit
FA	Course from a Fix to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FAF	Final Approach Fix
FAR	Federal Aviation Regulation
FAWP	Final Approach Waypoint (same as FAF)
FC	Course Fix to along Track Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
FD	Course from a Fix to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg); Flight Director
FDE	Fault Detection and Exclusion

FG	Fixed Gear
FG + F	Fixed Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position
FIS	Flight Information Service
FIS-B	Flight Information Service-Broadcast
FL	Flight Level
FLTA	Forward Looking Terrain Awareness
FM	Course from Fix to Manual termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
FMS	Flight Management System
FOV	Field of View
FPL	Flight Plan
fpm	Feet per minute
FPM	Flight Path Marker
FPNM	Feet Per Nautical Mile
FRT	Fixed-Radius Transition
FSD	Full-Scale Deflection
FT	Feet
FTE	Flight Technical Error
FTP	Fictitious Threshold Point
FNCT	Function
GAGAN	India’s GPS and GEO-Augmented Navigation System
GARP	GNSS Azimuth Reference Point
GBAS	Australia’s Ground Based Augmentation System
GLS	GNSS Landing System
GMAP	Ground Map mode (RDR-2100)
GMETAR	Graphical METAR (also GMTR)
GMF	Ground Maintenance Function
GN	Gain
GND	Ground
GNSS	Global Navigation Satellite System
GPI	Glide Path Intercept
GPIP	Glide Path Intercept Point
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPSV	Global Positioning System Vertical Navigation
GPWS	Ground Proximity Warning System

GS	Glide Slope
H	Hold
HA	Terminates at an altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
HF	Holding, Pattern to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
HM	Altitude or Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
HAL	Horizontal Alert Limit
HAT	Height Above Threshold
HDG	Heading
HFOM	Horizontal Figure of Merit
hh:mm:ss	Hours: Minutes: Seconds
HITS	Highway in the Sky
HLTH	Health
HORIZ	Horizontal
HOTAS	Hands on Throttle and Stick
hPa	Hectopascal
HPL	Horizontal Protection Level
HSI	Horizontal Situation Indicator
HUD	Head Up Display
IAP	Instrument Approach Procedure; Initial Approach Point
IAS	Indicated Airspeed
IAWP	Initial Approach Waypoint (same as IAP)
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization
ID	Identity or Identification
IDU	Integrated Display Unit
IF	Initial Fix
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IM	Inner Marker
INFO	Information
INHBT	Inhibit
inHg	Inches of Mercury
INIT	Initialize
IO	Input/Output
IP	Initial Point

IPV	Instrument Procedure with Vertical Guidance
ISA	International Standard Atmosphere
IVSI	Instantaneous Vertical Speed Indicator
IWP	Intermediate Approach Waypoint
K	Kilo=1000
KB	Kilobyte
kHz	Kilohertz
KIAS	Knots Indicated Airspeed
KT	Knot - Nautical Miles per Hour
KTAS	Knots True Airspeed
LAT	Latitude
lbs	Pounds
LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
LCL	Local
LDA	Localizer-type Directional Aid
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LGND	Legend
LIFR	Low IFR conditions (Ceiling < 100' or visibility < 1 mile)
LNAV	Lateral Navigation
LOC	Localizer
LOI	Loss of Integrity
LON	Loss of Navigation; Longitude
LP	Localizer Performance
LPV	Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance
LTP	Landing Threshold Point
LVL	Level
MA	Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an Instrument Approach Procedure
MAGVAR	Magnetic Declination (Variation)
MAHP	Missed Approach Holding Point
MAHWP	Missed Approach Holding Waypoint (same as MAHP)
MAN	Manual
MAP	Missed Approach Point; Missed Approach Procedure
MASPS	Minimum Aviation System Performance Standard

MAWP	Missed Approach Waypoint (also MAWPT)
mbar	Millibars
MDA	Minimum Descent Altitude
MESO	Mesocyclonic
METAR	Routine hourly weather report
MFD	Multifunction Display
MIN	Minimum
MM	Middle Marker
M_{MO}	Maximum Operating Mach Number
M_{NO}	Maximum Structural Cruising Mach Number
MOA	Military Operations Area
MOT	Mark On Target
MSAS	Japan’s MTSAT-based Satellite Augmentation System
MSG	Message
MSL	Mean Sea Level
MVFR	Marginal Visual Flight Rules
NAS	U.S. National Airspace System
NAV	Navigation
NAVAID	Device or system providing navigational assistance
ND	Navigation Display
NDB	Nondirectional Beacon
NEXRAD	(Next-Generation Radar) network of weather radars operated by the National Weather Service (NWS) (also NXRD)
NIMA	National Imagery and Mapping Agency
NM	Nautical Mile
NRST	Nearest
nT	Nanoteslas (ref. World magnetic Model)
NWS	National Weather Service
OAT	Outside Air Temperature
OBS	Omnibearing Selector
ODP	Obstacle Departure Procedure
OF	Over-fly
OM	Outer Marker
OT	Other Traffic (Traffic Function)

PA	Proximate Advisory (Traffic Function)
PDA	Premature Descent Alert
PFD	Primary Flight Display (also refers to the primary IDU with software that only shows primary flight instrumentation)
PI	Procedure Turn (ARINC-424 Leg)
PLI	Pitch Limit Indicator
PLT	Pilot
PM	Personality Module
PN	Pan
PROC	Procedure
PRN	Pseudo-Random-Noise (Satellite communications)
PRS	Press
PRV	Previous
PSH	Push
PTK	Parallel offset (Parallel Track)
PTRS	Pointers
PWR	Power
QFE	Altimeter setting provides height above reference point
QNE	Altimeter setting provides pressure altitude readout
QNH	Altimeter setting provides MSL altitude at a reporting point
RA	Resolution Advisory (Traffic Function)
RADALT	Radar Altimeter (also RALT)
RAD-DST	Radial and Distance
RAIM	Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring
RBP	Remote Bug Panel
RCP	Radar Control Panel
RDR	Radar
RF	Precision Arc to Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
RG	Retractable Gear
RG + F	Retractable Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position
RHT	Radar Height
RMI	Radio Magnetic Indicator
RNAV	Area Navigation
RNP	Required Navigation Performance

RTC	Real Time Computing
RTCA	Radio Technical Commission for Aeronautics
RTD	Resistive Thermal Detector
RW	Runway
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers
SAR	Search and Rescue
SAT	Saturation
SATLT	Satellite
SBAS	Satellite-Based Augmentation System
SCC	System Configuration Card (personality module)
SECAM	Analog color television system used in France
SIC	Side-in-Command
SID	Standard Instrument Departure (DP)
SIGMET	Significant Meteorological Advisory
SSM	Sign Status Matrix
STAB	Stability
STAR	Standard Terminal Arrival Routes
STBY	Stand-by
STD	Standard
STRKS	Strikes (Lightning detection)
SVS	Synthetic Vision System
SYMB	Symbol
SYNC	Synchronize
SYRD	System Requirements Document
TA	Traffic Advisory (Traffic Function)
TACAN	Ultra-High Frequency Tactical Air Navigational Aid
TAFs	Terminal Aerodrome Forecasts
TAS	Traffic Advisory System; True Airspeed
TAWS	Terrain Awareness and Warning System
TCA	Terminal Control Areas
TCAD	Traffic Collision Alert Device
TCAS	Traffic Collision Alert System
TD	Terrain Data
T/D	Top of Descent

TERPS	Terminal Instrument Procedures
TF	Track to a Fix; Track from Fix to New Fix (ARINC-424 Leg)
TFR	Temporary Flight Restriction
TGT	Target
TIS	Traffic Information Service
TIS-B	Traffic information Service-Broadcast
TLT	Tilt
TRANS	Transition
TRK	Track
TRNDO	Tornadic
TSO	Technical Standard Order
TTA	Time to Alert
TURB	Turbulence
USB	Universal Serial Bus flash drive
USR	User Waypoint
UTC	Universal Time Coordinated
VA	Heading to Altitude (ARINC-424 Leg)
V_A	Design Maneuvering Speed. Speed above which it is unwise to make full application of any single flight control
VAL	Vertical Alert Limit
V_{APP}	Target approach airspeed
VD	Heading to DME Distance (ARINC-424 Leg)
VDI	Vertical Deviation Indicator
VERT	Vertical
V_{FE}	Maximum flap extended speed
VFOM	Vertical Figure of Merit
VFR	Visual Flight Rules
VHF	Very High Frequency
V_{HOLD}	The aircraft's normal speed (in airspeed units configured in EFIS limits) for flying holding patterns. This value is used for calculating the turn radius of holding patterns.
VI	Heading to Intercept (ARINC-424 Leg)
VLOC	VOR/Localizer
VLON	Vertical Loss of Navigation
VM	Heading to Manual Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)

V_{MO}	Maximum operating limit speed
VNAV	Vertical Navigation (also VNV)
V_{NE}	Never exceed speed
V_{NO}	Maximum structural cruising speed or maximum speed for normal operations
VOR	VHF Omnidirectional Radio
VORTAC	Collocated VOR and TACAN
VP	VFR waypoints (five digits beginning with “VP”)
VPL	Vertical Protection Level
V_{PROC}	Procedure Speed
V_R	Rotation speed
VR	Heading to Radial Termination (ARINC-424 Leg)
V_{REF}	Landing reference speed or threshold crossing speed
VS	Vertical Speed
VSI	Vertical Speed Indicator
VTF	Vectors to Final
V_{YSE}	Best rate of climb speed with a single operating engine a light twin-engine aircraft
WAAS	Wide Area Augmentation System
WGS84	World Geodetic System 1984
WOG	Weight on Ground
WOW	Weight on Wheels
WPT	Waypoint
WX	Weather
WXA	Weather-alert (RDR-2100)
XFILL	Crossfill

2.2. System Overview

The IDU-450 EFIS is a complete flight and navigation instrumentation system intuitively providing information via computer-generated displays. The displays include 3D, enhanced situational awareness primary flight display (PFD) and multi-function display (MFD), which may be configured to show a moving map, HSI, terrain, traffic, datalink, WX-500 Lightning Strikes, or weather radar.

At any given time, each system only has one IDU transmit enabled to send RS-232 and RS-422 system transmissions. By default, the PFD is transmit enabled and, if it subsequently fails, the respective MFD becomes transmit enabled.

Table 2-1 describes the EFIS limits set for all screen captured views for this pilot guide development except where different settings are noted.

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
Screen Position Settings:	
Screen Number	#1 or #2 as specified
Aircraft Type	Generic
Speed Settings:	
Airspeed Scale Type	FAR 23.1545 with V_{NE}
Airspeed Units	Knots
Pilot-side analog configuration	Tapes
Digital configuration	Pure Digital (or Rolling where depicted)
Optional Sensor Settings:	
Datalink Receiver	ADS-B
TAWS Type	Class A (RG + Flaps)
Traffic Sensor	TCAD/TAS (RS-232)
WX-500 (STRIKES)	Installed
SAR Patterns	Enabled
NAV Preview	Disabled
ADF Navigation	N/A
TACAN Navigation	N/A
Airframe Settings:	
Landing Gear Configuration	Retractable
Temperature Units	°C
Same *** CAS Caution Enable	Disabled (If enabled “Cautions”)
Mach Display enable	Disabled
Map Encoder Rotation	CW increase Range (MAP/WX RDR)
Maximum AGL Display	2500’
Minimum Obstacle Height	0’
PLI Display	Enabled
Roll Indicator Type	Sky Pointer
Slip-Skid Display	Enabled
Minimum Runway length	3000’
Positive G-Limit	3.5
Negative G-Limit	-1.5
Show Full MFD Status	Enabled
Show MFD Density Alt	Enabled
Show MFD IS Temp Deviation	Enabled
Show MFD True Airspeed	Enabled

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
Autopilot Settings:	
Autopilot Type	Analog (Or not installed as noted)
Flight Director	Enabled
Flight Director on Side-in-Command	Disabled
Basic Sensor Settings:	
Remote Tuning	Cobham CD/Honeywell…
ADF System	Dual
ADC System	Dual
Baro Autosetting on Startup	Enabled
Synch pilot/Copilot Baro	Enabled
AHRS System	Dual
Analog interface unit	Installed
DME System	Dual RC DME4000
EFIS System	Dual (Pilot-Side defaults to #1 Sensors)
Cockpit Arrangement	Side-by-Side
Pilot Position	Left
GPS System	Dual
Radar Altimeter	Dual
Dual DH	Disabled
Baro AGL	Enabled
VOR System	Dual
TACAN System	Dual
Video Input Settings:	
VIDEO-1	Force NTSC Label FLIR Zoom-Disabled
VIDEO-2	
VIDEO-3	
VIDEO-4	
VIDEO-5	
Weather Radar Settings:	
WX RDR Enable Screen #1	Disable
WX RDR Enable Screen#2	Enabled
WX RDR Enable Screen#3	Disabled
WX RDR Enable Screen #4	Disabled
WX RDR Type	Honeywell RDR-2100
External Radar Control Panel	Not Installed
Radar Scan Width	100° (± 50°)
Discrete Input Settings:	
GPI# 1	5. All Landing Gear Down
GPI# 2	8. TAWS Landing Flaps
GPI# 3	9. TAWS Glide slope Inhibit
GPI# 4	6. TAWS Inhibit

Table 2-1: Pertinent EFIS Limits Settings

Category	Setting
GPI# 5	19. Crossfill Inhibit
GPI#6	20. Weight on Ground/Wheels
Aircraft Fuel Settings:	
Fuel Totalizer	Enabled
Fuel Tank Count	2
Fuel Flow Count	2
Unmonitored Fuel	FALSE
Volume Units	Lbs. (Gasoline)
Aircraft Total Fuel QTY	136
Aircraft Main Fuel Quantity	74
Totalizer Fuel Increments	1
Aircraft low Fuel Caution	28
Aircraft Low Fuel Alarm	14
Wing Tank Split Caution	Disabled
Totalizer Mismatch Caution	Disabled

Figure 2-1: IDU-450 Primary Flight Display (PFD)

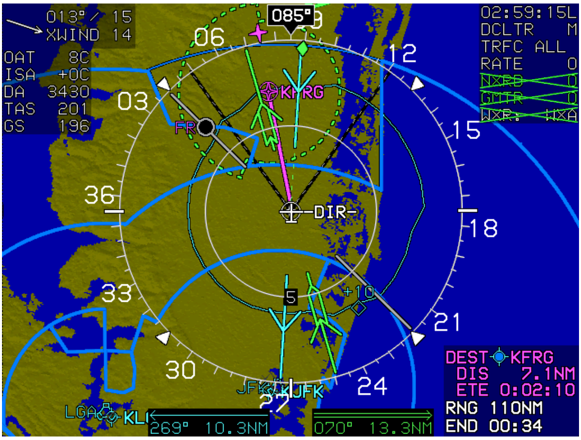


Figure 2-2: IDU-450 Multifunction Flight Display (MFD)

2.2.1. Functional Integration and Display Redundancy

IDUs incorporate a high-brightness AMLCD screen; bezel buttons; knobs and enter switches; central processing unit; numerous RS-232, RS-422, and ARINC 429 receive and transmit ports; and discrete IO ports. Hardware and software are identical for all IDUs, and functionality is determined by configuration settings setup during installation. The IDUs are independently connected to all external sensors and independently perform all integrated functions (e.g., TAWS, FMS, ADS-B In, weather radar, traffic, or strikes). This provides an exceptional level of redundancy as compared to traditional display architectures where most of these functions were performed by external line replaceable units.

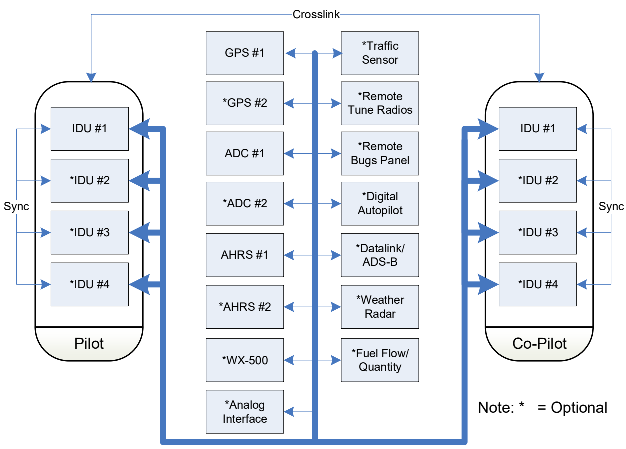


Figure 2-3: System Diagram

Figure 2-3 depicts a typical architecture used by IDUs. The IDUs depend upon intra-system (between IDUs on a side – depicted as “Sync”) and inter-system (between IDUs on opposite sides – depicted as “Crosslink”) to achieve synchronization of the integrated functions. The IDUs also depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over transmit-enabled responsibilities. The transmit enabled IDU is the IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts.

2.3. Application Software Air Mode and Ground Mode

Numerous symbology elements change behavior depending upon whether the aircraft is on the ground (ground mode) or in flight (air mode). The mode is determined separately from the system initialization modes. This parameter is continuously calculated as follows:

1) If a Weight on Wheels/Weight on Ground is configured in EFIS limits, the air or ground modes are determined solely from the input configured in EFIS limits.

2) Otherwise, mode is determined as follows:

    a) If airspeed is valid and AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when indicated airspeed is less than 30 knots, and AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

    b) If airspeed is invalid but AGL altitude is valid, ground mode is set when AGL altitude is less than 75 feet.

    c) Under any other circumstance, air mode is set by default.

2.3.1. IDU Initialization

Upon power-up, the hardware, including file system, IO, and graphics, is initialized. Immediately after graphics initialization, a logo screen with “INITIALIZING” is displayed with the Genesys Aerosystems logo, software version number, and part number. The software version number delineates: (1) major revision number (i.e., “9.0”), and (2) minor revision letter (i.e., “A”).

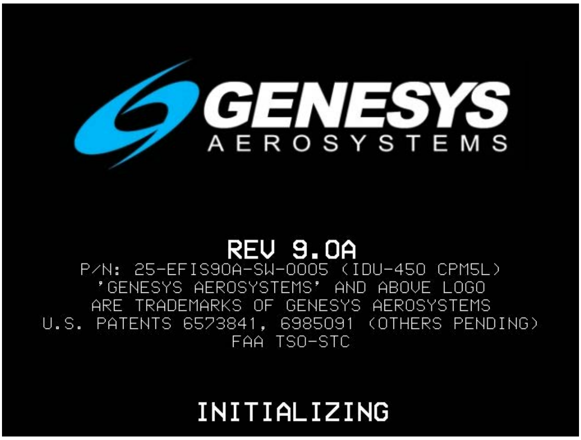


Figure 2-4: IDU-450 Initialization Screen (CPM5L)

Table 2-2: IDU Software Version and Part Number

Version Number	Part Number
Rev 9.0A	25-EFIS90A-SW-0002 or 25-EFIS90A-SW-0005

NOTE:

Software part numbers can change after initial certification and will be amended with Installation Manual changes or Service Bulletin issuance.

Aircraft configurations are initially read from flash drive storage to provide IDUs with a default configuration setup in the event of personality module failure. The personality module contains the CPU/IDU number (Table 2-3) and system designation (pilot or co-pilot). The IDU number is identified below the part number on the CRC screen (Figure 2-6).

Table 2-3: IDU Number Designation

CPU Number/IDU#	Definition
“0”	Single-screen installation
“1”	IDU only shows PFD
“2”	First MFD in multi-screen installation
“3”	Second MFD in a multi-screen installation
“4”	Third MFD in a multi-screen installation

Aircraft parameters (latitude, longitude, altitude), as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are read for a good system initialization, even if system sensors are failed or not yet initialized. For future updates (i.e., updating software version 8.0K to 8.0L), all aircraft settings re-initialize to default values. Otherwise, aircraft settings, as they existed prior to the last system shutdown, are used to initialize the system except for the following default values:

1) Selected sensors are initialized to default values.
2) Active flight plan structure and associated values are cleared.
3) ADAHRS set to slaved mode, and slewing value is initialized to zero.
4) Timers are turned off.
5) Datalink and map panning modes are set to off.
6) Fuel caution and alarm thresholds are set to default values.
7) Heading bug is set to 360° (analog autopilot [AP] or Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled) or turned off.
8) Heading mode is turned off.
9) HSI navigation source is set to FMS.
10) HSI Preview navigation source is turned off. (If enabled)
11) Minimum altitude setting is turned off.
12) FMS OBS setting is set to automatic.
13) VOR/LOC 1 OBS setting is set to 360°.
14) VOR/LOC 2 OBS setting is set to 360°.
15) Parallel offset is set to 0 NM.
16) PFD zoom mode is set to off.
17) Manual RNP is set to off.
18) If in round dial mode, analog AGL is set to off.
19) If in round dial mode, analog G indicator is set to off.
20) Analog G indicator is set to off.
21) PFD skyway is set to on.
22) Airspeed bug is turned off.

23) Target and preselected altitude bugs are turned off

24) TRUE NORTH mode is turned off.

25) V-speeds are cleared.

26) Vertical speed bug is turned off.

27) Weather radar scale is initialized to 80NM.

28) If Telephonics RDR-1600 is installed, weather radar anti-clutter is set to off, automatic range limit is set to off, auto tilt is set to off, sector scan is set to off and track angle is set to off. These weather radar parameters are not used by Telephonics RDR-1600.

29) Crosslink is initialized to on.

30) If Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is enabled, flight directors are initialized to single-cue.

31) Map modes are set to allowed values.

32) Traffic page flight level set to off.

33) G telltales are automatically reset so long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded.

34) All Datalink products selected for display.

The magnetic variation coefficients database is read from the flash drive storage and CRC-32 checked.

The IDU decides whether it is booting on the ground or in flight based on the air/ground mode parameter value from the last system shutdown. If booting on the ground, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with “**TESTING**” is displayed.

Figure 2-5: Logo Screen with “TESTING” (CPM5L)

2) CRC-32 values for application executable, limitations files, NavData files, obstruction files, sounds database, and terrain header files are checked.

   During this action, “**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO QUICK START**” is displayed below “**TESTING**.” Press any button to stop the ground booting and execute the flight booting.

3) If the BIT (built-in-test) check fails, the program exits with an error message and creates a BIT result file indicating failure.

4) If the BIT check passes, the program continues to initialize and creates a BIT result file indicating passage.

5) If “Baro Auto-Setting in EFIS limits is enabled, the system auto-sets the altimeter based on the terrain elevation at the startup point (only applicable at surveyed airports.) In case of QFE mode operation, the application autosets the altimeter to read zero altitude.

6) CRC screen displays:

   a) Software CRC-32;

   b) Aircraft type;

   c) Sounds database name and CRC-32;

   d) Magnetic variation coefficients version and CRC-32; and

e) Database versions and validity dates are displayed along with "**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO CONTINUE**."

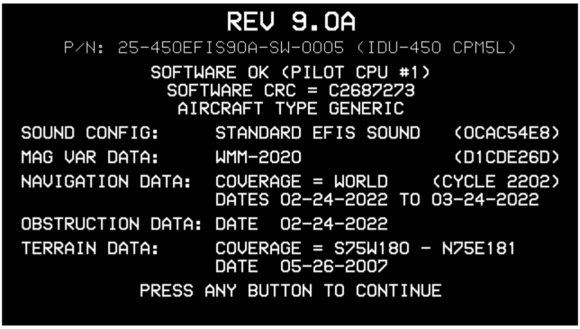


Figure 2-6: CRC Screen (CPM5L)

7) If all critical sensors (GPS, ADC, and AHRS) are in normal condition, the display screens are shown immediately.

8) If any critical sensor is not in normal condition, a logo screen with a two-minute countdown timer is displayed along with "**PRESS ANY BUTTON TO SKIP**."

Figure 2-7: Two-Minute Countdown Screen (CPM5L)

9) The display screens initialize at the earliest of:

a) when 2 minutes has elapsed;

b) when the pilot presses any button to escape the startup countdown; or

c) when all critical sensors are in normal condition.

10) Display screens initialize as follows:

    a) IDU #1: PFD screen

    b) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4): Initializes to MFD screen.

    c) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu is activated to remind the pilot to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

11) All active alerts are automatically acknowledged for 5 seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.

If booting in the air, the following actions happen:

1) A logo screen with "**QUICK START**" is displayed.

Figure 2-8: QUICK START Screen (CPM5L)

2) BIT result file created during the last ground boot is checked.

    a) **Failure** = indicates a failure, program exits with an error message.

    b) **Passage** = program continues.

3) The display screens initialize immediately as follows:

    a) IDU #1: PFD screen

    b) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4): Initializes to MFD screen.

    c) Other IDUs (IDU #0, #2, #3, or #4) with fuel totalizer functions enabled: Fuel set menu is activated to remind the pilot to set the fuel totalizer quantity.

4) All active alerts are automatically acknowledged for 5 seconds to reduce nuisance alerting.

> **NOTE:**
>
> After IDU initialization, if any menu is active, press **EXIT (R1)** on each display and wait at least 20 seconds to allow PFDs to synchronize with MFDs and allow pilot and co-pilot sides to synchronize. If any IDU menu is active, intra-system and inter-system synchronization messages are paused.

2.4. General Arrangement

The IDU-450 is 6.375” W x 5.65” H x 4.75” D and weighs less than 7.5 lbs. The IDU-450 has the capacity to accommodate integrated peripherals mechanically attached to the IDU but have electrical isolation and redundancy. These modules may include:

1) Integrated ADAHRS sensor module
2) Integrated GPS/SBAS sensor module
3) Serial protocol converters
4) Weather radar module

Data storage is sufficiently sized to hold world terrain, navigation, and obstruction databases. Because the receive ports are connected to the digital sensor modules in parallel, each IDU is independent from all others.

2.4.1. Data Source Monitors

In installations with redundant sensors, IDUs continuously monitor the following sensors to detect disagreements:

1) Airspeed
2) Altitude
3) Attitude
4) Barometric setting (pilot vs. co-pilot sides)
5) GPS position, track, and ground speed
6) Heading
7) Localizer and glide slope deviations
8) Radar altitude

2.4.2. IDU Intra-System Communications

Communication between IDUs installed on the same side is referred to as intra-system communications. In a dual-sided system (pilot and co-pilot) configuration, the crosslink side-to-side communications is referred to as inter-system communications. IDUs on the same side (pilot side and co-pilot side individually) monitor each other using intra-system communications and perform the following checks:

1) Intra-system communications freshness
2) Screen counter incrementing (i.e., screen not frozen)
3) Airspeed agreement
4) Altitude agreement
5) Attitude agreement
6) Barometric setting agreement
7) GPS position, track, and ground speed agreement
8) Heading agreement
9) Localizer and glide slope deviation agreement
10) Radar altitude agreement

2.5. Color Conventions

The EFIS uses a consistent set of colors to display information. Any color representation may not be identical as it appears on the IDU.

Table 2-4: Color Conventions

Color	Use(s)	Examples
WHITE	Items set by pilot and held by the EFIS or items where device feedback is not expected; marker beacon receiver high/low sensitivity modes; scales, associated labels and figures; pilot action; or data entry. When used for an analog bar indication, light gray (low-intensity white) is used instead, as a large white area on the screen may be overwhelming.	Scale markings (airspeed, altitude, heading, VSI, pitch, map ranges, etc.) User-selected values (airspeed, heading, altitude) Secondary flight data (TAS, wind, OAT, timers, etc.)
CYAN	VOR #1, TAC #1 and IFR navigation dataset items. Information received from the device that is not related to a pilot setting.	Airports with instrument approach procedures, VORs, and intersections.

Table 2-4: Color Conventions

Color	Use(s)	Examples
MAGENTA	Indicates calculated or derived data and certain navigation database items. Light magenta for visibility	Active waypoint related symbols. Course data (desired track, CDI). VFR airports, NDBs, VNAV altitudes, ACTV freq/codes, operating modes, and transmit enable indications.
GRAY	Background for airspeed and altitude readout and for conformal runway depiction Light gray for usable portion of active runway, dark gray for other runway surfaces ADF #1 and 2 pointers	
GREEN	VOR #2, TAC #2, and to indicate normal or valid operation (airspeed, altitude tape coloring, status indication, etc.) Light green for visibility.	Aircraft ground track, skyway symbology, and airspeeds in green arc.
DARK GREEN	Terrain indication on moving map (slope between adjacent terrain determines the shade used).	
AMBER (YELLOW)	Identifies conditions requiring immediate pilot awareness and possible subsequent action. Currently used for DME hold indications. Loss of GPS navigation condition in all navigation symbology, including FMS active waypoint coloring	
OLIVE	In various shades shows terrain within 2000’ and below aircraft altitude.	
BROWN	In a variety of shades indicates earth/terrain portion of PFD or when above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude on MFD.	
BLUE	In a variety of shades indicates sky portion of PFD, bodies of water on moving map, and advisory text on black background.	

Table 2-4: Color Conventions

Color	Use(s)	Examples
RED	Indicates aircraft limitations or conditions, which require immediate pilot action, or a device failure (red "X").	
BLACK	Field of view angle lines on moving map, figures on a gray background, and outlining borders and certain figures/elements on backgrounds with minimal contrast, e.g., airspeed, altitude, and menu tiles on the PFD/MFD.	

2.6. Warning/Caution/Advisory System

The IDU has an integrated audio/visual warning system, which monitors a wide variety of parameters and provides alerts for conditions that demand pilot action or awareness. The following alerts are provided and described below:

1) Warning Alerts
2) Time-Critical Warning Alerts
3) Time-Critical Caution Alerts
4) Master Visual and Audible/Voice Alerts
5) Caution Alerts
6) Advisory Alerts

All warnings, including time-critical warnings, activate the warning (red) light and master caution light. All cautions, including time-critical cautions, activate the caution (yellow) light and master caution light (when configured). Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the audible alert is interrupted, and the discrete outputs are deactivated.

2.6.1. Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Time-critical warning and caution alerts trigger the following elements (Table 2-6) and display in the pilot's primary field of view with a shaded background (Figure 2-9 and Figure 2-10). EFIS limits may have enabled the option for time-critical alerts to illuminate a master warning/master caution push button annunciator when equipped.

> **NOTE:**
>
> In the following tables, examples show shaded backgrounds on sky and terrain backgrounds for readability.

Table 2-5: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts in Primary Field of View

Alert Type	Text Color	Flash Rate	Audio Alert at Full Volume
WARNING WARNING	Red	2 Hz	Repeated until acknowledged
CAUTION CAUTION	Amber (Yellow)	1 Hz	Plays only once

Figure 2-9: Time-Critical Warning Alert

Figure 2-10: Time-Critical Caution Alert

Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	**Voice Alert**	**Condition** ** No time delay
OVERSPEED OVERSPEED	“Overspeed, Overspeed”	IAS exceeds redline ($\mathbf{V}_{NE}$/$\mathbf{V}_{MO}$/$\mathbf{M}_{MO}$) plus instrument error. **
STALL STALL	“Stall, Stall”	Activated above 100’ AGL if indicated airspeed is below the higher of $\mathbf{V}_{S1}$ or $\mathbf{V}_{S1}$ corrected for G-load + 5 kts. Deactivated if stall-warning EFIS limits is set to 0. **
PULL UP PULL UP	“Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up”	Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS 2 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Pull Up, Pull Up”	Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
GLIDESLOPE GLIDESLOPE	“Glide Slope, Glide Slope”	Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
OBSTRUCTION OBSTRUCTION	“Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction”	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC TRAFFIC	“Traffic, Traffic”	Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400’ AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200’ AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. **
CHECK GEAR CHECK GEAR	“Check Gear, Check Gear”	Activates if aircraft is below 500’ AGL, is descending, and is below $\mathbf{V}_{FE}$; and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.
OBSTRUCTION OBSTRUCTION	“Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction”	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TERRAIN TERRAIN	“Caution Terrain, Caution Terrain”	Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 2 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
SINK RATE SINK RATE	“Sink Rate, Sink Rate”	Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.

Table 2-6: Time-Critical Warning and Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert	Condition ** No time delay
GLIDESLOPE GLIDESLOPE	“Glide Slope, Glide Slope”	Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TOO LOW TOO LOW	“Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain”	Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 4-1 “Too Low Terrain” envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within TAWS PDA envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear	Within GPWS Mode 4-2 “Too Low Gear” envelope. Half-second time delay.
	“Too Low Flaps, Too Low Flaps”	Within GPWS Mode 4-3 “Too Low Flaps” envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC TRAFFIC	“Traffic, Traffic”	Not given if own aircraft below 400’ AGL nor if target is below 200’AGL (ground target). **

Time-critical warning and caution alerts are prioritized so only one alert at a time is active.

1) Stall
2) Overspeed
3) GPWS Mode 1 Warning
4) GPWS Mode 2 Warning
5) TAWS FLTA Warning
6) Obstruction Warning
7) TAWS FLTA Caution
8) Obstruction Caution
9) GPWS Mode 4-1
10) TAWS PDA.
11) GPWS Mode 4-2
12) GPWS Mode 4-3
13) GPWS Mode 1 Caution
14) GPWS Mode 2 Caution
15) GPWS Mode 3
16) GPWS Mode 5 Warning
17) GPWS Mode 5 Caution
18) Check Gear
19) Traffic Warning (Resolution Advisory)
20) Traffic Caution (Traffic Advisory)

2.6.2. Warning Alerts

Figure 2-11: Warning Alerts

Table 2-7: Warning Alert Elements

Type Alert	Location	Flash Rate	Audio Alert
WARNING WARNING	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	2 Hz	Until acknowledged

Table 2-8: Warning Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert	**Condition** ** No time delay
LOW FUEL	"Fuel Low, Fuel Low"	One of the following conditions is true: 1) A low fuel warning is active (EFIS limits) 2) A sensed fuel tank quantity is below its low fuel warning threshold 3) Total aircraft fuel is below the user-set emergency fuel threshold. 1-minute time delay.
Duplicate Time-Critical Warning Alerts (IDU#0):		
OVERSPEED	"Overspeed, Overspeed"	Indicated airspeed exceeds redline (V_{NE}/V_{MO}/M_{MO} as appropriate) plus instrument error. **
STALL	"Stall, Stall"	Activated above 100' AGL if IAS is below the higher of V_{S1} or V_{S1} corrected for G-load + 5 kts. Deactivated if stall-warning not enabled in EFIS limits. **
OBSTRUCTION	"Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction"	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
PULL UP	"Terrain, Terrain, Pull Up, Pull Up"	Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 2 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.

Table 2-8: Warning Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert**	**Condition** ** No time delay
	"Pull Up, Pull Up"	Within GPWS Mode 1 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
GLIDESLOPE	"Glide Slope, Glide Slope"	Within GPWS Mode 5 warning envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC	"Traffic, Traffic"	Resolution advisory. Not given if own aircraft at or below 400' AGL. Not given if target is at or below 200' AGL (ground target). Audio not generated with TCAS-II system. **

2.6.3. Caution Alerts

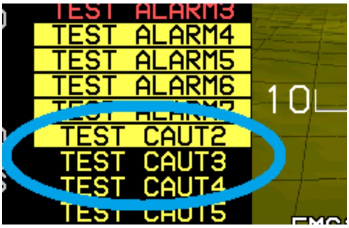


Figure 2-12: Caution Alerts

Table 2-9: Caution Alert Elements			
Type Alert	**Location**	**Flash Rate**	**Audio Alert**
CAUTION CAUTION	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	1 Hz	Plays only once at full volume.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
ADC1 FAIL ADC2 FAIL ADC1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid IAS, pressure altitude, nor VSI received from numbered ADC(s) for more than 1 second. ** [1]
ADS-B FAIL	Alert Tone	Enabled by ADS-B out fail warning limits setting. Mode-S transponder indicates bad ADS-B out status. Also, set by audio/radio interface with NGT-9000R transponder. 2-second time delay.
AHRS1 FAIL AHRS2 FAIL AHRS1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid bank, pitch, nor heading received from enumerated AHRS(s) for more than 1 second. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.** [1] [2]
AUX SENSOR	"Auxiliary Sensor Failure, Auxiliary Sensor Failure"	No valid message or bad status received from installed optional sensors. Sensor status displayed in faults menu. 5-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Applies to the following optional sensors: 1) RS-232 TAS 2) ADS-B system 3) WX-500 Lightning system 4) Analog interface system 5) Weather Radar 6) Weather Radar control panel

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
PLT1 OVRTMP PLT2 OVRTMP PLT3 OVRTMP PLT4 OVRTMP CPLT1 OVRTMP CPLT2 OVRTMP CPLT3 OVRTMP CPLT4 OVRTMP	Alert Tone	IDU core temperature greater than 95°C. 2-second time delay.
PLT MISCOMP CPLT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Only when fresh intra-system monitor messages are received. Indicates critical parameters used by displays on the indicated side exceed miscompare thresholds. Compares the following critical parameters: 1) Attitude (pitch and roll) 2) Heading 3) Pressure altitude 4) Indicated airspeed 5) Localizer (both inputs) 6) Glide slope (both inputs) 7) Radar altitude 8) Latitude 9) Longitude 10) Track 11) Ground speed 1-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [2]
ALT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates pressure altitude difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup.[1]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
ATT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates pitch or roll difference between AHRS is beyond limits (6°). 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup.[1]
CHECK TRIM↓ CHECK TRIM↑	"Check Pitch Trim"	Pitch mistrimmed for more than 3 continuous seconds (trim not responding). Trim is needed in indicated direction.
PLT1 SCC PLT2 SCC PLT3 SCC PLT4 SCC CPLT1 SCC CPLT2 SCC CPLT3 SCC CPLT4 SCC	Alert Tone	Indicates personality module for designated IDU (side and IDU #) could not be read upon power-up. Internal limits are in use by the system. Only active on the ground.
PLT1 TAWS PLT2 TAWS PLT3 TAWS PLT4 TAWS CPLT1 TAWS CPLT2 TAWS CPLT3 TAWS CPLT4 TAWS	Alert Tone	Indicates on the designated IDU (side and IDU #), aircraft is currently beyond extent of terrain database or a failure condition is preventing TAWS FLTA function from operating. Half-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode.
COOLING FAN	Alert Tone	Triggered when external cooling fan is commanded by EFIS limits, but the cooling fan status indicates the cooling fan is not rotating. 1-minute time delay.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Table 2-10: Caution Alerts</th></tr>
<tr><th>Visual Alert</th><th>Voice Alert/
Alert Tone</th><th>Condition</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">** No time delay
[1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition
[2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot)
[3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits
[4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>FUEL SPLIT</td><td>Alert Tone</td><td>Compares the volume of fuel designated left wing tank fuel vs. volume of fuel designated right wing tank fuel to the fuel split caution threshold. Issued if the difference exceeds the fuel split caution threshold. Only performed if the fuel split caution threshold is non-zero and both left and right wing tank fuel is monitored and valid.
1-minute time delay.</td></tr>
<tr><td>LOW FUEL</td><td>“Fuel Low, Fuel Low”</td><td>A low fuel warning is not active and one of the following conditions is true:
1) One of the low fuel cautions as set in EFIS limits is active
2) One of the sensed fuel tank quantities is below its low fuel caution threshold
3) Total aircraft fuel is below the user-set minimum fuel threshold.
1-minute time delay.</td></tr>
<tr><td>PLT RANGE
CPLT RANGE</td><td>“Check Range, Check Range”</td><td>Based on flight plan in use on the indicated side, less than 30 minutes buffer (at current ground speed) between calculated range and distance to:
1) last waypoint if it is active; or
2) airport if on a missed approach; or
3) along-route distance to destination.
Not activated in climbing flight nor if below 60 kts ground speed.
5-minute time delay.</td></tr>
</table>

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
TOTALZR QTY	Alert Tone	Compares the volume of sensed fuel to the fuel totalizer calculation. Issued if the difference exceeds the totalizer mismatch caution threshold. Only performed if: 1) Totalizer mismatch caution threshold is non-zero; 2) Fuel totalizer is enabled; 3) Unmonitored fuel flag is false; 4) Fuel totalizer has a valid value; and 5) Fuel levels are valid. 1-minute time delay.
GPS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates position, track, or ground speed difference between GPS/SBAS units is beyond the following limits: **Position**: Enroute Mode 4NM Terminal Mode 2NM Departure Mode .6NM IFR Approach Mode .6NM VFR Approach Mode .6NM **Track**: If ground speed is greater than 30 kts, miscompare if difference is more than 4°. **Ground speed**: If difference between GPS#1 and GPS#2 miscompare is more than 10 kts. 10-second time delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [1]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
GS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates at least one glide slope is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between glide slope signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. [1]
HDG FAIL HDG1 FAIL HDG2 FAIL HDG1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	"HDG FAIL" Applicable to single AHRS installation. "HDG# FAIL" applicable to dual AHRS installation. Indicates that Heading is invalid but other AHRS data parameters are normal. Half second time delay. [1]
HDG MISCOMP	Alert Tone	With neither AHRS failed nor in DG mode. Indicates heading difference between AHRS is beyond the heading miscompare threshold limit. 60-second delay. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]
IAS MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates IAS difference between ADCs is beyond limits. 10-second time delay. Inhibit for 5 minutes after startup. [1]
LOC MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates at least one localizer is receiving a signal within 1 dot of center and difference between localizer signals is beyond limits (0.25 dots). 10-second time delay. [1]
RALT MISCOMP	Alert Tone	Indicates that radar altitude difference between radar altimeters is beyond limits. 10 second time delay. Limits are as follows: >= 500'AGL Δ14% 100 – 500'AGL Δ10% < 100'AGL Δ10' [1]

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
OAT FAIL OAT1 FAIL OAT2 FAIL OAT1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	OAT FAIL applicable to single ADC installation. OAT# FAIL indicates OAT indication is invalid but other air data parameters are normal (i.e., air data not red-X'd) [1]. Half-second time delay.
RALT FAIL RALT1 FAIL RALT2 FAIL RALT1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	RALT FAIL applicable to single radar altimeter installation. RALT# FAIL applicable to dual radar altimeter installation. For analog radar altimeter, indicates the aircraft is below 2000' AGL in air mode without a valid radar altimeter reading. For ARINC 429 radar altimeter, indicates an SSM of failure warning is transmitting. 2-second time delay. [1]
SAME ADC	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** [1][4]
SAME AHRS	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** [1][4]
SAME DME	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same DME source ** [1][3][4]
SAME GPS	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source.**[1][2][3][4]
SAME NAV	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source.**[1][2][3][4]
SAME RALT	Alert Tone	Indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** [1][2][3][4]
TAWS INHBT	Alert Tone	TAS aural inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS audio inhibit if configured in EFIS limits. **
TCAS FAIL	Alert Tone	TAS indicates lack of communications with system or failure indication from system. **
TRIM MOTION↓ TRIM MOTION↑	"Trim in Motion, Trim in Motion"	Only active with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS. Pitch trim running for more than a preset amount of time in indicated direction.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts

Visual Alert	Voice Alert/ Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
XFILL FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates lack of inter-system communications. 2-second time delay. Inhibit for 30 seconds after startup. [2] [3]
GPS1 FAIL GPS2 FAIL GPS1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	Indicates no valid message received from numbered GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds. ** Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. [1]
SSEC FAIL SSEC1 FAIL SSEC2 FAIL SSEC1/2 FAIL	Alert Tone	"SSEC FAIL" applicable to single ADC installation. "SSEC# FAIL" applicable to dual ADC installation. Indicates that either: 1) The Genesys Aerosystems ADC is not transmitting SSEC-corrected data on an airframe that requires SSEC; or 2) There is a mismatch greater than or equal to 50umHg between the SSEC being calculated by the IDU and the SSEC being used by the ADC. Inhibited if the related ADC is in a failed condition. 60-second delay.
Duplicate Time-Critical Caution Alerts (IDU#0):		
CHECK GEAR	"Check Gear, Check Gear"	Activates if aircraft is below 500' AGL, is descending, and is below $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$; and any landing gear is not down. 2-second time delay.
TERRAIN	"Caution Terrain, Caution Terrain"	Terrain cell within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 2 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
SINK RATE	"Sink Rate, Sink Rate"	Within GPWS Mode 1 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.

Table 2-10: Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode set in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
GLIDESLOPE	"Glide Slope, Glide Slope"	Within GPWS Mode 5 caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TOO LOW	"Too Low Terrain, Too Low Terrain"	Within GPWS Mode 3 envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within GPWS Mode 4-1 "Too Low Terrain" envelope. Half-second time delay.
		Within TAWS PDA envelope. Half-second time delay.
	"Too Low Gear, Too Low Gear	Within GPWS Mode 4-2 "Too Low Gear" envelope. Half-second time delay.
	"Too Low Flaps, Too Low Flaps"	Within GPWS Mode 4-3 "Too Low Flaps" envelope. Half-second time delay.
OBSTRUCTION	"Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction"	Obstruction within TAWS FLTA caution envelope. Half-second time delay.
TRAFFIC	"Traffic, Traffic"	Not given if own aircraft below 400' AGL nor if target is below 200'AGL (ground target). **

2.6.4. Side-Specific Caution Alerts

Side-specific caution alerts are displayed on all IDUs on a side that detect a failure on an IDU on that side. These types of alerts are used for safety-critical monitoring functions that can't take credit for the presence of other system IDUs.

Table 2-11: Side-Specific Caution Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
CHECK IDU 1 CHECK IDU 2 CHECK IDU 3 CHECK IDU 4	Alert Tone	IDU status has not been received from another same-side IDU in the last second ± 0.1 seconds. # indicates which IDU is failing the check. **

2.6.5. Advisory Alerts

Figure 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Table 2-12: Advisory Alert Elements			
Type Alert	**Location**	**Appearance**	**Audio Alert**
ADVISORY	PFD lower left corner of transmit enabled IDU	While condition persists	Single advisory chime played at 80% volume

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode is not enabled in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
ADC INIT ADC1 INIT ADC2 INIT ADC1/2 INIT	Chime	Indicates ADC# not at full accuracy during warm-up. ** [1]
AHRS1 DG AHRS2 DG AHRS1/2 DG	Chime	Indicates numbered AHRS in DG mode. ** [1]

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Alert Tone**	**Condition**
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode is not enabled in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
PLT1 PWR PLT2 PWR PLT3 PWR PLT4 PWR CPLT1 PWR CPLT2 PWR CPLT3 PWR CPLT4 PWR	Chime	Indicates a dual redundant power supply within the designated IDU (side and IDU #) is not functioning correctly. Only active on the ground. 1-minute time delay. [2]
FPM INHBT	Chime	Flight path marker inhibit function activated if configured in EFIS limits. **
BARO MISCOMP	Chime	Indicates mismatch of altimeter settings or altimeter modes between systems. 10-second time delay. [2] [3]
SAME ADC	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same ADC source. ** [1] [4]
SAME AHRS	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same AHRS source. ** [1] [4]
SAME DME	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same DME source ** [1] [3] [4]
SAME GPS	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same GPS/SBAS source.**[1][2][3] [4]
SAME NAV	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same navigation source.**[1] [2] [3] [4]
SAME RALT	Chime	Indicates both sides are operating from same radar altimeter source. ** [1] [2] [3] [4]
TAS INHBT	Chime	TAS aural inhibited through activation of TCAS/TAS audio inhibit EFIS limits. **
TAWS GS CNX	Chime	(Class A TAWS) TAWS glide slope cancel (GPWS Mode 5) activated with switch when enabled in EFIS limits. **
TCAS STBY	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is either in standby or executing functional test in flight.**
TA ONLY	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is unable to display resolution advisories. **

Table 2-13: Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition
** No time delay [1] Only active in dual-sensor installation with neither sensor in failure condition [2] Only active in dual-system (pilot and co-pilot) [3] Only active when single-pilot mode is not enabled in EFIS limits [4] Only active when CAUTION mode is enabled		
TCAS TEST	Chime	Only active with TCAS-II. Indicates system is in functional test on ground.**
XFILL ARM	Chime	Only active with good inter-system communications and crossfill not inhibited. Indicates systems are not synchronized and synchronized function is available. ** [2] [3]
XFILL INHBT	Chime	With good inter-system communications, indicates crossfill is inhibited if configured in EFIS limits. ** [2] [3]

2.6.6. Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Side-specific advisory alerts have the same characteristics as advisory alerts except, they always appear in the lower-left corner of the transmit enabled IDU.

These type of alerts are used where the pilot and co-pilot sides can generate different alerts, such as when the pilot and co-pilot sides are not crossfilled and are operating on different FMS flight plans.

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts

Visual Alert	Alert Tone	Condition ** No time delay
CHK BARO	Chime	Ascending through transition level: Altimeter not set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descending through transition level: Altimeter set to 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar. Descent warning times out in 10 seconds. Disabled during QFE operation. 2-second time delay.
ANP: 0.01 ANP: 15.0	Chime	GPS/SBAS actual navigation performance in nautical miles based upon current GPS/SBAS HPL. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A	Chime	GPS/SBAS automatic required navigation performance in nautical miles as acquired from navigation database. Value ranges from 0.01 to 15.0 NM.
RNP: 0.10M RNP: 15.0M	Chime	GPS/SBAS manual required navigation performance in nautical miles. Value ranges from 0.10 to 15.0 NM.
DR 00:00 DR 01:23	Chime	GPS/SBAS in dead reckoning mode with valid ADC and AHRS data. Timer shows time since loss of position (mm:ss) to indicate quality of DR solution.** Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Valid range is from 00:00 to 59:59.
LNAV APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LNAV approach mode. **
LNV/VNV APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LNAV/VNAV approach mode. **
LP APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LP approach mode. **
LPV APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in LPV approach mode. **
SUSPEND	Chime	Automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended under any of the following conditions: ** 1) Pilot has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS. 2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (ARM) nor initiated (MISS). 3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and pilot has not chosen to continue (CONT) out of the holding pattern. 4) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the pilot has not chosen to resume (RESUME) to the waypoint following the manual termination. 5) Aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (see SAR appendix), and the pilot has

Table 2-14: Side-Specific Advisory Alerts		
Visual Alert	**Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
		not chosen to continue out of the SAR pattern.**
TERMINAL	Chime	GPS/SBAS in terminal mode. **
VFR APPR	Chime	GPS/SBAS in VFR approach mode.**
VECTORS	Chime	GPS/SBAS in vectors to final approach mode prior to sequencing FAWP. **
PTK = L 1NM PTK = L 20NM PTK = R 1NM PTK = R 20NM PTK ENDING	Chime	GPS/SBAS parallel offset path advisory. ## is nautical miles left (L) or right (R) of main path. PTK ENDING if within the parallel offset distance from a parallel offset exit waypoint. **
FLTA INHBT	Chime	Shown when FLTA function is automatically inhibited during normal operation. TAWS INHBT has priority.**
TRUE NORTH	Chime	System operating in true north mode.**
VNAV AVAIL	Chime	Only active with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS. Indicates VNAV guidance is available but not currently in use by the AP. Press “VNV” button on mode control panel to engage VNAV mode.

2.6.7. Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts

Audio-only caution alerts trigger a single audio message that played at the full volume, whereas audio-only advisory alerts are played at 80% of the full volume.

Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts		
Caution or Advisory Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
Minimum Altitude Caution Alert	“Minimums, Minimums”	Deviation from above to below minimum altitude bug. Minimum altitude readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **
Selected Altitude Deviation Caution Alert	“Altitude, Altitude”	Deviation greater than 150’ from selected altitude after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.

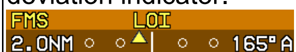
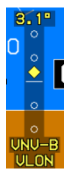
Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts		
Caution or Advisory Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
VNAV Altitude Deviation Caution Alert	“Altitude, Altitude”	If not on a descending VNAV profile, deviation greater than 150’ from altitude of the current or prior VNAV waypoint after capture (within 100’ of altitude). 2-second time delay.
Decision Height Caution Alert	“Decision Height”	Deviation from above to below decision height bug. Decision height readout turns amber (yellow) and flashes. **
GBS/SBAS Failure Caution Alert	Alert Tone	No valid position data available from selected GPS/SBAS for more than 5 seconds and dead reckoning not available. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. Loss of position data is obvious from symbology changes associated with reversionary modes. **
GPS/SBAS Loss of Integrity Caution Alert	Alert Tone	GPS/SBAS loss of integrity caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LOI indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator. ** 
GPS/SBAS Loss of Navigation Caution Alert	Alert Tone	GPS/SBAS loss of navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. LON indication is integrated with lateral deviation indicator.** 
Loss of Vertical Navigation Caution Alert	Alert Tone	Loss of vertical navigation caution. Inhibited during and for 10 seconds after unusual attitude mode. VLON indication is integrated with vertical deviation indicator. ** 
Autopilot Disconnect Advisory Alert	“Autopilot Disconnect”	Sounds when AP servos disengage for any reason. (Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed)
Autopilot Failure Advisory Alert	“Autopilot Failure”	Sounds when AP failure is detected. (Genesys/S-TEC DFCS is installed)

Table 2-15: Audio-Only Caution and Advisory Alerts		
Caution or Advisory Alert	**Voice Alert/ Alert Tone**	**Condition** ** No time delay
Countdown Timer Chime	Chime	Sounds when countdown timer reaches 00:00:00.**
Level-off Advisory Alert	Altitude Alert Tone	Within the greater of 1000' or 50% of VSI from uncaptured selected or VNAV waypoint altitude. Inhibited in approach procedures. **
GPWS Mode 6 Advisory Alert	"Five Hundred"	Descending through 500' AGL advisory. Armed upon climbing through deadband value above 500' AGL. Half-second time delay.

2.6.8. Voice Alerts and Muting

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged voice alert is played at any given time. Any playing audio message is immediately muted by activating the warning/caution acknowledge switch.

2.6.9. Visual Alert Prioritization and Declutter

Visual alerts are visually prioritized, so warnings are displayed above cautions, which are displayed above advisories. Within categories, visual alerts are stacked in chronological order, so the most recent alert appears on top.

Only the highest priority (in criticality and recency), unacknowledged aural annunciation is played at a time. In addition, to further minimize cockpit confusion, annunciations are grouped and prioritized so only one annunciation is active.

The maximum number of visual alerts that can be simultaneously displayed in the standard location is 11. If there are more than 11 visual alerts, MORE-PRS MENU appears for guidance in accessing the EXPAND CAS menu.

In addition, flags are decluttered from all IDUs, which are not "transmit enabled." Flags only appear on these IDUs if they are IDU-specific (i.e., CHECK IDU #).

2.7. Database and Software Updates

2.7.1. Navigation and Obstruction Database

The EFIS uses Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® for the navigation database and Jeppesen Sanderson obstacle data for the obstruction database.

Visit www.jeppesen.com to place the order for the correct database.

> **NOTE:**
>
> When ordering, review the EFIS Equipment-Database Compatibility Matrix (Document 01-000062) on the Genesys Aerosystems website. This document specifies the compatibility of Genesys Aerosystems EFIS equipment and software versions to navigation database versions.

Three available coverage areas of navigation databases may be used on this EFIS:

Americas - Major airports and navigation for Alaska, Canada, Continental U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Mexico, Central, and South America.

International - All available coverage except North and South America.

World - Major airports and navigation with the Americas.

The updateable navigation database contains at least the following location and path information, referenced to WGS-84, with a resolution of 0.01 minute (latitude/longitude) and 0.1° (for course information) or better at all of the following for the area(s) in which IFR operations are intended:

1) Airports.

2) VORs, DMEs (including DMEs collocated with localizers), collocated VOR/DMEs, VORTACs, and NDBs (including NDBs used as locator outer marker).

3) All named waypoints and intersections shown on enroute and terminal area charts.

4) All airways shown on enroute charts, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). Airways are retrievable as a group of waypoints (select the airway by name to load

the appropriate waypoints and legs between desired entry and exit points into the flight plan).

5) RNAV DPs and STARs, including all waypoints, intersections, and associated RNP values (if applicable). DPs and STARs are retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan).

6) LNAV approach procedures in the area(s) in which IFR operation is intended consist of:

   a) Runway number and label (required for approach identification);

   b) Initial approach waypoint (IAWP);

   c) Intermediate approach waypoint(s) (IWP), when applicable;

   d) Final approach waypoint (FAWP);

   e) Missed approach waypoint (MAWP);

   f) Additional missed approach waypoints, when applicable; and

   g) Missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP).

   The complete sequence of waypoints and associated RNP values (if applicable), in the correct order for each approach, is retrievable as a procedure (select the procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the flight plan). Waypoints utilized as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) or missed approach waypoint (MAWP) in an LNAV approach procedure are uniquely identified as such (when appropriate) to provide proper approach mode operation.

7) LNAV/VNAV procedures in the area(s) where IFR operation is intended. LPV, LP, and/or LNAV/VNAV published procedures are available. Select a procedure by name to load the appropriate waypoints and legs into the active flight plan. Waypoints used as a final approach waypoint (FAWP) and LTP/FTP/MAWP in an LNAV/VNAV procedure are uniquely identified as such to provide proper approach mode operation.

The obstruction database is distributed by a government agency in each country. Not all countries have obstruction databases available.

2.7.2. Update Requirements

Scheduled updates for databases are as follows:

1) Navigation Database - Every 28 days

2) Obstruction Database - Every 28 days

3) MAGVAR Database - Every 5 years (updated as described in a Genesys Aerosystems service bulletin)

CAUTION:

Failure to update the EFIS with the correct NavData® causes the IDU to remain in continual reboot mode and does not allow any display page to appear.

The EFIS is updated through the ground maintenance function (GMF). To gain access to the GMF, prior to applying power, slide the USB door at the bottom-center of the IDU bezel upward to the first detent position to expose the USB port.

When an update is performed, the following procedures must be performed separately on every IDU installed in the aircraft.

To update the databases:

1) Load the navigation database (navdata.exe) and obstruction database (obst.exe) on USB flash drive.

2) With the power off, insert the USB flash drive into USB port.

CAUTION:

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function. Operation of the GMF without a valid USB flash drive installed may cause erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

3) Turn on power to gain access to the GMF page.

4) Rotate ❶ to **Update System** and push to enter.

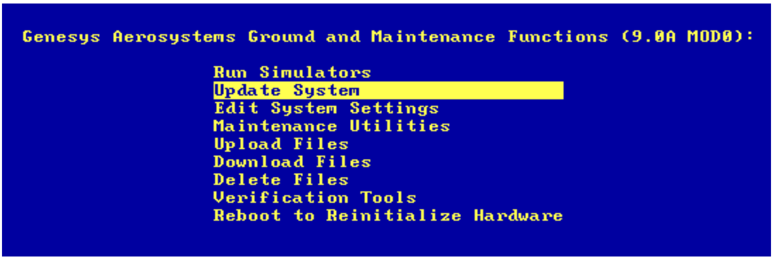


Figure 2-14: Ground Maintenance Page

5) Once each database is loaded, press any button to continue to complete the process.

6) Once both databases have been uploaded, power down the IDU, remove the USB flash drive, and lower the USB door.

7) Once each IDU has been updated, power up the entire EFIS in normal flight mode and verify each IDU successfully updated with the latest database by noting the new navigation database and obstruction database cycle expiration dates before acknowledging the initialization screen (Figure 2-4). Because the obstruction database is advisory in nature, there technically is no expiration date. The listed date is the effective date of the next available obstruction database.

8) A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) self-test verifies the data at every step of the process, thereby ensuring the data installed into the system has not been corrupted at any point during the process.

2.7.3. Software and Terrain Database Update

Updates and terrain database updates are provided on an as-needed basis and performed as per a service bulletin.

2.8. Run Demonstrator/Training Program

The EFIS has a built-in demonstration application to fly anywhere in the world while performing any procedure (except takeoff and landing) based on the current Jeppesen navigation database. Use this feature on the ground in ground mode as follows:

1) With the power off, insert the USB flash drive into USB port.

2) Power on system. Rotate ❶ to **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** and push to enter.

Use the demonstrator to gain familiarity of the EFIS menu structure and location of button tiles for each operation. Load an instrument procedure prior to take off to view the expected sequence of events.

The demonstrator begins flying over Reno, Nevada, USA at an altitude of approximately 8000’ MSL. Altitude may be changed with altitude bug, VNAV profiles or navigation database procedures. Airspeed remains relatively constant but may be controlled with the airspeed IAS bug in the BUGS menu. The simulated aircraft may be positioned anywhere in the world, by activating a flight plan stored in the memory.

All appropriate navigation signals are simulated, allowing for precision and non-precision instrument approaches found within the current navigation database. All obstructions in the latest obstruction database and all warning, caution, and advisory aural and flag annunciations are presented as appropriate during simulated flights.

NOTE:

When the IDU is operating in demonstrator mode, the IDU is isolated from all sensors and other IDUs. The creation of a flight plan results in that flight plan being stored on that IDU alone. To have that new flight plan available on all other IDUs, the following action must be taken.

1) While in flight mode, activate the flight plan created in demonstrator mode.

2) With crossfill enabled (in dual-sided systems), view active flight plan on any other IDU and press **SAVE (L1)** to save this flight plan on all displays.

2.9. EFIS Training Tool

In addition to the demonstrator program, the EFIS Training Tool (ETT) is available to load on a personal computer. The ETT is compatible with 32- or 64-bit versions of Microsoft Windows®. It serves as a multi-purpose tool for training pilots and provides features to record and capture images. See user guide distributed with the ETT installation and User Guide for further details.

Section 3 Display Symbology

3.1. Introduction

This section details the symbology on the pilot and co-pilot PFD and MFD. This section only describes the PFD configured with the airspeed and altitude scale pure digital configuration.

3.2. PFD Symbology

Figure 3-1: PFD Normal SVS Mode, Pure Digital and Rolling Configuration

3.2.1. Basic Mode

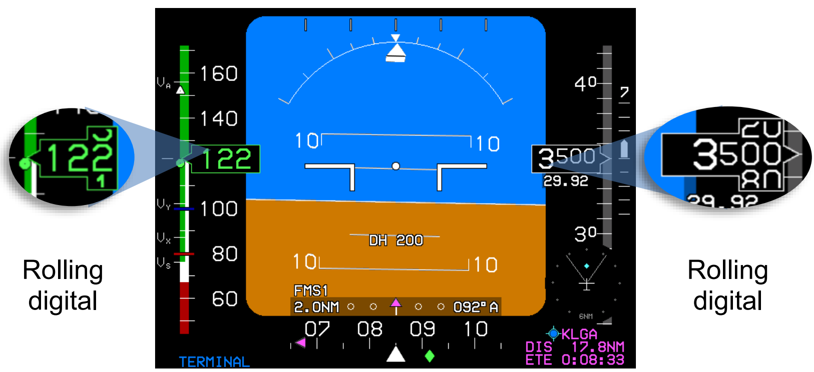


Figure 3-2: PFD in Basic Mode, Pure and Rolling Digital

When selected, basic mode is a traditional attitude display with airspeed, altitude, and heading scales appearing in blacked-out areas in a “Basic-T” arrangement, but is disabled in unusual attitude mode. The following are no longer present in basic mode:

1) Atmospheric perspective
2) Airspeed Trend
3) Terrain rendering
4) Obstruction rendering
5) Flight Path Marker
6) Airport runways
7) Highway in the Sky
8) Bank Scale Declutter

3.2.2. IDU-450 PFD Display

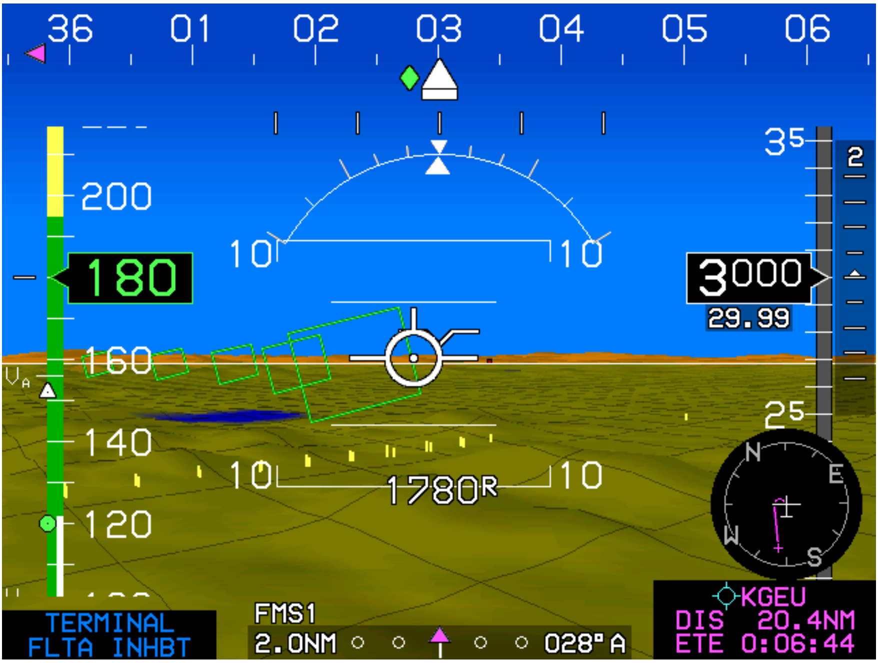
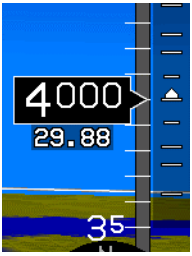


Figure 3-3: PFD Symbology

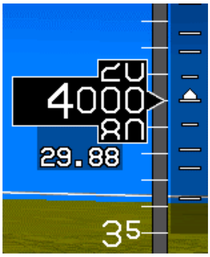
The PFD combines pitot-static information, heading, attitude, 3D navigation data, and more overlaid on a virtual background of the outside world. Other objects in the background, including terrain, obstructions, traffic, and runways, are presented conformally as if seen directly in front of the aircraft while looking outside. The PFD altitude box with altitude scale is on the right side of the display. The altitude box digitally displays barometric altitude as adjusted by an altimeter setting. The digital display of altitude is either purely digital (to nearest 10 feet) or rolling digits (to nearest 20 feet) as defined in aircraft limits. The altitude box has a pointer that interacts with the altitude scale, which has graduations every 100 feet and labels every

500 feet. The altitude scale background has a gray region and a brown region where the junction between the gray and brown regions indicates ground level.

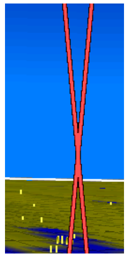
3.2.3. Altitude Display



Pure Digital

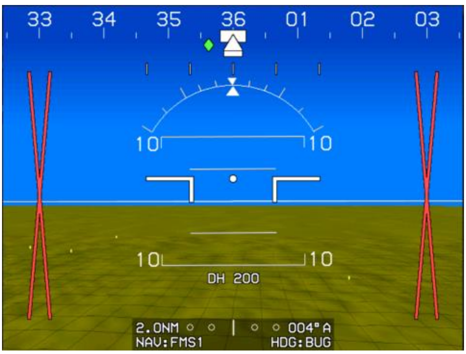


Rolling Air Data



ADC Failure

ADC1 FAIL
ADC2 FAIL
ADC1/2 FAIL



Single System ADC Failure (Red X's Only)

Figure 3-4: Altitude Display

3.2.3.1. Altitude Display (Metric Units)

Altitude values (altitude display and user-settable target and VNAV altitudes) may be displayed in metric units with a resolution of 1 meter.

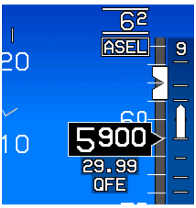
Figure 3-5: Altitude Display (Metric Units)

3.2.4. Altimeter Setting

Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter setting mode and view the altimeter setting in inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) value in the lower right corner. Rotate ❶ CW to increase or CCW to decrease the altimeter setting. Push ❶ to enter the new value. Digital display of altitude is either purely digital (nearest 10 ft.) or incorporates rolling digits (nearest 20 ft.) as determined by EFIS limits.

Normal SVS Mode **Basic Mode**

Figure 3-6: Altimeter Setting



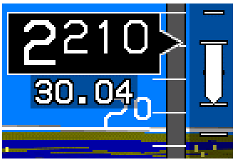
The altimeter setting is immediately below the altitude readout box and digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the user-settable units.

Figure 3-7: QFE Altimeter Setting

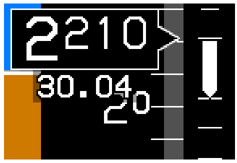
QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold). When QFE altimeter setting is selected, QFE is annunciated as in Figure 3-7.

QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

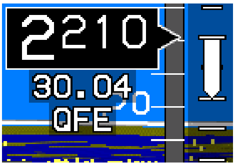
QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station. When QNH altimeter setting is selected, no mode is annunciated below the altimeter setting.



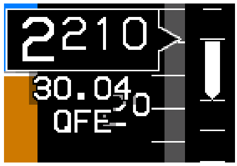
Normal SVS Mode- QNH



Basic Mode - QNH



Normal SVS Mode - QFE

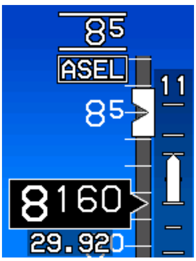


Basic Mode - QFE

Figure 3-8: Altimeter Setting

> **NOTE:**
>
> Altimeter setting limits are 801-1100 (mbar) or 22.00-32.00 (inHg).

3.2.5. Selected Altitude Sub-Mode (Target Altitude)



A target altitude may be set on the PFD Bugs menu. When in selected altitude sub-mode, the altitude scale has a user-settable target altitude bug geometrically interacting above the altitude box pointer. The target altitude bug value has a resolution of 100 feet and a range from -1000 feet to 50,000 feet. The target altitude bug setting annunciation includes “ASEL” indicating selected altitude sub-mode.

Figure 3-9: Target Altitude

3.2.6. Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

When enabled for performing VNAV (autopilot configured) with a manually selected altitude entered, **VNAV (L2)** appears.

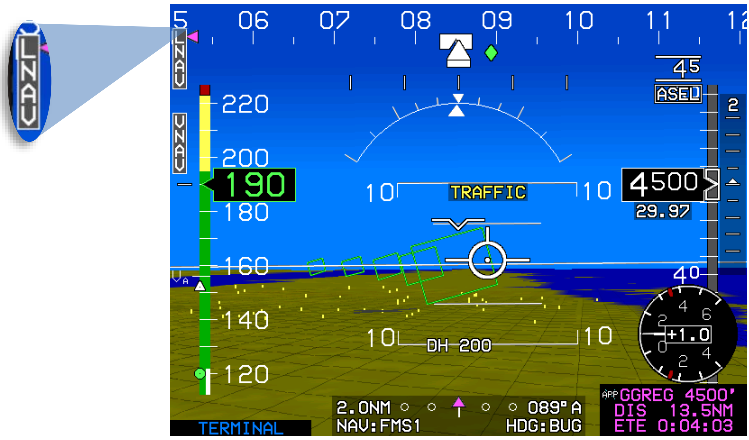


Figure 3-10: Altitude Display (VNAV Tile)

3.2.7. VNAV Sub-Mode

When in VNAV sub-mode, the altitude scale shows the active waypoint VNAV altitude (if it exists) with a bug symbol geometrically interacting with the altitude box pointer. The VNAV altitude bug setting is annunciated above the altitude scale with a resolution of 100 feet.

When not vertically integrated with a fully integrated digital autopilot, the VNAV altitude bug setting annunciation includes "VNAV" indicating VNAV altitude sub-mode.

After **VNAV (L2)** is pressed, ASEL is canceled and is replaced with VNAV sub-mode.

Figure 3-11: VNAV Sub-Mode (Not Vertically Integrated)

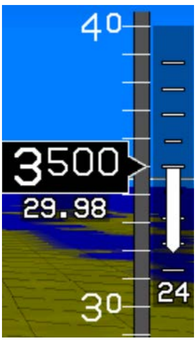
3.2.8. Minimum Altitude

A user-settable minimum altitude bug consists of a bold yellow line on the altitude scale and a yellow region on the altitude scale from the minimum altitude down to ground level. The minimum altitude bug value is displayed above the altitude scale with a resolution of 10 ft. The minimum altitude bug can be used in conjunction with a selected altitude or VNAV bug. When a minimum altitude is set, descending from above to below causes an audible alert of “Minimums, Minimums” and the minimum altitude to turn amber (yellow) and flash.

Figure 3-12: Minimum Altitude

> **NOTE:**
>
> It is possible to use both the target altitude/VNAV altitude bug and minimum altitude bug at the same time. Respective annunciations do not interfere with each other.

3.2.9. Vertical Speed Indicator

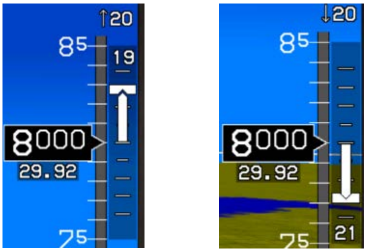


The vertical speed indicator (VSI) is depicted in a "worm" format providing analog and digital representation of VSI in feet per minute (fpm).

Figure 3-13: VSI

Table 3-1: Scale Graduations and Display

Traffic Installed	Scale Limit	Scale Graduations and Display
With TCAS-II	±6,000 fpm	±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, ±4,000, and ±6,000 fpm Background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.
Without TCAS-II	±3,000 fpm	±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, and ±3,000 fpm



Climb **Decent**

Figure 3-14: VSI Bug

The VSI indication user-settable vertical speed bug with a 100 fpm resolution and a range from -3000 to +3000 fpm. It is mutually exclusive with the airspeed bug. The VSI bug setting annunciation colored white, and VSI bug is filled at all times.

3.2.10. Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is displayed above the course deviation indicator. The source for the indication is the source used by TAWS and displayed next to the AGL altitude as follows.

R = Radar altitude

G = GPS/SBAS geodetic height less database ground elevation

B = Barometric altitude less database ground elevation

(SVS Basic) AGL
Based on GPS Altitude

(SVS TAWS) AGL
Based on Radar Altimeter

Figure 3-15: Normal AGL Indication

AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude (2500’ AGL or as set in EFIS limits) nor, when it is invalid or when an analog indication is selected by the pilot. Additionally, AGL indication includes the set decision height (see § 3.2.12).

Table 3-2: AGL Indication

Altitude	≥300 Feet	≥100 Feet < 300 Feet	<100 Feet
AGL Indication resolution	10 Feet	5 Feet	1 Foot

3.2.11. Analog AGL Indication

User-selected analog AGL indication is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier with a green circular tape and digital readout in the center. The circular tape has a green radial line at its end that disappears above 1000' AGL.

Analog AGL without DH

Radar Altimeter Source

GPS/SBAS Source

Analog AGL with DH

Figure 3-16: Analog AGL Indication

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Table 3-3: Analog AGL Indicator</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">Markings 0-1000 Feet</th><th>AGL</th><th>Scaling
(clock position)</th></tr>
<tr><td>0-100 Feet</td><td>100 Feet-1000 Feet</td><td>0' AGL</td><td>6:00</td></tr>
<tr><td>Linear</td><td>Logarithmic</td><td>50' AGL</td><td>9:00</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2" rowspan="3">The indication is smoothed when source is radar altimeter.</td><td>100' AGL</td><td>12:00</td></tr>
<tr><td>200' AGL</td><td>1:30</td></tr>
<tr><td>500' AGL</td><td>3:00</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">To avoid jumpiness in the digital portion:
1) At or above 300', the resolution is 10'
2) At or above 100' and below 300' the resolution is 5'
3) Below 100' the resolution is 1'</td></tr>
</table>

The analog AGL indicator disappears in unusual attitude mode and is mutually exclusive with the mini map, analog G meter, and traffic thumbnail. Analog AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altitude maximum valid value (2,500 ft. or as set in EFIS limits), when it is invalid, or when the pilot deselects analog AGL.

Table 3-4: Analog AGL Indicator Markings

	Major Tick Marks	Minor Tick Marks
0’	✓	
10’		✓
20’		✓
30’		✓
40’		✓
50’	✓	
60’		✓
70’		✓
80’		✓
90’		✓
100’	✓	
200’		✓
300’		✓
400’		✓
500’	✓	
1000’	✓	

3.2.12. Decision Height

User-settable decision height is displayed above the CDI with the abbreviation DH and by a yellow radial on the analog indicator.

When the aircraft descends below decision height, **DH ###** turns amber (yellow) and flashes, and the circular tape and readout turn amber (yellow). This is accompanied by “Decision Height” audible alert.

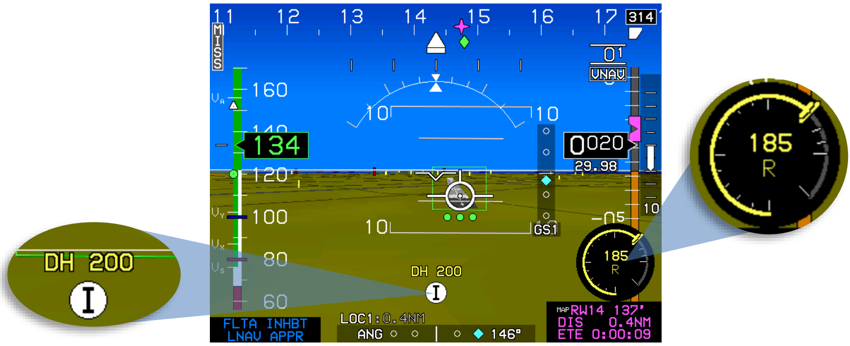
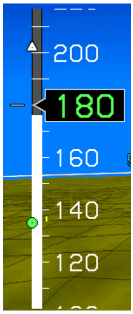


Figure 3-17: Decision Height

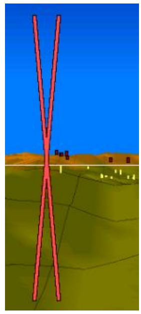
3.2.13. Airspeed Display

Airspeed is digitally displayed in same color as airspeed scale in knots, miles, or kilometers (as configured) per hour with interactive pointer. The digital display is either pure digital or incorporates rolling digits as set in EFIS limits. Mach number is displayed above full-time with resolution of .01.

Rolling Digits



Pure Digital

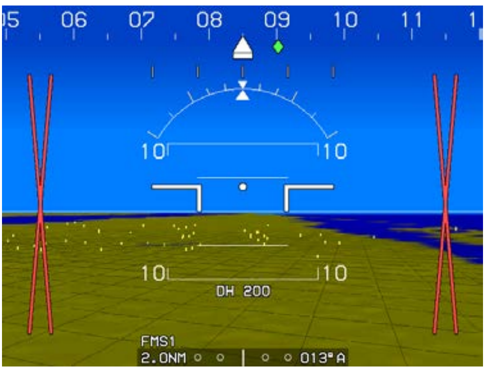


ADC Failure

ADC1 FAIL

ADC2 FAIL

ADC1/2 FAIL



Single System ADC Failure (Red X's Only)

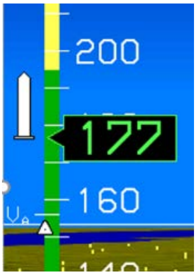
Figure 3-18: Airspeed Display

The airspeed box pointer interacts with the airspeed scale and has graduations every 10 measurement units with labels every 20 measurement units with high numbers at the top.

The airspeed trend vector calculated along the aircraft longitudinal axis is in a "worm" format to provide analog representation of IAS achieved in ten seconds, assuming the instantaneous longitudinal acceleration rate is maintained along the velocity vector.

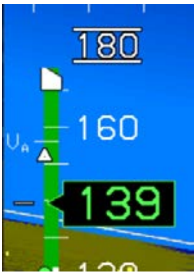
The airspeed indication can have a user-settable airspeed bug (mutually exclusive with VSI bug) with a 1-knot resolution and a range from 1.2 x $\mathbf{V_S}$ (or configured minimum IAS bug speed, if higher) to red-line airspeed (lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$).

The user-settable airspeed bug geometrically interacts with the airspeed box pointer and is colored as per Table 3-5. $\mathbf{V_1}$, $\mathbf{V_R}$, $\mathbf{V_2}$, $\mathbf{V_{ENR}}$, $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ and $\mathbf{V_{APP}}$ are shown on the airspeed scale when set. The $\mathbf{V_1}$, $\mathbf{V_R}$ and $\mathbf{V_2}$ symbols automatically declutter when above 2000’ AGL.



Airspeed trend noodle indicating speed of 192 KIAS within 10 seconds

Figure 3-19: Airspeed Trend



When the airspeed bug value differs from aircraft speed to the extent the bug is off scale, the bug appears to be “parked.”

Figure 3-20: Airspeed Bug Off Scale

Table 3-5: Airspeed Bug Limits

Low end	**High end**
Higher of 1.2 x $\mathbf{V_S}$ or 60KIAS	Red-line ($\mathbf{V_{NE}}$, $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$, or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$)
Airspeed Bug Setting	White at all times
Airspeed Bug	Filled-white at all times

NOTE:

See applicable autopilot pilot guide for airspeed bug colors when vertically integrated with autopilot.

The airspeed scale background and readout for Part 23 airplanes has coloration as follows:

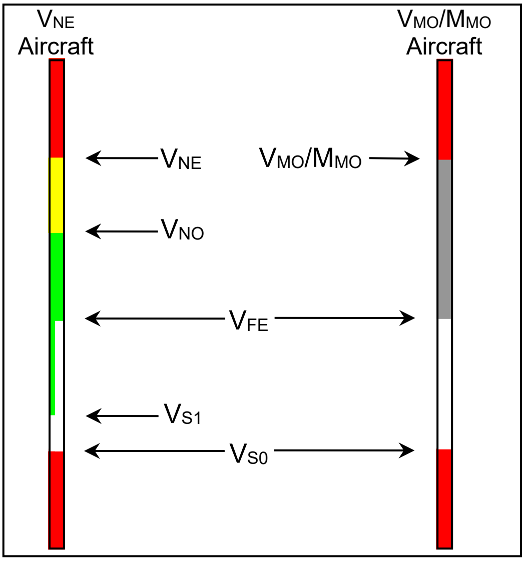


Figure 3-21: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 23

1) If in air mode, a red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the scale to $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

2) If in ground mode, a gray area from the bottom of the scale to $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating "dead" airspeed) but otherwise white in this area.

3) If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$. The airspeed readout is white in this area.

4) For aircraft without a $\mathbf{V_{MO}/M_{MO}}$:

   a) A green safe-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

   b) An amber (yellow) caution area from $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$. The airspeed readout is amber (yellow) in this area.

   c) A red high-speed awareness area from $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$ to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

5) For aircraft with a $\mathbf{V_{MO}/M_{MO}}$:

   a) A gray safe-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ (if it exists) or $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{MO}/M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

   b) A red high-speed awareness area from the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$ to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

The airspeed scale background for Part 25 airplanes (Part 25 “Airspeed Scale Type”) has colored regions and readout coloration as follows:

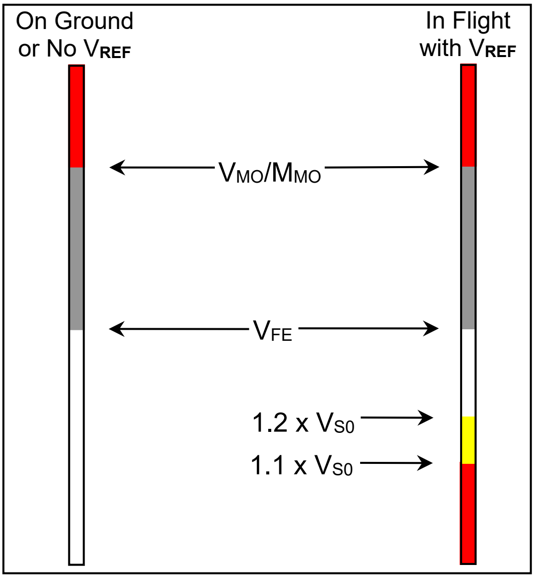


Figure 3-22: Airspeed Scale FAR Part 25

1) If in air mode with a user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ value:

   a) A red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the scale to G-compensated 1.1 x $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$. $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ is calculated by dividing the user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ by 1.23. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

   b) An amber (yellow) low-speed awareness area from G-compensated 1.1 x $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ to G-compensated 1.2 x $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$. The airspeed readout is amber (yellow) in this area.

   c) If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 x $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ and a gray normal-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ to the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

   d) If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 x $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ to the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) If in Ground Mode or without a user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ value:

   a) If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from the bottom of the scale to $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ and a gray normal-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ to the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating "dead" airspeed) otherwise white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

b) If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from the bottom of the scale to the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 (indicating "dead" airspeed) otherwise white below 60 and green at or above 60 in this area.

3) A red high-speed awareness area from the lower of $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$ or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$ to the top of the scale. The airspeed readout is red in this area.

The airspeed scale for Part 25 airplanes have additional specific airspeed markings as follows:

1) If user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ is valid, a white $\mathbf{V_S}$ marking at the aircraft's 1-G $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ or an amber (yellow) $\mathbf{V_S}$ marking at $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ corrected for G-loading, whichever is higher. $\mathbf{V_{S0}}$ is calculated by dividing the user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ by 1.23

2) If enabled ($\mathbf{V_{GL}}$ not 0), a "green dot" best glide speed marker at $\mathbf{V_{GL}}$.

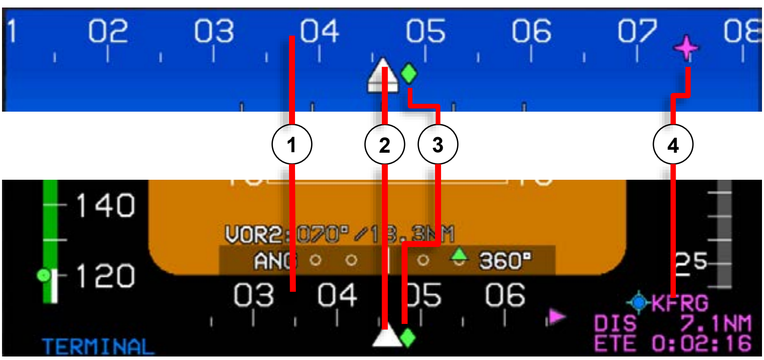
3) If enabled ($\mathbf{V_X}$ not 0), a $\mathbf{V_X}$ marking at $\mathbf{V_X}$.

4) If enabled ($\mathbf{V_Y}$ not 0), a $\mathbf{V_Y}$ marking at $\mathbf{V_Y}$.

5) If enabled ($\mathbf{V_A}$ not 0), a $\mathbf{V_A}$ marking at $\mathbf{V_A}$.

6) If enabled ($\mathbf{V_{MFE}}$ not 0), a "white triangle" maximum flap extension speed marker at $\mathbf{V_{MFE}}$.

3.2.14. Heading Display



Basic Mode

1) Heading Scale
2) Heading Pointer
3) Ground Track Pointer
4) Active Waypoint

Figure 3-23: Heading Display

Figure 3-24: Dampened Integral Slip Indicator

An integral slip indicator is provided and may replace the mechanical slip indicator mounted in the bezel. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator. The integral slip indicator is responsive to lateral (Y-axis) G-force (the slip indicator is the white rectangular part of the heading pointer) and is damped, so it approximately matches a conventional glass vial indicator.

Table 3-6: Heading Display

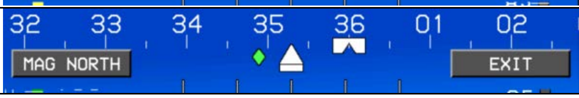
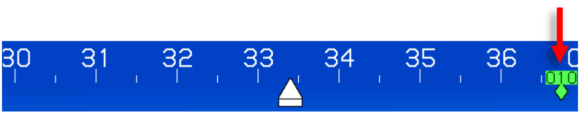
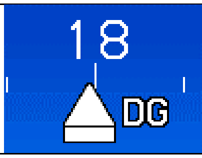
	Heading in Mag North mode
	Heading in True North mode
	Track pointer off scale when aircraft track is displaced from boundaries. (Extreme crosswind conditions)
	Active waypoint pointer beyond screen boundaries.
	Active magenta star-shaped waypoint symbol at a point corresponding with the active waypoint. When changed, heading bug value displayed for 5 seconds

Table 3-6: Heading Display	
	When heading bug is displaced beyond the boundaries of the heading scale. Partial heading bug is shown at the limit of the heading scale with the heading bug value above.
	When AHRS is in the DG mode, “DG” appears.

NOTE:

The ground track pointer is not displayed when indicated airspeed is in the noise range (indicated airspeed or ground speed is less than 30 knots).

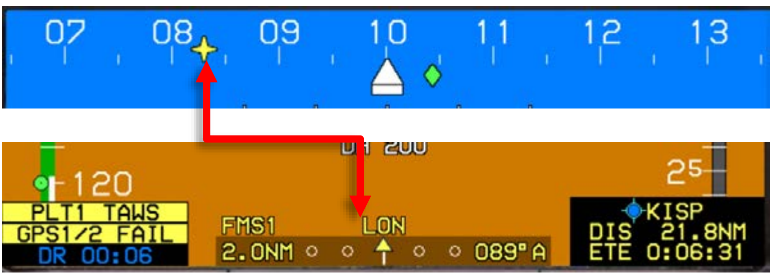
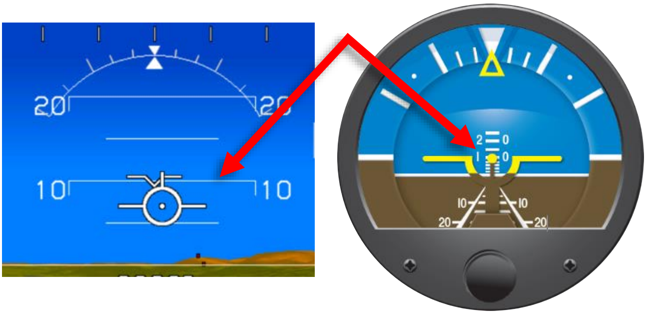


Figure 3-25: GPS Loss of Navigation (LON)

3.2.15. Pitch Scale

The PFD has large aircraft symbol reference marks fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occur relative to the location of the large aircraft symbol reference marks.



10° Nose up 10° Nose up

Figure 3-26: Pitch Scale

Pitch scale has increments every 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Increments are equally spaced to conform approximately to the 3D PFD background. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate direction to the horizon and automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed to unambiguously display pitch attitude. The pitch scale terminates with a zenith symbol (small white circle) at +90° and a nadir symbol (small white circle with "+") at -90°.

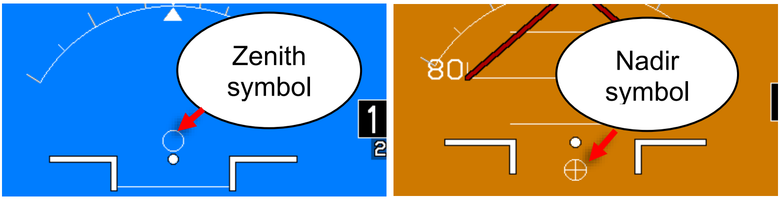


Figure 3-27: Pitch Scale Zenith and Nadir Symbol

3.2.16. Pitch Limit Indicator

The pitch limit indicator first appears above the applicable reference symbol (either the FPM or the large aircraft symbol reference marks) and converges upon the applicable reference symbol as indicated airspeed decreases.

Pitch Limit Indicator Appearance Limits: 1-G $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ or $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ corrected for G-loading.

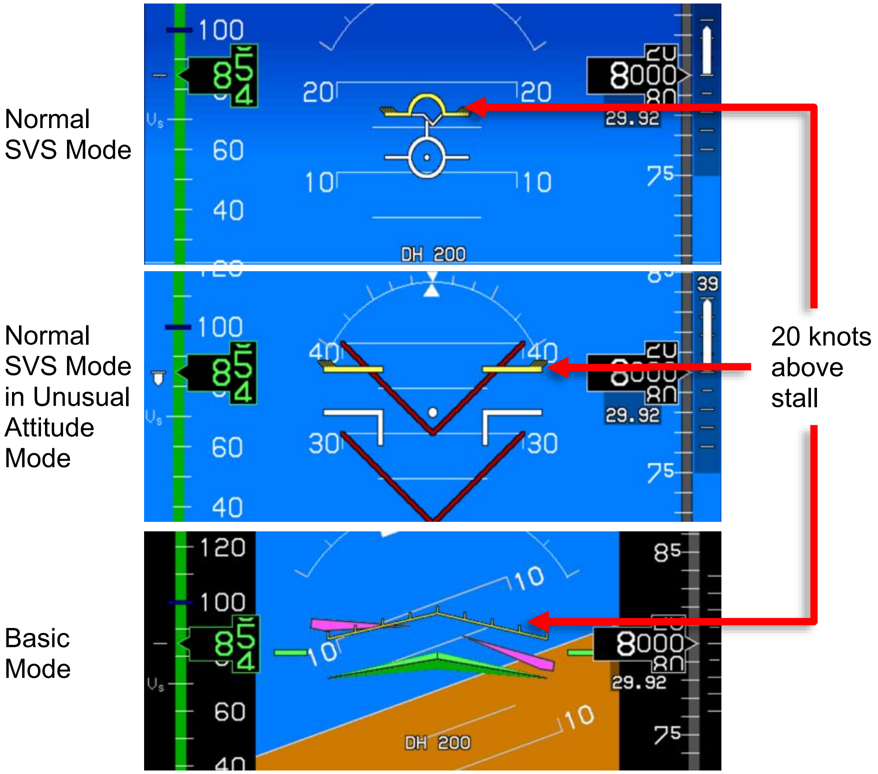


Figure 3-28: Pitch Limit Indicator (20 Knots above Stall)

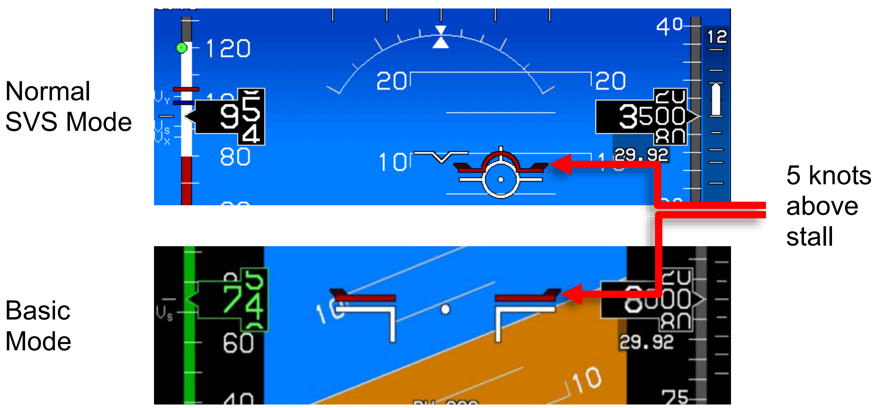


Figure 3-29: Pitch Limit Indicator (5 Knots above Stall)

3.2.17. Turn Rate Indicator

Rate of turn is available as an option in the PFD declutter menu to show a worm in the direction of turn with full-scale deflection indicating a standard rate of turn (and slightly beyond) and half-standard rate indicated at the mid-scale marking.

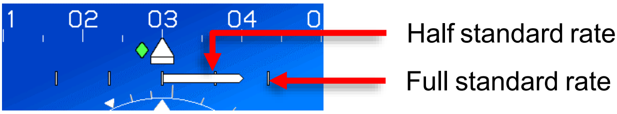


Figure 3-30: Turn Rate Indicator (Selected from Declutter Menu)

3.2.18. G-Force and Fast/Slow Indicator

G-Force indicator appears in normal mode as depicted or next to the large aircraft symbol reference marks (basic or unusual attitude mode) when difference between G-force and 1-G is greater than 0.3 Gs.

Figure 3-31: G-Force Indicator

Positive telltales appear whenever G-force exceeds 2.5G. Negative telltales appear whenever negative G-force is less than -0.5G. Telltales appear full-time within G-indication area.

Figure 3-32: G-Force Indicator Telltale Indications

Analog G-Force indicator is mutually exclusive with the normal G-Force indication next to the FPM.

When selected from declutter menu, analog G-Force indication is displayed to nearest tenth G. Positive and negative telltales appear as described with default G-Force indication. The pointer turns yellows when G-force equals or exceeds settings in EFIS limits.

The telltales are unique on this analog G-Force indicator. Positive G telltales appear whenever positive G-force exceeds 2.5G. Negative G telltale appears whenever G-force is less than 0G. Either G telltale is resettable, as long as the applicable G limits as set in EFIS limits have not been exceeded. If a G-limit has been exceeded, the associated telltale can only be cleared by a maintenance action.

The G telltales automatically reset upon EFIS initialization, as long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded.

Analog G-Force indication displayed to nearest tenth G

G-force equals or exceeds +6 or -4 limits

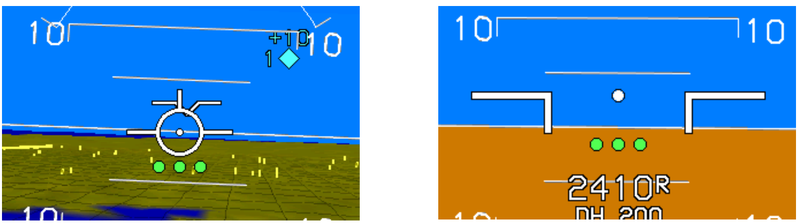
Figure 3-33: Analog G-Force Indicator

Press **RESET G (L2)** to reset telltales to zero, unless the aircraft G-limits have been exceeded. If G-limits have been exceeded, reset exceedance in GMF.

Figure 3-34: RESET G

3.2.19. Landing Gear Indication

If configured, PFD displays landing gear position as small “tires” below FPM or large aircraft symbol reference marks.

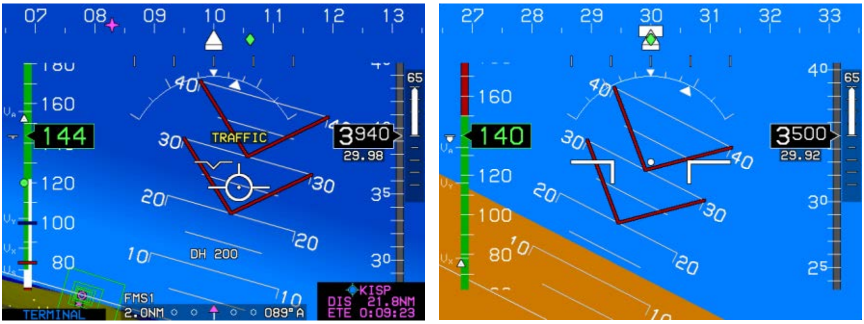


Normal SVS Mode **Basic Mode**

Figure 3-35: Landing Gear Indication

3.2.20. Unusual Attitude Mode

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 65°. Once enabled, the waterline symbol is replaced by large aircraft symbol and the unusual attitude mode remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the horizon. Recovery chevrons tied to the 30° and higher pitch scale indications (both positive and negative) aid in unusual attitude recovery and are a normal part of the pitch scale and are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.



Less than 30° pitch up and not in Unusual Attitude Mode

More than 30° pitch up and in Unusual Attitude Mode

Figure 3-36: Unusual Attitude Mode

> **NOTE:**
>
> The recovery chevrons are a normal part of the pitch scale but are not necessarily tied to unusual attitude mode.

The following features are disabled in unusual attitude mode:

1) Terrain and obstruction rendering
2) CDI
3) VDI
4) Flight path marker
5) Highway in the Sky boxes
6) Atmospheric perspective
7) Analog and digital AGL indication
8) Active waypoint symbology
9) Mini map
10) Traffic thumbnail
11) If in basic mode, PFD reverts to Normal Mode
12) If in zoom mode FOV, PFD reverts to normal FOV
13) Runways
14) Menus

3.2.21. PFD Background

The PFD has a 3D background generated from terrain elevation and obstruction elevation data stored in electronic memory. The "actual horizon" displayed on the PFD is based upon the higher of terrain within

90NM or a horizon calculated using a visible horizon equation. Thus, the relative elevation of terrain and obstructions with respect to aircraft altitude and performance is observed by reference to the primary flight information pitch ladder and FPM.

The background has two user-selectable field-of-view (FOV) modes, wide FOV mode (approximately 70°) and narrow FOV mode (approximately 35°). In unusual attitude mode, wide FOV mode is automatically selected on the PFD.

A blended-tone sky is displayed in conjunction with terrain. The sky fades from light blue at the horizon to dark blue at the top of the display to simulate atmospheric perspective and enhance the 3D presentation. Additionally, the blended sky increases contrast of the directional scale, emphasizes the horizon, and provides a compelling visual cue to a nose-high attitude.

Terrain and obstruction rendering uses hidden surface removal techniques while terrain/sky rendering uses atmospheric perspective techniques. Terrain with obstruction rendering is collectively user-selectable to declutter the display (***independent declutter of obstructions is not possible***). Terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled in the basic mode, unusual attitude mode, and during any reversionary mode. In unusual attitude mode, the blue-brown boundary line of the background decouples from the pitch scale at high pitch angles so a sliver of the blue-brown boundary line always remains visible to give guidance to the horizon.

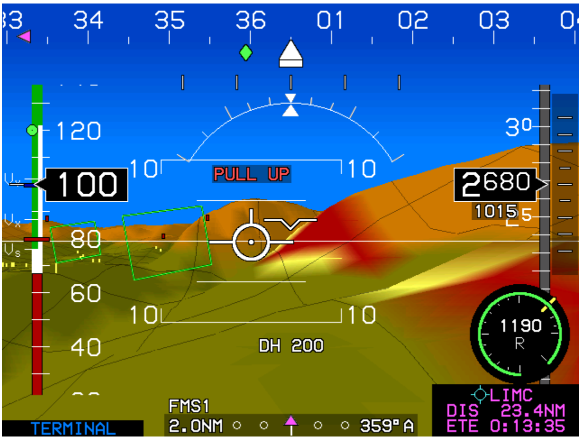


Figure 3-37: PFD Terrain and Obstructions

Terrain ahead of the aircraft is shown conformally with the artificial horizon in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft's current position and altitude. Worldwide terrain coverage is provided in each IDU and is shown with a resolution as in Table 3-7. Terrain is displayed ahead of the aircraft using a grid and simulates atmospheric perspective (terrain lines fade into the background ground color as they recede into the distance).

> **NOTE:**
>
> There is a one-degree dead band to prevent grid flicker while flying along one of the boundary latitudes. The grid space switching changes at one degree less latitude when flying towards the Equator than it does when flying toward the Poles.

At latitudes greater than 75°, no grid lines are shown. To keep the grid spacing relatively consistent, at latitudes between 45° and 75°, the longitude spacing is increased according as in Table 3-7.

Table 3-7: LAT-LON Resolution Boundaries

Latitude Range	Longitude Grid Spacing	Heading Boundary	
		Pole	Equator
0° to 46°	24 arc-seconds		
46° to 62°	48 arc-seconds	46°	45°
62° to 70°	72 arc-seconds	62°	61°
70° to 74°	96 arc-seconds	70°	69°
74° to 75°	120 arc-seconds	74°	73°

Table 3-8: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels

Feature	Terrain Coloring	Obstructions	Notes
SVS BASIC	Shades of brown for non-water terrain	Within the following ranges, depicted on PFD in SVS Basic or SVS TAWS mode: Narrow FOV: 17NM Wide FOV: 12NM Tops at or below aircraft altitude: **Amber**	Amber (yellow) and red colors not used for normal display of terrain. Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over shades of brown.
SVS TAWS	Shades of olive when at or below 100 ft. aircraft altitude Shades of brown when above 100 ft. aircraft altitude		Amber (yellow) and red colors used for normal display of terrain and terrain areas causing FLTA alerts. Deep blue for areas of water has precedence over other colors.

Table 3-8: Terrain and Obstruction Rendering Levels

Feature	Terrain Coloring	Obstructions	Notes
	TAWS coloring of FLTA alert or warning cells	Tops are above aircraft altitude: **Deep red** Obstructions causing TAWS alarms depicted in separate symbology (See Section 8 TAWS)	
None	No terrain nor obstructions are shown. Neither, **SVS BASIC** or **SVS TAWS** is selected.		

When terrain and obstruction rendering is deselected or disabled, the PFD screen background is a conventional blue over brown attitude display presentation without atmospheric perspective. Additionally, terrain may be deselected on the PFD and retained on the ND MAP display.

Figure 3-38: Terrain Deselected on PFD and Retained on MFD Map

> **NOTE:**
>
> The obstruction data is provided by Jeppesen and must be updated every 28 days to maintain current database information.

WARNING:

DO NOT USE THIS EFIS FOR TERRAIN-FOLLOWING FLIGHT. DO NOT ATTEMPT TO NAVIGATE USING TERRAIN DEPICTION. ALWAYS ADHERE TO PUBLISHED NAVIGATIONAL INSTRUMENT PROCEDURES AND NAVIGATIONAL CHARTS IN ALL FLIGHT CONDITIONS.

Obstructions such as towers, antennas, buildings, and other manmade structures are shown on the PFD display as vertical amber (yellow) lines. Obstructions are conformal in both location and size and are only shown in conjunction with terrain regardless of altitude. Obstructions representing a collision hazard are annunciated audibly and visually with a time-critical warning or caution alert. All vertical amber (yellow) lines in Figure 3-39 are obstructions. See Section 2 System Overview for description of alerts when obstructions represent a collision hazard.

WARNING:

MANY TOWERS, ANTENNAS, STRUCTURES, AND OBSTRUCTIONS ARE NOT IN THE DATABASE.

Obstructions without hazardous condition

Obstructions creating an OBSTRUCTION caution

Figure 3-39: PFD with Obstructions

3.2.22. Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector)

The FPM appears on the background to coincide with the aircraft's actual flight path as projected on the outside world. The FPM is laterally displaced parallel to the horizon with respect to the center of the display to account for the difference between aircraft track and heading, and is vertically displaced perpendicular to the horizon to account for aircraft climb or descent angle.

The FPM is not shown if:

1) In Basic Mode or when the EFIS is configured for Round Dials.

2) In unusual attitude mode, it disappears to allow the pilot to concentrate on the large aircraft symbol reference marks for unusual attitude recovery.

3) FPM at low speed (airspeed ≤ 45 KIAS) behavior further depends upon whether or not the aircraft is in flight or on the ground and whether or not a WOW/WOG is configured in EFIS limits.

4) The FPM may be inhibited with an external FPM INHBT switch if configured in EFIS limits.

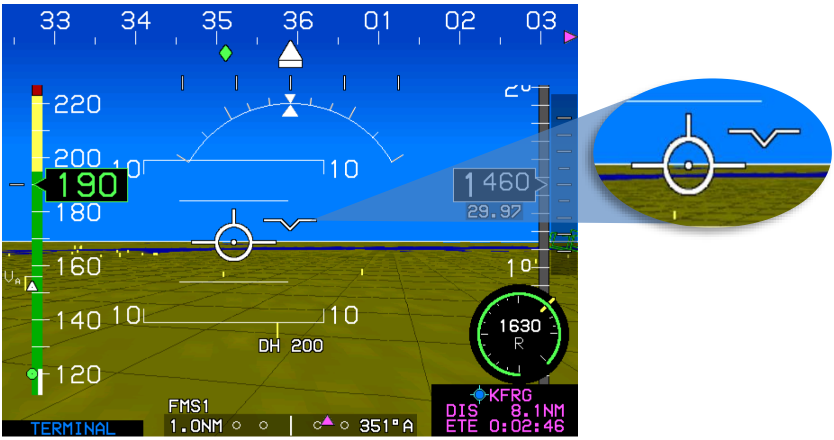
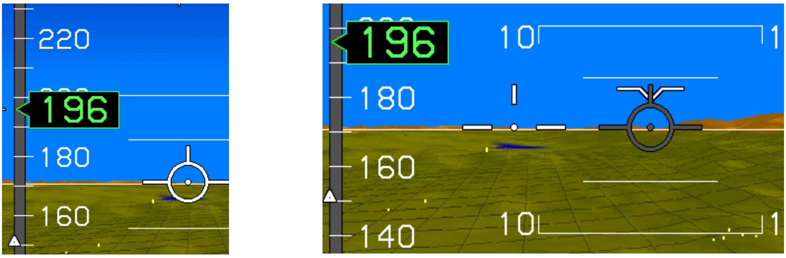


Figure 3-40: Flight Path Marker

Because the FPM is used in conjunction with a 3D background, the FPM utility normally associated with a HUD is achieved. When the FPM is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, it is removed from the display.



FPM nearing airspeed tape due to strong crosswind.

FPM caged in center due to excessive crosswinds from the right. Ghost FPM appears in proper lateral location.

Figure 3-41: Flight Path Marker Views

When the location of the ghost is displaced to the extent it interferes with heading, altitude, or airspeed indications, the ghost is removed from the display.

Table 3-9: Flight Path Marker Behavior

	Crab Angle
Cage (Become laterally centered on the display)	When exceeding 15° (wide FOV) or 7.5° (narrow FOV mode)
Uncage (Resume lateral floating)	When returning below 13° (wide FOV mode) or 6.5° (narrow FOV mode)
FPM movement is dampened by reference to aircraft pitch and heading so as not to deviate from pitch or heading at a rate greater than 1°/sec.	

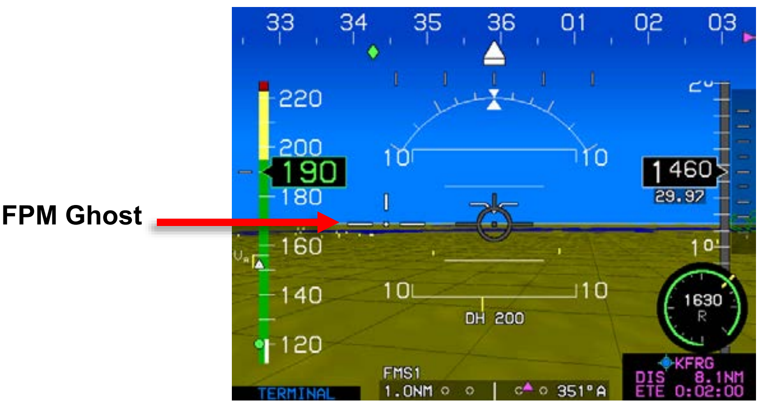
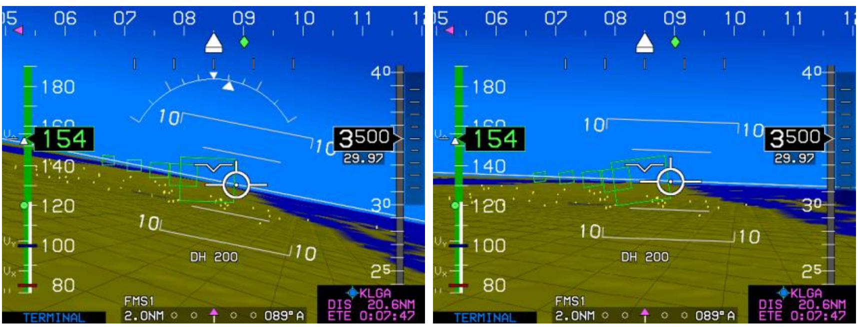


Figure 3-42: Flight Path Marker Ghost

Figure 3-43: Flight Path Marker Absence

3.2.23. Bank Angle Scale

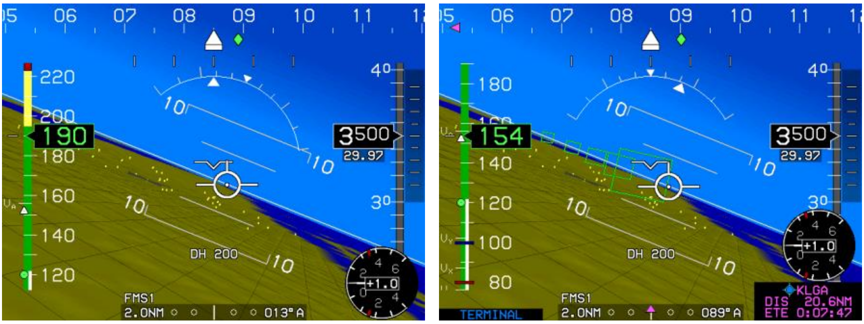
The bank scale and roll pointer are centered upon the large aircraft symbol reference marks in basic or unusual attitude mode. When decluttering is not selected, the bank angle scale and sky pointer appear full-time with level, 10°, 20°, 30°, 45°, and 60° marks on left and right sides.



With Bank Scale **Without Bank Scale**

Figure 3-44: With and Without Bank Angle Scale

When not manually decluttered, the bank angle scale appears full-time. Both, sky pointer and roll pointer configurations are shown Figure 3-45 demonstrating a right turn.



Roll Pointer **Sky Pointer**

Figure 3-45: PFD Bank Scale Configuration

When bank angle scale decluttering is selected, appearance of the bank angle scale and roll pointer are dampened based upon magnitude and time to prevent nuisance appearances, but a bank angle scale and sky pointer are displayed when magnitude of bank angle exceeds 2.8°.

3.2.24. Timer Indication

When selected, a countdown or count-up timer is displayed above the FPM or large aircraft symbol reference marks. The flight timer begins as soon as the first time the aircraft transitions from ground mode to air mode. This flight time continues until the EFIS is powered down.

Figure 3-46: Timer Indication

When the flight time display option is selected, the current elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or until any key is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display, it appears as FLT TM: 00:00:00.

Figure 3-47: Flight Time

3.2.25. Marker Beacon Symbology

Normal SVS Mode

Basic Mode

Built-in Test

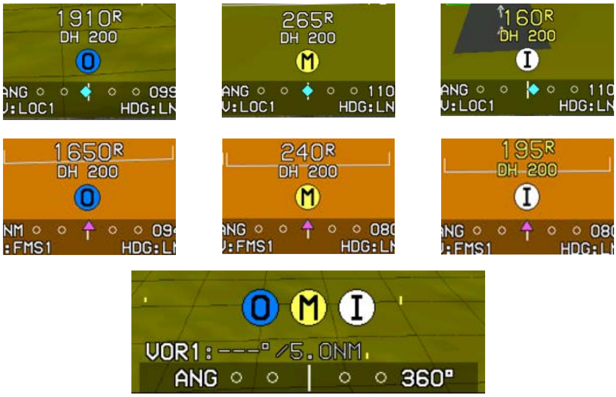
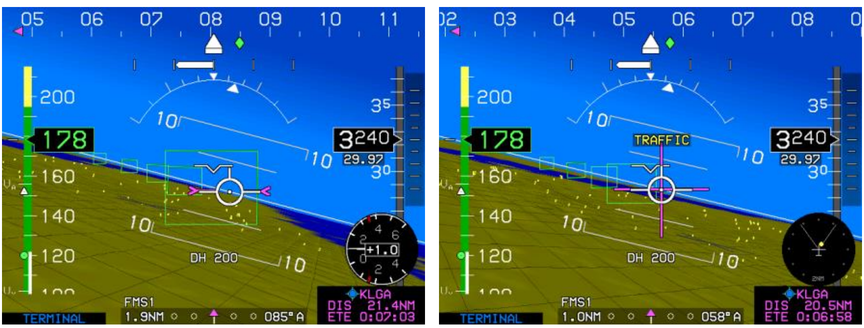


Figure 3-48: Marker Beacons

Marker beacon data acquired from the navigation receiver are displayed on the PFD but are disabled when the selected NAV source is other than VLOC1 and VLOC2. Valid marker beacon signals cause circular indicators with appropriate coloring and markings.

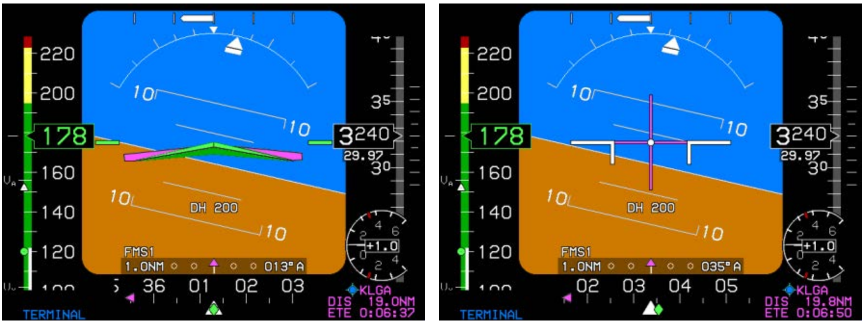
3.2.26. Flight Director Symbology

Flight director (FD) symbology is controlled on the IDU or integrated autopilot/FD. When selected, FD symbology and valid steering commands are received from the FD with one of the following symbols shown in normal mode. The PFD has a waterline symbol fixed in the center of the display. Rotation of the background, pitch scale, and background oriented display elements occurs relative to the location of the waterline symbol or large aircraft reference marks.



FD1 Single Cue **FD2 Dual Cue**

Figure 3-49: Flight Director



FD1 Single Cue **FD2 Dual Cue**

Figure 3-50: Flight Director (Basic Mode)

3.2.27. Course Deviation Indicator

Figure 3-51: Course Deviation Indicator

The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

1) Manual RNP: The pilot may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.

2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the “Level of Service” record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.

3) Default TSO-C146c operation: As specified as per Table 3-10 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the “Level of Service” record.

4) When FMS is the selected navigation source and not in RNP mode, the scale shall be the appropriate full-scale deflection value for the mode of flight. When FMS is the selected navigation source and in RNP mode, the scale readout shall be “RNP” and the RNP Advisory Alert should be referenced for scaling.

Table 3-10: CDI Behavior and Color

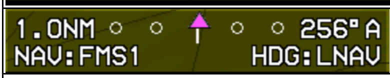
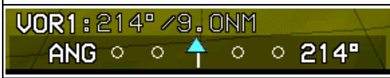
CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
Full-Scale Deflection	Flash
Slaved to GPS/SBAS Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight: **Enroute**: ±2NM **From Enroute to Terminal**: Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode. **From Terminal to Enroute**: Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode. **From Terminal to Approach**: If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP. **From Approach to Terminal**: Change to ±1 NM. **From Departure to Terminal**: If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.	
Slaved to GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON)	Amber (Yellow)
Normal conditions	Magenta
In sources other than FMS	ANG (angular) scale annunciation
With Analog Autopilot Configured	
	Reverse sensing (Course error exceeds 105°)
	Red "X" displayed over CDI when nav source is in a failed state.
	Holding the wings level
	Selected nav source FMS1
	Selected nav source FMS2 (Only available if a second GPS/SBAS receiver is installed).
	Selected nav source VLOC1
	Selected nav source VOR1 with "TO" indication and LNAV captured
	Selected nav source VOR2 With "FROM" indication

Table 3-10: CDI Behavior and Color	
CDI Pointer and Condition	**Color or Behavior**
(When VOR, LOC, or BC is the NAV source, DME, when available, is displayed next to the NAV source)	
	Reverse sensing (Course error exceeds 105°)
	Red "X" displayed over CDI
	Selected nav source FMS1 (during GPS approach)
	Selected nav source VLOC1
	Selected nav source VOR1 with "TO" indication
	Selected nav source VOR2 with "FROM" indication

3.2.28. OBS Setting of CDI

In automatic mode, the system controls the scale and OBS setting according to the requirements of GPS/SBAS (TSO-C-146c). The selected navigation source is annunciated below the CDI as follows:

1) NAV: **FMS1**/**FMS2**
2) NAV: **VOR1**/**LOC1**
3) NAV: **BC1**/**BC2** (annunciated instead of LOC1/2 when course error exceeds 105°)
4) NAV: **VOR2**/**LOC2**

3.2.29. Heading/Roll-Steering Sub-Mode

Heading/roll-steering sub-mode annunciation appears immediately right of the selected navigation source annunciation and displays:

1) HDG: **LVL** (Wing-Leveling Sub-Mode Guidance)
2) HDG: **LNAV** (LNAV Sub-Mode Guidance)
3) HDG: **BUG** (Heading Bug Sub-Mode Guidance)
4) HDG: **---** (Failure Sub-Mode)

3.2.30. CDI

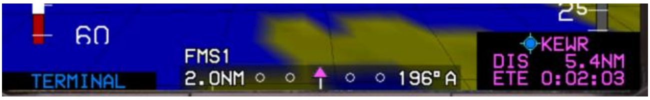


Figure 3-52: CDI

In an installation without an AP the heading/roll-steering sub-mode indication is decluttered from the CDI. Therefore, the shaded background of the CDI only falls behind the CDI scale. An abbreviated navigation source indication (without "NAV:") appears above the top left corner of the CDI scale. The heading/roll-steering sub-mode indication does not appear.

Regarding VOR, active navigation sources, the bearing appears, if available, next to the navigation source indication. For VOR, LOC, BC or active navigation sources, DME distances appear, if available, next to the navigation source indication.

3.2.31. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

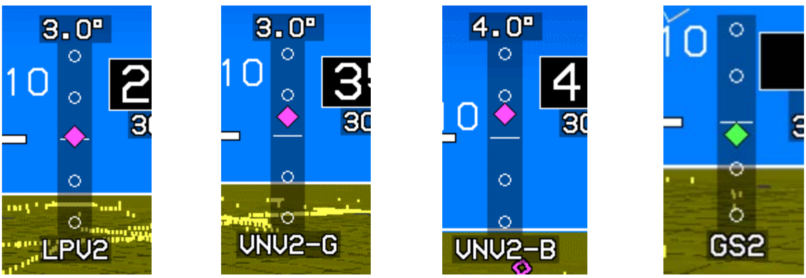


Figure 3-53: Vertical Deviation Indicator (Dual Sensors)

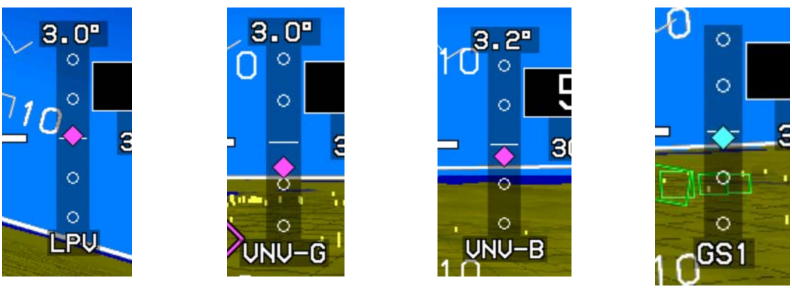


Figure 3-54: Vertical Deviation Indicator (Single Sensor)

Table 3-11: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

Source (Below VDI)	Behavior/Condition	Pointer Color
FMS	Conforms to the VDI display	Magenta
Glide Slope	Source must be valid when a valid glide slope is received.	VLOC1 Cyan VLOC2 Green
LPV or VNAV mode	Source is valid if: On VNAV descent segments when approaching Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true: 1) On VNAV descent segments; or 2) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is enabled, on VNAV level segments; or 3) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is disabled, when approaching the top of descent point to provide descent anticipation; Providing: 1) Aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full- scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; and 2) Aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., considering VNAV offsets); and 3) If on the final approach segment, aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 ft.).	Magenta

Table 3-11: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

Source (Below VDI)	Behavior/Condition	Pointer Color
LPV, VNV-G	During GPS LON or GPS VLON	Pointer and Text Color Amber (Yellow)
FMS		In either LPV or VNAV modes, the descent angle in degrees, is annunciated above the VDI.
All available sources	VDI disappears in Unusual Attitude mode.	

NOTE:

The VDI remains functional during a VLON condition, providing the indication can be computed. In the event the pilot must revert to LNAV minimums, the VDI provides advisory guidance for stabilized profile during descent. A loss of navigation alert does not require removal of navigation information from the navigation display. It is acceptable to continue to display navigation information concurrent with the failure/status annunciation when conditions warrant.

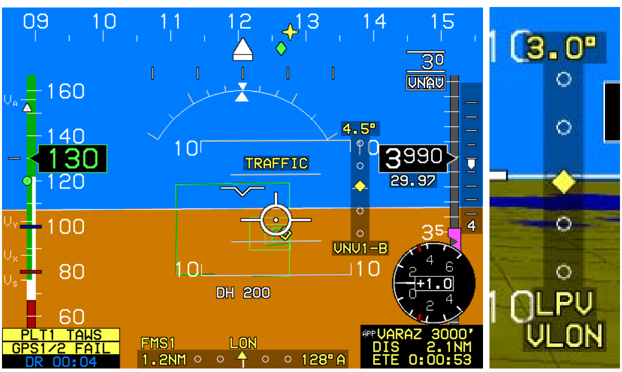
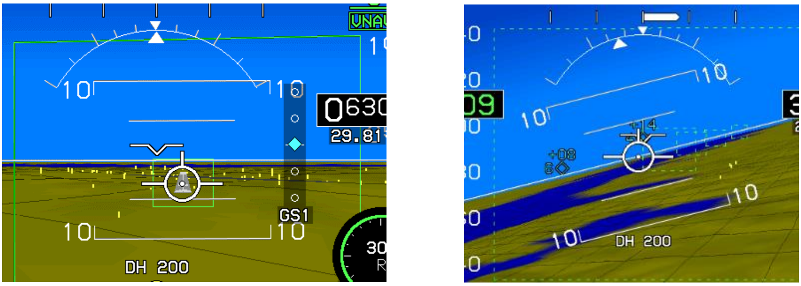


Figure 3-55: VDI Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON

3.2.32. Highway in the Sky/Skyway



Coupled to Skyway **Uncoupled to Skyway with AP configured**

Figure 3-56: Highway in the Sky

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course in 3D with a series of skyway boxes, which overly the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for details. For aircraft un-integrated or no autopilot, the HITS are always solid.

3.2.33. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

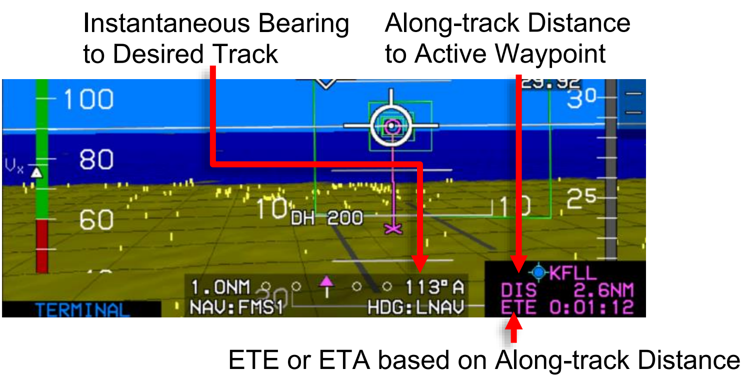


Figure 3-57: Active Waypoint with AP Configured

The PFD displays the active waypoint symbol as a magenta "tethered balloon" consisting of:

1) an "X" depicted at the ground location of the active waypoint;

2) a hoop or “tethered balloon” (for fly-over waypoints) or “tethered diamond” (for fly-by waypoints) depicted at the VNAV altitude or at aircraft altitude (if there is no VNAV altitude), and

3) a line connecting the “X” and the hoop.

The “X” and connecting line are not shown if no ground elevation information is encoded with the NavData® waypoint information (e.g., terminal and enroute fixes). The active waypoint symbol is drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of terrain and obstruction rendering, so an active waypoint behind terrain appears to be so. The active waypoint symbol disappears in unusual attitude mode but turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

The identifier of the waypoint along with the bearing and distance to the waypoint are displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD in magenta. If a target altitude is not set and the active waypoint has a VNAV altitude associated as in Figure 3-57, the identifier includes a display of the VNAV altitude.

NOTE:

Only the active waypoint is shown on the PFD. Subsequent waypoints in a route are displayed sequentially as the current active waypoint is passed. With terrain turned off, the active waypoint is always visible regardless of distance.

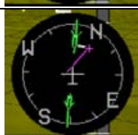
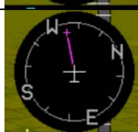
If the active waypoint is beyond the lateral limits of the screen, the magenta waypoint direction pointer (i.e., magenta triangle) on the directional scale indicates shortest direction of turn to the waypoint.

If the waypoint is only a hoop hanging in space, it is a fix and not directly associated with a NAVAID on the ground (e.g. VOR, NDB, user waypoint, or airport).

If the waypoint X disappears behind terrain on the PFD, there is terrain between the aircraft present position and the waypoint.

3.2.34. Mini Map

Figure 3-58: Mini Map

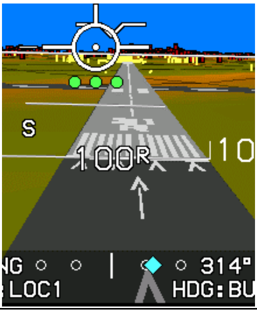
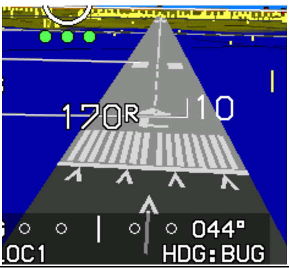
Table 3-12: Mini Map Behavior (When Not Decluttered)		
VOR Pointer, Active Leg, Ownship Symbol	**Color**	**Condition**
VOR 1	 Cyan	When valid
VOR 2	 Green	
Active Leg	 Magenta	GPS/SBAS normal
	 Amber (Yellow)	GPS/SBAS LON condition
Ownship Symbol	 Airplane FAR 23 with V_{NE}	All Conditions
	 Airplane with V_{MO}/M_{MO}	
Mutually exclusive with the analog AGL, traffic thumbnail, and analog G-Force indicator. Mini Map disappears in Unusual Attitude Mode		

3.2.35. Runways

The PFD displays airport runways in a 3D manner. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR approach, or STAR procedure, runways for the airport associated with the procedure, as well as, runways associated with the three nearest airports (computed by TAWS algorithms) are displayed. Runways are displayed with hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so runways behind terrain appear to be so. Runways are based on characteristics in the navigation database, including elevation, position, orientation, length, and width, and are displayed as defined in Table 3-13.

Figure 3-59: Runways

Table 3-13: Runway Drawing Criteria

Feature	Color	Notes
Runway markings, aiming point markings, centerline, designation, and displaced threshold arrows	Dark gray 	According to characteristics from navigation database, e.g., including position, orientation, length, and width.
Runway markings	Medium gray 	
Landing portion of the selected runway changes color to light gray.	Light gray 	Considering displaced threshold data. The four shades of gray used to render the runways, selected runway and their respective marking are distinguishable from each other and from the color white.
Runway markings for the selected runway	Contrasting lighter gray 	

3.2.36. Autopilot Annunciations

NOTE:

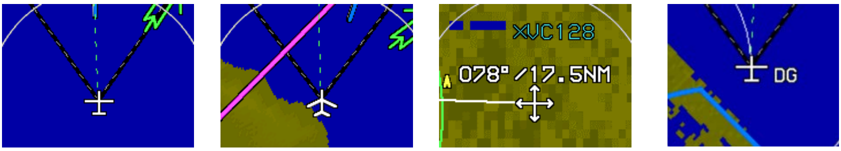
For all AP annunciations and symbology, see applicable Autopilot pilot guide and/or AFMS.

3.3. MFD Symbology

The Navigation Display (ND) is presented in a variety of formats:

1) Moving Map
2) Conventional HSI
3) Navigation Log
4) EICAS
5) Strikes (see WX-500 Lightning Strikes Appendix)
6) Traffic (see Traffic Appendix)
7) Datalink (see Datalink Appendix)
8) WX RDR (see Weather Radar Appendix)
9) Video (see Video Appendix)

3.3.1. Ownship Symbology



Airplane FAR 23 with V_{NE} | **Airplane with V_{MO}/M_{MO}** | **Pan Mode** | **AHRS in DG mode**

Figure 3-60: Ownship Symbols

> **NOTE:**
>
> When not panning with the AHRS in the DG mode, a “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

3.3.2. Moving Map

Figure 3-61: Basic Moving Map

Figure 3-62: Moving Map with Instrument Approach with HSI Overlay Selected

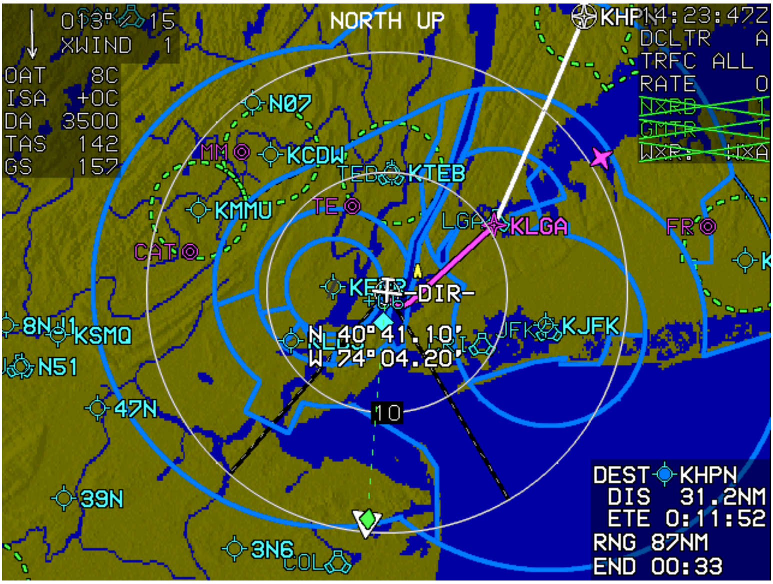


Figure 3-63: North-Up Arc Mode with LAT/LON Selected

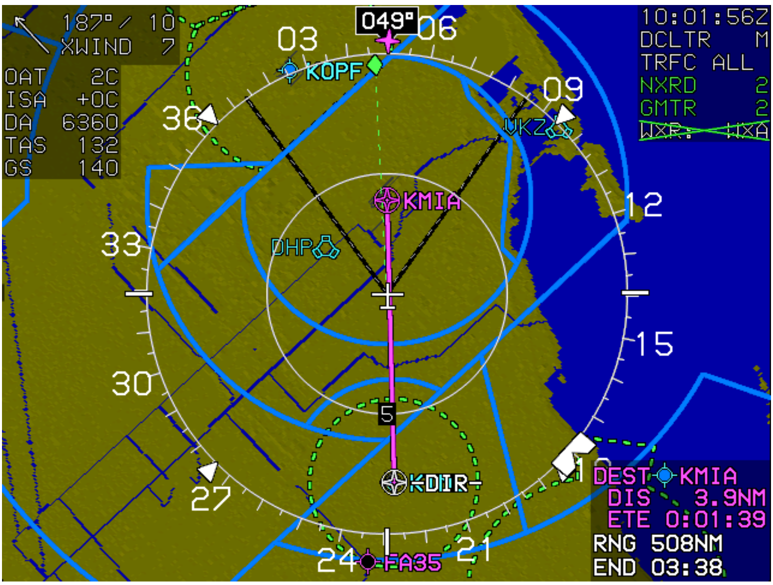


Figure 3-64: Heading-Up Centered Mode

In heading-up mode, the magnetic digital heading readout and pointer are aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol.

3.3.3. Compass Rose/ND Boundary Circle Symbol

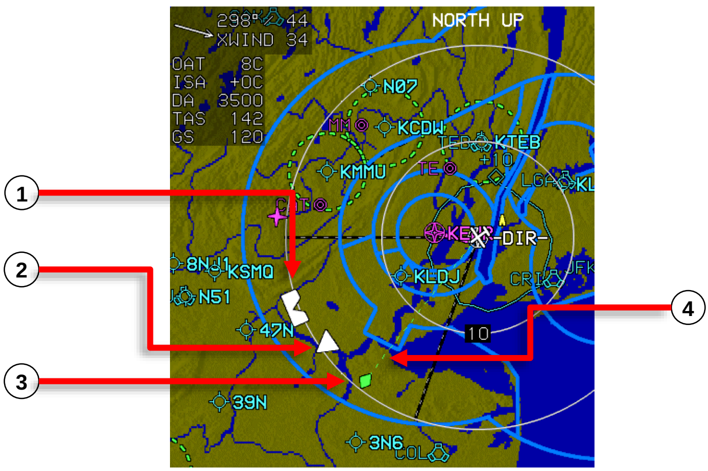
A user-settable heading bug that geometrically interacts with the current form of the heading pointer appears on the compass rose or ND boundary circle. A green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth appears as in Figure 3-66. The track pointer, lubber line and capture predictor arc are not displayed when ground speed is below 30 Kts.

The waypoint pointer turns yellow (amber) in the event of a GPS Loss of Integrity or Loss of Navigation caution.

Normal Mode

True North Mode

Figure 3-65: Compass Rose



1) Heading Bug

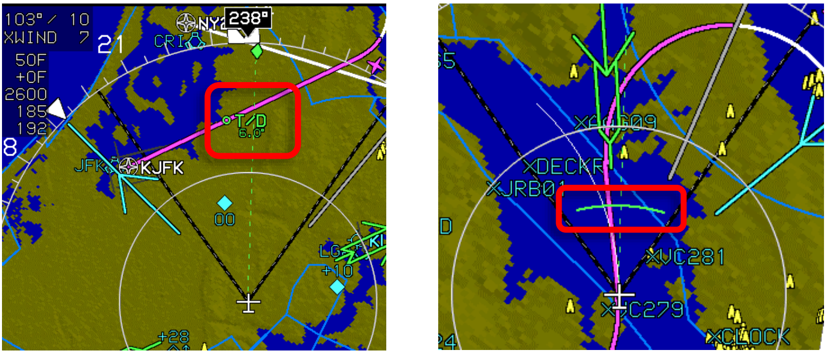
2) Heading Pointer

3) Ground Track Pointer

4) Green dashed lubber line leads to ground track diamond

Figure 3-66: ND Boundary Circle Symbol

3.3.4. Altitude Capture Predictor/Top-of-Descent



Top of Descent　　　Top of Climb/Bottom of Descent

Figure 3-67: Top-of-Descent or Top-of-Climb

When a selected altitude or VNAV altitude is specified on the PFD, T/D marks correct point on the flight plan path at which descent must commence and contains location on the flight plan path with indication of the glide path angle used to calculate position. After passing top of descent along the lubber line, altitude is captured and shown as a green arc located ahead of the aircraft. The arc marks the bottom-of-descent or top-of-climb point.

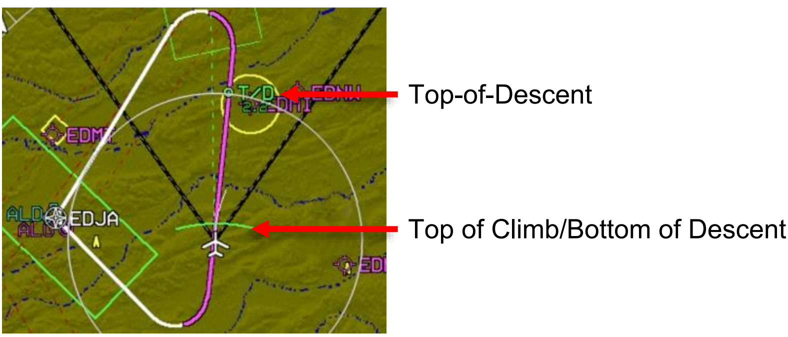


Figure 3-68: Top-of-Descent and Bottom-of-Descent

3.3.5. Projected Path

When the aircraft is in a bank angle, a projected path emanates from the ownship symbol. This curving path is based on aircraft bank angle and ground speed as projected one minute into the future up to a maximum of 180° of turn. The projected path or “noodle” assists in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

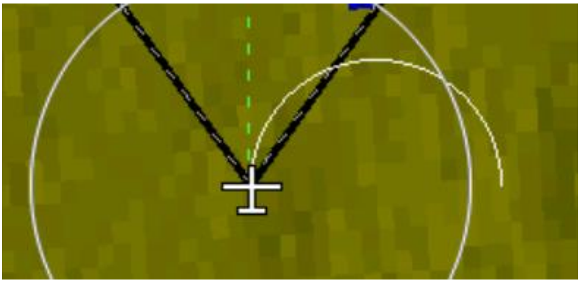
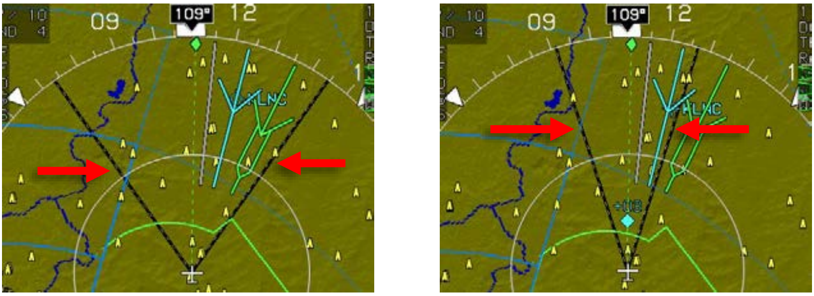


Figure 3-69: Projected Path

3.3.6. Field of View Indication



Normal FOV (Zoom Off) **Narrow FOV (Zoom On)**

Figure 3-70: Field of View

FOV is indicated on the background with a set of segmented gray lines leading out from the ownship symbol in either 35° or 70° angles depending on the zoom mode setting in the PFD.

3.3.7. Range

The white range ring is centered on the aircraft's position to quickly estimate distances. Distance (in NM) from the aircraft to the ring is a white number overlaying the 6 o'clock position of the ring. The range ring is half the distance to the directional scale. Consequently, when the range ring shows a distance of 5NM, the directional scale is 10NM. Rotate ❶ or ❷ to set the overall map scale ranges to 0.5, 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 25, 100, and, 200.as appropriate.

Figure 3-71: Range

3.3.8. Glide Range Depiction

Figure 3-72: Glide Range

When selected, the glide range depicts the engine out glide range as presented within a cyan border around the ownship symbol. This range symbology is calculated based on the best glide speed and glide ratio as set in the EFIS limits. The following are used to calculate the shape and size of the glide ring: aircraft altitude, speed, heading, winds, and terrain.

3.3.9. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the ND.

Zulu Time **Local Time**

Figure 3-73: Clock Options

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Table 3-14: Clock Options</th></tr>
<tr><th>Feature</th><th>Options</th><th colspan="2">Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td>Zulu or Local Time</td><td>hh:mm:ssZ
hh:mm:ssL</td><td colspan="2">Synchronized with the GPS/SBAS constellation</td></tr>
<tr><td>Declutter Mode*</td><td>DCLTR A
DCLTR M</td><td colspan="2">= Automatic declutter mode
= Manual declutter mode</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">Terrain Status*</td><td rowspan="3">Enabled or Disabled</td><td colspan="2">Indicated by the absence or presence of terrain.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Manually turned off</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Failed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Traffic Status*</td><td colspan="3">See Traffic Appendix</td></tr>
<tr><td>Strikes Status</td><td colspan="3">See Strikes Appendix</td></tr>
<tr><td>Datalink Weather Status</td><td colspan="3">See Datalink Appendix</td></tr>
<tr><td>WX-RDR Status</td><td colspan="3">See WX-RDR Appendix</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">* Show full MFD Status in EFIS limits</td></tr>
</table>

3.3.10. Air Data and Ground Speed

Normal Mode **True North Mode**

Figure 3-74: Air Data and Ground Speed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the ND:

1) **Wind**: Information consists of the following readouts:

   a) Direction in degrees;

   b) Speed in knots;

   c) Crosswind component in knots; and

   d) Graphical wind vector arrow oriented to correspond to the ND orientation.

NOTE:

Wind information is not shown when indicated airspeed is in the noise range of less than 30 knots, when the aircraft is in the ground mode, or when the AHRS is in DG mode.

2) **Density Altitude**: Digitally in feet. Decluttered if the “Show Density altitude” disabled in EFIS limits.

3) **Outside Air Temperature**: Digitally in °C or °F (as configured).

4) **International Standard Atmosphere (ISA)**: Difference between ISA temperature and current outside air temperature is displayed digitally in °C or °F (negative value = less than standard OAT). Decluttered if the “Show ISA Temperature” is disabled in EFIS limits.

5) **True Airspeed**: Digitally in knots. Decluttered if the “True Airspeed” is disabled in EFIS limits.

6) **Ground Speed**: Digitally in knots.

3.3.11. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

GPS in normal state and current active waypoint | **GPS in LON condition** | **GPS in normal state and not the current active waypoint**

Figure 3-75: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Table 3-15: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Function	Conditions	Type/Symbols
TO Waypoint	If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, and ETE/ETA for the active waypoint (“TO” waypoint) are shown. Waypoint information is magenta but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution.	ETA or ETE Degree (°) or True North (^{T}) symbol

Table 3-15: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions		
Function	**Conditions**	**Type/Symbols**
DEST Waypoint	If there is an active flight plan, waypoint type, identifier, range, and ETE/ETA for the last waypoint ("DEST" waypoint) are shown. If the active waypoint is not the last waypoint, range and time to destination waypoint are based on the flight plan route. Otherwise, range and time are based on a direct geodetic path. Waypoint information is white but turns amber (yellow) with GPS LON caution.	ETA or ETE Degree (°) or True North (^{T}) symbol
Range	Based on instantaneous fuel flow, fuel remaining and ground speed are shown immediately below "DEST" waypoint information for easy comparison.	
Endurance	Based on instantaneous fuel flow and fuel remaining is shown.	

3.3.12. Navigation Data

Figure 3-76: Navigation Data and Airspace Depiction

The ND displays navigation symbology in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol and includes the symbols in Table 3-16. The ND has manual and automatic decluttering of navigation data. There are six levels of automatic declutter based upon the number of potential navigation data symbols drawn in the current ND format and range. Decluttering is as follows:

1) **Airports**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, large airports (IFR procedure and longest runway and automatically adjusted threshold needed to achieve desired symbol count) are always shown; IFR airports that are not large airports are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, and 4; and VFR airports are shown in levels 1, 2, and 3.

2) **VORs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, VORs are shown in levels 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5.

3) **NDBs**: Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, NDBs are shown in levels 1 and 2. Both enroute and terminal NDBs are shown.

4) **Fixes** (including User Waypoints): Manually or automatically decluttered. In automatic declutter mode, enroute fixes are shown in level 1. Terminal fixes are manually selected and not shown in automatic declutter mode. Enroute fixes, terminal fixes, and user waypoints may be manually decluttered separately from each other.

5) **High Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.

6) **Low Altitude Airways**: Manually selected.

The ND displays navigation symbology in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol and includes the following symbols.

Table 3-16: Navigation Symbology

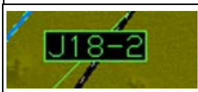
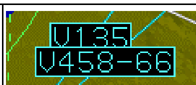
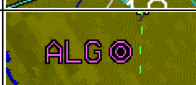
	High Altitude Airway		Low Altitude Airway
			
	IFR Airport		NDB
	VFR Airport		Fix

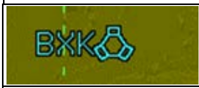
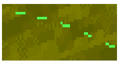
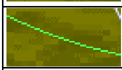
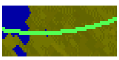
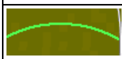
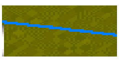
Table 3-16: Navigation Symbology			
	VORTAC		DME only or TACAN
	VOR		User Waypoint
	User Waypoint in Pan Mode		HSI CDI scale

Table 3-17: Airspace Depiction		
Type of ARINC 424 Airspace		**Vertical Limits**
	Dashed lines	More than ±500’
	Solid lines	Within ±500’
	Thick solid lines	Within airspace vertical limits
		Airspace Color
	Class C, Control Area, TRSAs, Class D	Green
	Class B, TCAs (Where applicable)	Blue
	Caution areas, danger areas, MOAs, training areas, warning areas, unknown areas	Amber (Yellow)
	Prohibited areas, restricted areas	Red

3.3.13. Analog Navigation Symbology

When selected, the ND displays analog (VOR1 and VOR2) navigation symbology when valid. When VOR1 and/or VOR2 pointers are selected for display, bearing and distance for the selected VOR pointers appear at the bottom of the ND view (cyan for VOR1, green for VOR2). Both VOR 1 and 2 distance readouts match the color of the respective pointer. If the DME channel is in hold mode, “H” is shown above the distance readout. If a bearing or distance are not valid, the respective field is filled with dashes.

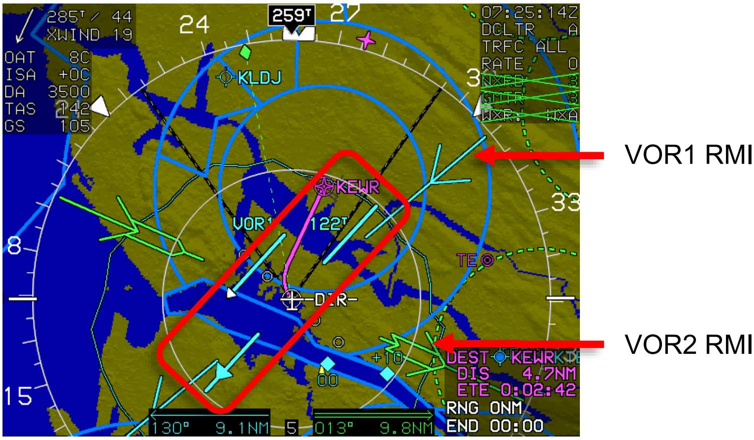


Figure 3-77: Analog Navigation Symbology, in ARC Mode with HSI selected

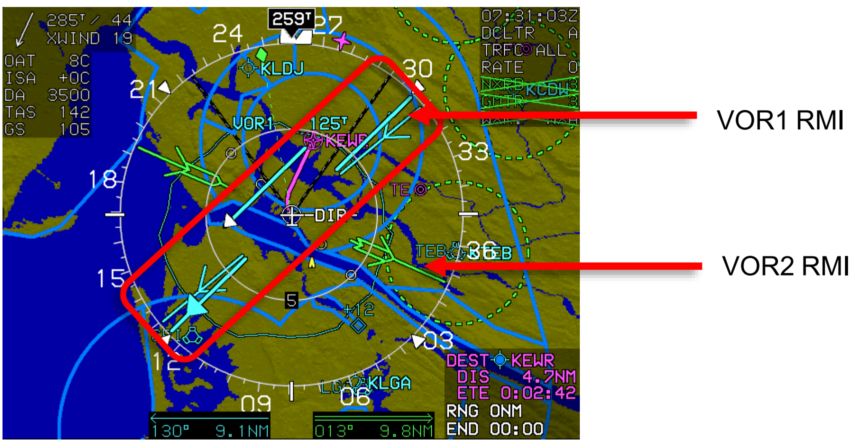


Figure 3-78: Analog Navigation Symbology, HSI in Centered Mode

3.3.14. Borders

National and United States state borders are drawn if selected at all map scales. They are white if the ND background includes terrain.

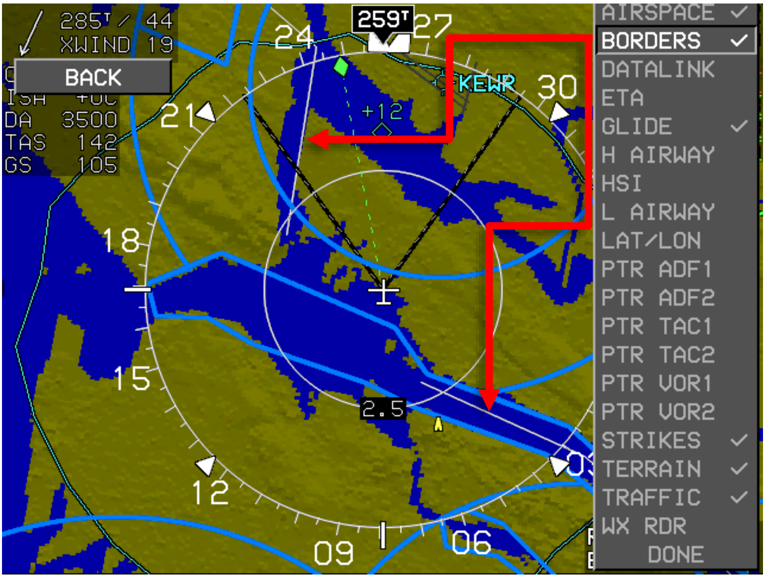


Figure 3-79: With International and State Borders

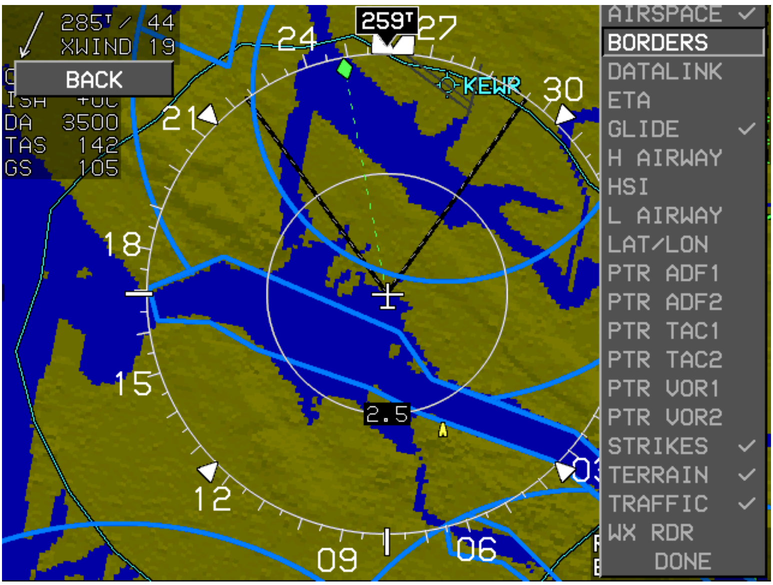


Figure 3-80: Without International and State Borders

3.3.15. Terrain/Obstructions

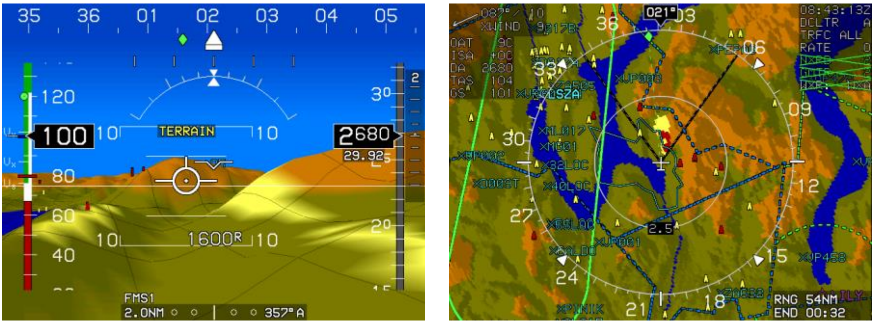


Figure 3-81: Terrain and Obstructions

Terrain and obstruction rendering is user-selectable to declutter the display by deselecting terrain *(independent declutter of obstructions is not possible)*. Furthermore, terrain and obstruction rendering is disabled when:

1) The GPS/SBAS sensor is failed; OR

2) When the ADC is failed; OR

3) When the horizontal figure of merit exceeds the greater of 0.3NM or the horizontal alarm limit for the mode of flight.

Terrain is displayed on the ND in correct relationship to the ownship symbol using color to show relationship to aircraft altitude.

Table 3-18: Terrain Color

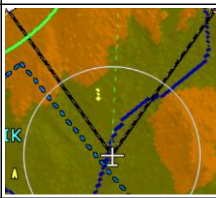
Based on Aircraft Altitude	Color	Notes
Terrain more than 100 feet below aircraft altitude		Terrain slope determines shade
Terrain within 100 feet below aircraft altitude		
FLTA alerts	Amber and Red	See Section 8 TAWS

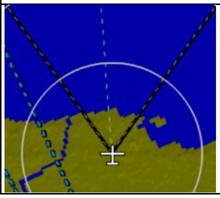
Table 3-18: Terrain Color		
Based on Aircraft Altitude	**Color**	**Notes**
Water at all altitudes		Takes precedence over other colors

Table 3-19: Obstructions		
Lateral Distance Away	21 NM or less	PFD in Narrow FOV
	15 NM or less	PFD in Wide FOV
	8.5 NM or greater	Not depicted on ND
	8.5 NM or less	As described below
Vertical Criteria	More than 2000’ below aircraft	Not depicted on ND
	Within 2000’ but more than 500’ below aircraft	Depicted in amber
	At or above aircraft altitude	Depicted in deep red

NOTE:

See Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System for obstructions causing TAWS alarms and depiction of separate symbology.

3.3.16. Pan Mode

The map has a pan mode to view details along the route of flight and at the intended or alternate destination while in flight or on the ground. When pan mode is active, use labeled buttons to move the pan mode location north, south, east, and west in a north-up, centered orientation. Upon entering the pan mode, the heading pointer, track pointer, lubber line, waypoint pointer, analog navigation symbology, and field of view lines are removed.

Figure 3-82 shows the line with bearing and distance from the map center to the aircraft’s current position in white when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. When panning, the nearest displayed airport, VOR, NDB, or fix within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. Buttons are labeled to allow for viewing or hiding waypoint information. When exiting the pan mode, all previous settings are restored as before pan mode was enabled.

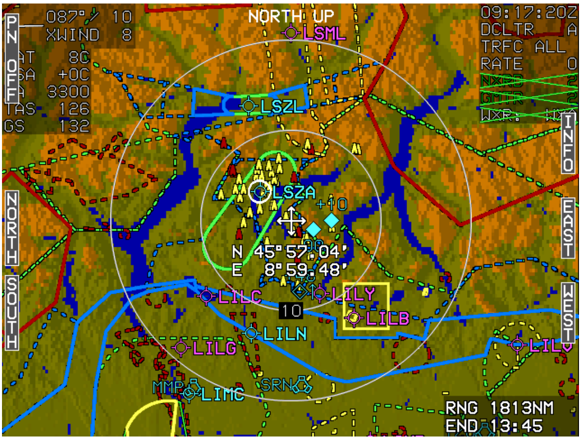


Figure 3-82: Pan Mode

3.3.17. Direct Point

Unnamed waypoints appear depending upon the procedure loaded when a direct-to command is entered. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for more information.

1) **-ALT-** for altitude terminations
2) **-DIR-** for waypoints that begin a direct-to leg
3) **-DME-** for distance or DME terminations
4) **-INT-** for intercept terminations
5) **-RAD-** for radial terminations

Figure 3-83: Direct Point

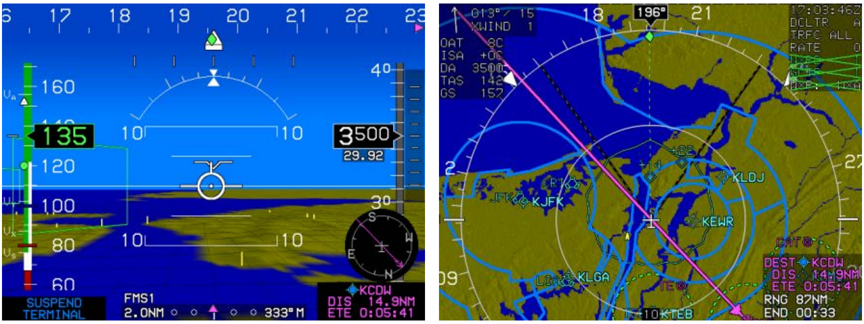
3.3.18. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

Figure 3-84: Active Flight Plan Path

When there is an active flight plan, and the GPS/SBAS setting is automatic, the flight plan is shown on the ND in its correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

3.3.18.1. Manual Course

Manual course through the waypoint shown centered on the waypoint, which matches lateral guidance on PFD (GPS/SBAS) CDI in manual mode, skyway boxes, and mini map.



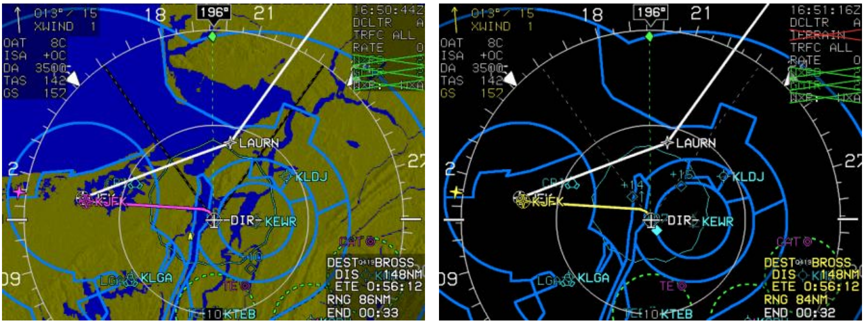
PFD **MFD**

Figure 3-85: GPS/SBAS OBS Manual

3.3.18.2. Runways

The ND displays airport runways in their correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol. Upon activation of a DP, VFR approach, IFR Approach, or STAR procedure, the runways for the airport or User Waypoint associated with the procedure appear. In addition, the runways associated with the three nearest airports (as computed by the TAWS Algorithms) are displayed. When the depiction of a runway is wide enough, runway markings, including aiming point, centerline, designation, threshold and displaced threshold markings are shown. (See Table 3-13.)

3.3.18.3. Active Flight Plan Path



Normal **GPS LON**

Figure 3-86: Loss of Navigation

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

3.4. HSI Page

When selected, VOR1, VOR2, and ADF navigation are displayed with a magenta single line FMS1 (①), a cyan single line VOR1 needle (②), and a green double line VOR2 needle (③), and ADF (④) tuned to an NDB. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the HSI NAV source fails, a red “X” is displayed in place of the HSI deviations.

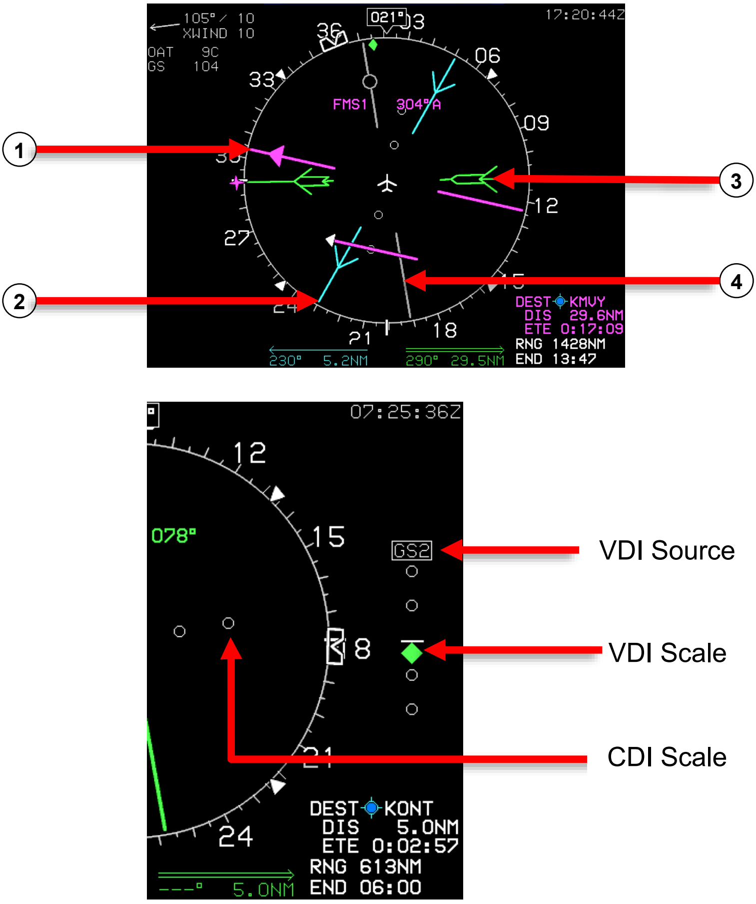


Figure 3-87: HSI Page

3.5. Analog Navigation Symbology

3.5.1. Conventional HSI/PTR Format

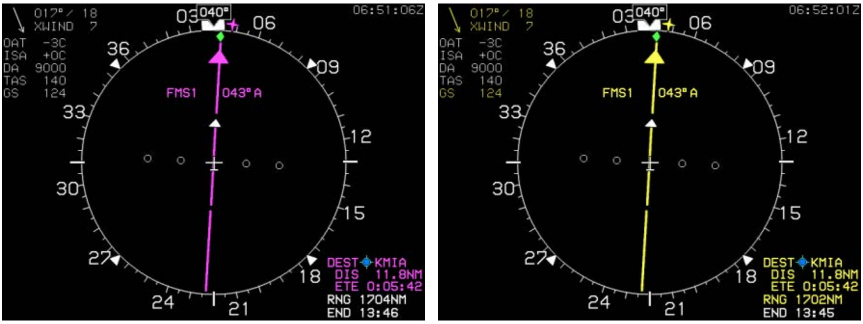
When selected, the EFIS displays conventional HSI symbology, including a selected course needle, a lateral deviation indicator, and a TO-FROM indicator.

Magenta (if FMS is the selected navigation source);

1) Cyan (if VLOC1 is the selected navigation source);

2) Green (if VLOC2 is the selected navigation source); or

3) Yellow when HSI is slaved to GPS/SBAS and there is a GPS LON condition.



Normal Magenta Pointer

GPS LON Condition Amber (Yellow) Pointer

Figure 3-88: HSI Pointer Color

As seen in Figure 3-88, a green diamond-shaped track pointer appears on the compass rose and aligns with the aircraft's track across the earth at ground speeds greater than 30 kts. When selected, the VLOC1, with GS1 is displayed. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown.

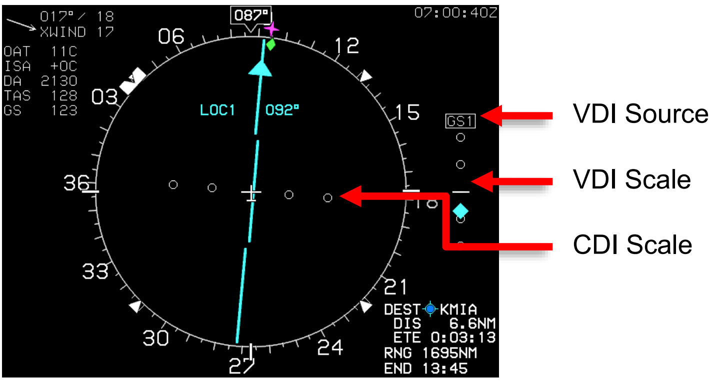


Figure 3-89: Conventional HSI/PTR Format: HSI with VDI and Glide Slope

When VOR1 and VOR2 pointers are selected for display, a distance display appears at the bottom of the page. If bearing or distance are not valid, the respective field is filled with dashes.

Figure 3-90: Conventional HSI with Loss of Navigation Condition

When selected, VOR1, VOR2, TAC1, TAC2, ADF1 and ADF2 navigation are displayed with a magenta single line FMS1 or FMS2. VOR1 and TAC1 needles are single cyan needles. VOR2/TAC2 needles are green double needles. The TACAN needles are visibly differentiated from the VOR needles using a straight line and barb at the needle point  .

ADF1 is a single gray needle and ADF2 is a gray double needle. If the radio signal is invalid, the associated navigation pointer is not shown.

A VDI appears, as in Figure 3-90, when the VDI source is valid to display vertical deviation information for the currently selected navigation source. When the selected vertical source is FMS, the VDI displayed on the HSI has the same behavior as the VDI displayed on the PFD with the exception of the VDI source displayed on the top of the VDI to avoid clutter with waypoint information below:

1) VNV1-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode

2) VNV2-B: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode

3) GS1: Glide Slope #1

4) GS2: Glide Slope #2

When selected, the HSI displays analog (VOR1 [cyan] and VOR2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for VOR1 and VOR2, a bearing and distance display for the selected VOR pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same color of the respective pointer. When an ADF2 is enabled, the ADF2 double needle is as shown in Table 3-20.

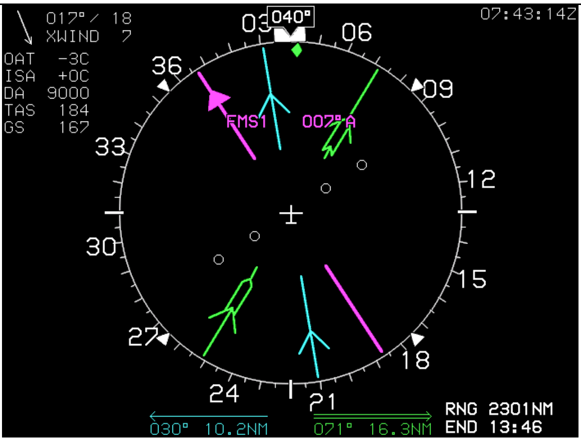
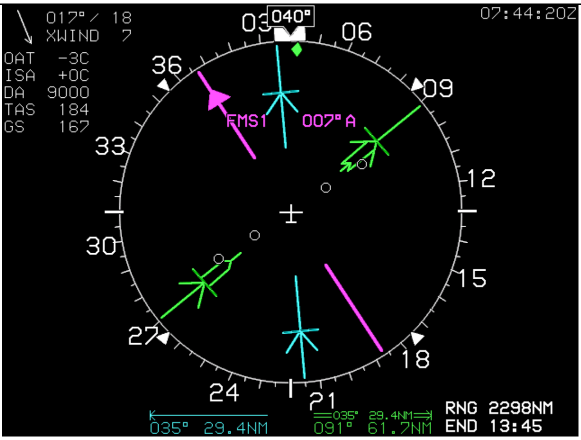
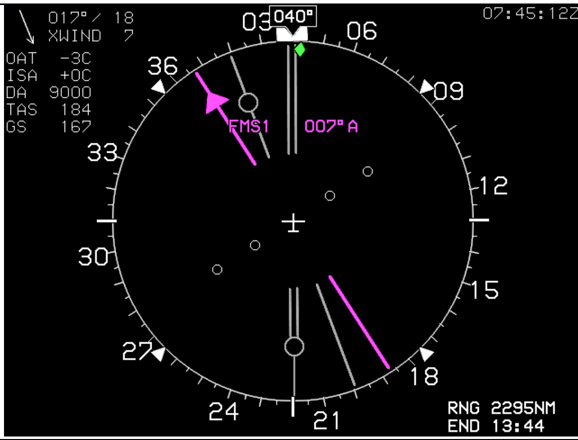
Table 3-20: HSI	
VOR1/VOR2	
TAC1/TAC2	

Table 3-20: HSI	
ADF1/ADF2	

If a DME channel is in hold mode, the associated distance readout is displayed in amber (yellow) and "H" is shown above the distance readout.

Figure 3-91: HSI Bearing Distance Readout with DME in HOLD

When selected, the HSI displays analog (TAC1 [cyan] and TAC2 [green]) navigation symbology with an RMI pointer format overlaid upon the HSI. When the signal is invalid, the associated pointer is not shown. When the signal is valid for TAC1 and TAC2, a bearing and distance display for the selected TACAN pointers appears at the bottom of the display in the same color of the respective pointer.

Figure 3-92: HSI Bearing Distance Readout with TACAN

Valid marker beacon (if configured in the EFIS limits) are displayed on the PFD and HSI page with appropriate coloring markings. Only during a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon may be active. Marker beacons are disabled when the NAV source is FMS.

Figure 3-93: HSI with Marker Beacon Displayed

3.5.2. Compass Rose Symbols

When selected, a digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appear on the compass rose boundary circle.

Normal Mode **True North Mode**

Figure 3-94: Compass Rose

When selected, a digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. If referenced to magnetic north, the heading readout uses the degree (°) symbol. Otherwise, a stylized true north.

NOTE:

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for description of the following heading modes with the AHRS and EFIS:

1) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North
2) ADAHRS Slaved—EFIS True North
3) ADAHRS Free/”DG”—EFIS Magnetic North
4) ADAHRS Free/”DG”—EFIS True North

1) Green ground track pointer
2) Cyan OBS CDI for VOR1
3) VOR1 OBS setting
4) Valid marker beacon

Figure 3-95: PFD and MFD HSI with Marker Beacon Displayed

3.5.3. Air Data and Ground Speed

Air data and ground speed are displayed as shown as specified in § 3.3.10.

Figure 3-96: HSI Display Air Data and Ground Speed

3.5.4. Clock/Options

Zulu Time

Local Time

Figure 3-97: HSI Clock

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the HSI:

1) **Zulu Time or Local Time**: As specified in § 3.3.9.

2) **Traffic**: If configured as specified in Traffic Appendix.

3) **Datalink**: If configured as specified in Datalink Appendix.

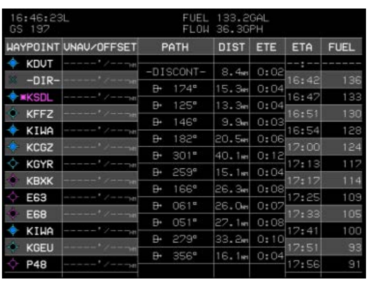
4) **Weather Radar**: If configured as specified in Weather Radar Appendix.

3.5.5. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

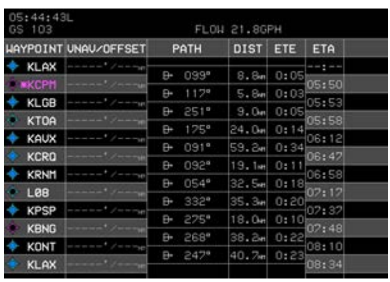
Fuel totalizer and waypoint distance are displayed in lower right corner of the HSI as specified in § 3.3.11.

Figure 3-98: HSI Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance

3.6. Navigation Log



With Fuel Enabled



Without Fuel Enabled

Figure 3-99: Navigation Log

3.6.1. Clock and Ground Speed

The following are displayed in the upper left corner of the nav log:

1) **Time: Zulu or Local Time**: As specified in § 3.3.9.

2) **Ground Speed**: Displayed digitally in knots.

3.6.2. Fuel Remaining and Fuel Flow Data

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the nav log:

1) **Fuel Remaining**: If fuel level or fuel flow is available, current fuel remaining is displayed digitally in fuel units as set in EFIS limits.

2) **Fuel Flow**: If fuel flow is available, current total fuel flow is displayed digitally in fuel units as set in EFIS limits.

3.6.3. Waypoint Identifier Column

The identifier for each waypoint of the active flight plan is displayed in the left column of the nav log. The active waypoint, indicated with an asterisk, is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. Brackets indicate suppressed waypoints. Navigation data symbols are shown with the waypoint identifier to easily distinguish the waypoint type.

When a waypoint is part of a procedure or parallel offset, the following legends are drawn on top of the navigation data symbols:

1) **SAR** = Waypoint is part of SAR pattern

2) **HOLD** = Waypoint is part of an enroute Holding pattern

3) **Airway Designation =** Waypoint is part of the designated Airway

4) **FAF** = Waypoint is a final approach fix

5) **MAP** = Waypoint is a missed approach point

6) **MA** = Waypoint is part of the missed approach segment of an instrument approach procedure

7) **APP** = Waypoint is part of an instrument approach procedure but not a final approach fix, missed approach point, nor part of the missed approach segment

8) **VFR** = Waypoint is part of a VFR approach

9) **STAR** = Waypoint is part of a standard terminal arrival procedure

10) **DP** = Waypoint is part of a departure procedure

11) **PTK** = Parallel Offset. In the case of a STAR or DP waypoint subject to a parallel offset, both STAR/DP and PTK are shown

3.6.4. VNAV and VNAV Offset Column

VNAV altitude and associated VNAV offset (in NM) are displayed immediately to the right of the waypoint identifier column. In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is "GPI" to designate distance to the glide path intercept point. VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or manually entered are white; those computed automatically are gray. (Auto-computed climb altitudes are dashed.) VNAV and VNAV offset column elements align with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the VNAV information applies to the associated waypoint.

NOTE:

No VNAV data (dashes) is associated with a suppressed waypoint, as a suppressed waypoint is not actually a part of the active flight plan.

3.6.5. Path Column

LNAV path between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the VNAV and VNAV offset column. The following are displayed:

1) Suppressed waypoints (not part of the active flight plan) are shown as dashes.

2) Discontinuities (i.e., a leg where FMS is unable to compute a valid path) are shown with the legend "-DISCONT-."

3) Skipped waypoints are shown with the legend "-SKIPPED-."

4) Altitude terminations are shown with leg course followed by the altitude at which the leg terminates.

5) Manual termination legs are shown with leg course followed by "-MAN-."

6) Procedure turn legs are shown with a pictorial representation of a procedure turn (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit course for the procedure turn.

7) Holding pattern legs are shown with a pictorial representation of a holding pattern (either left or right turns) as well as the inbound course for the holding pattern.

8) Arc legs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) as well as the entry and exit radials for the arc.

9) Radius to a fix legs are shown with a pictorial representation of an arc (either left or right turns) followed by “RF.”

10) SAR pattern legs are shown with a pictorial representation of the SAR pattern (Expanding Square, Rising Ladder, Orbit, Race Track, or Sector, each with either left or right turns) followed by “SAR.” (See SAR appendix.)

11) Other leg types (Direct, DME termination, radial termination, intercept or course to a fix) are shown using the Direct-To Symbol followed by the leg course.

The vertical position of the path column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the path information applies to the leg between waypoints are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the path information applies to the leg between waypoints.

3.6.6. Distance Column

Distance between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the path column and is calculated considering the associated path as well as parallel offsets. In the case of a discontinuity, distance between waypoints is the direct geodetic distance between the two waypoints. In the case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints, discontinuities or manual transitions, the distance between waypoints are shown in dashes. The vertical position of the Distance column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate distance information applies to the leg between waypoints.

3.6.7. Estimated Time Enroute Column

ETE between waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the distance column and is calculated considering the associated distance between waypoints and current ground speed. In the case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints, discontinuities or manual transitions, the distance between waypoints are shown in dashes. The vertical position of the ETE column elements are offset from waypoint identifier column elements to indicate ETE information applies to the leg between waypoints.

3.6.8. Estimated Time of Arrival Column

ETA at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints are displayed immediately to the right of the ETE column. ETA at the active waypoint is calculated considering the associated time remaining on the active leg and current time. ETA at subsequent waypoints is calculated considering the cumulative ETEs and current time. In the case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints or manual terminations, the ETA is shown as dashes. The vertical position of the ETA column elements align with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate ETA information applies to the associated waypoint.

3.6.9. Fuel Remaining Column

Fuel remaining at the active waypoint and all subsequent waypoints is displayed immediately to the right of the ETA column. Fuel remaining at the active waypoint is calculated considering the associated time remaining on the active leg, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. Fuel remaining at subsequent waypoints is calculated considering the cumulative ETEs, current fuel flow, and current fuel quantity. The vertical position of the Fuel remaining column elements are aligned with waypoint identifier column elements to indicate the fuel remaining information applies to the associated waypoint. In the case of suppressed waypoints, skipped waypoints or manual terminations, the fuel remaining is shown in dashes.

NOTE:

Since a suppressed waypoint is not part of the active flight plan, dashes appear in the absence of the following VNAV data associated with a suppressed waypoint:

1) Path data
2) Distance data
3) ETE data
4) ETA data
5) Fuel remaining data

Section 4 Reversionary Modes

4.1. Reversionary Modes

The equipment has eight reversionary modes as follows:

Mode 0: GPS/SBAS, ADC, and AHRS normal.

Mode 1: GPS/SBAS failed; ADC and AHRS normal.

Mode 2: ADC failed; GPS/SBAS and AHRS normal.

Mode 3: AHRS failed; GPS/SBAS and ADC normal.

Mode 4: GPS/SBAS and ADC failed; and AHRS normal.

Mode 5: GPS/SBAS and AHRS failed; and ADC normal.

Mode 6: ADC and AHRS failed; and GPS/SBAS normal.

Mode 7: GPS, ADC, and AHRS failed.

To use this section, review the following table and notes to determine what feature or function is affected by one or more of the three sensors failed conditions. Examples follow with the IDU-450 displays in various configurations with a table breaking down the affected functions.

Not all possible IDU-450 display configurations and format combinations are represented here. All eight modes of system operation are represented for description purposes.

Table 4-1: PFD Functions

PFD Function	Mode							
	0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Airspeed	OK	OK	19	OK	19	OK	19	19
Altimeter	OK	OK	19	OK	19	OK	19	19
Altimeter Set Display	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Bank Scale	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
CDI	OK	1 + 20	OK	OK	20	20	OK	20
Runway	OK	1	25	-	-	-	-	-
Waypoint Pointer	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Heading Scale	7	7	7	7	7	-	7	-
AGL Ind.	OK	2	4	OK	11	11	4	-
Flight Path Marker	OK	1 + 14	-	-	-	-	-	-
G-meter	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
Ground Track	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Heading Indicator	7	7	7	-	7	-	-	-
Horizon	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
Mini-Map	7	1	7	7	-	-	7	-
Pitch Limit Indicator	OK	OK	-	8	-	8	-	-
Pitch Scale	OK	OK	OK	-	OK	-	-	-
Highway in the Sky	OK	1 + 15	-	-	-	-	-	-
Terrain/Obstructions	OK	-	25	-	-	-	-	-
Clock Functions	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
VSI	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Waterline Symbol	22	22	5	13	5	13	13	13
Waypoint Symbol	OK	1	-	-	-	-	-	-
Waypoint Brg/Dist	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Traffic	OK	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-
Traffic Thumbnail	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Speed Trend	OK	OK	-	-	-	-	-	-
Dynamic Stall Speed	OK	OK	-	8	-	8	-	-

Table 4-2: ND Functions

ND Functions	Mode							
	0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Aircraft Position	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Special Use Airspace	9	1	6	9	-	-	6 + 9	-
Waypoint Pointer	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Active Flight Plan Path	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Glide Range	9	1	-	10	-	-	-	-
Ground Speed	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Ground Track	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Heading Indicator	9	9	9	-	9	-	-	-
Navigation Symbols	9	1	9	9	-	-	9	-
Outside Air Temp.	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Projected Path	OK	1	OK	-	-	-	-	-
Traffic	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Terrain/Obstructions	OK	-	25	OK	-	-	25+9	-
Clock Functions	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Waypoint Brg./Dist.	OK	1	OK	OK	-	-	OK	-
Wind	21	3	-	-	-	-	-	-
WX-500 Data	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK	OK
Compass Rose	9	9	9	9	9	-	9	-
Fuel Totalizer Functions	23	24	23	23	12	12	12	12
True Airspeed	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
Density Altitude	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-
OAT/ISA Display	OK	OK	-	OK	-	OK	-	-

Note 1: Presented using inertial dead reckoning based on last known wind information. If unable to dead reckon (e.g., heading is failed or true airspeed cannot be calculated), function is disabled.

Note 2: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 3: Last known wind is saved during GPS/SBAS failure.

Note 4: Either radar altitude or geodetic altitude less database elevation.

Note 5: Waterline symbol expanded to large attitude bars.

Note 6: Special use airspace boundaries are drawn with bold lines due to lack of aircraft altitude data.

Note 7: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, heading scale aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, heading scale is replaced with a red-X.

Note 8: Based upon 1G stall speed.

Note 9: In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode, compass rose aligned with aircraft track and heading indication is removed when in heading up mode. In heading-only failure mode or AHRS failure mode combined with GPS failure, compass rose is removed.

Note 10: Presenting using last-known wind information and aligned with aircraft track in heading up mode.

Note 11: Only radar altitude presented when available.

Note 12: Assuming valid fuel flow information, endurance is presented.

Note 13: Large attitude bars presented and X'd out.

Note 14: Flight path marker grayed after one minute to indicate degraded operation.

Note 15: Highway in the Sky removed after one minute.

Note 16: N/A

Note 17: Defaults to AIR unless Weight on Wheel/Weight on Ground discrete input is active.

Note 18: N/A

Note 19: Red X in place of scale.

Note 20: VLOC CDI always available if optional VOR symbology enabled.

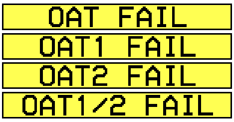
Note 21: Function removed during heading-only failure mode.

Note 23: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented.

Note 24: Assuming valid fuel flow information, both range and endurance are presented using inertial dead reckoning based on last known wind information. If the pilot is unable to dead reckon due to loss of heading or true airspeed cannot be calculated, endurance only information is presented.

Note 25: Inhibited in accordance with the conditions specified in TAWS automatic inhibit function (abnormal operation).

4.1.1. OAT Sensor Failure Mode



In addition, the equipment has an OAT sensor failure mode. With the OAT sensor failed, the display of wind, OAT, density altitude, and true airspeed on the ND are disabled.

Figure 4-1: OAT Sensor Failure Mode

4.1.2. Heading Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.

In this failure mode, the PFD heading scale includes “GPS TRK” around the track marker to clearly delineate the failure mode.

Figure 4-2: GPS TRK

4.1.3. PFD Screen Auto Reversion

For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to safety of flight remains available to the pilot without additional action after a failure. To accommodate this, MFDs must have the ability to sense when the PFD has failed and take over the PFD function automatically. The manner in which this occurs is as follows:

When an MFD (IDU #2) becomes the transmit-enabled IDU, the MFD automatically switches to a PFD. It is possible to change the MFD to other screens after the automatic switch by pushing ❶.

4.1.4. IDU-450

The IDU-450 system, IDU #1 is always fixed to the PFD screen. However, it is possible to select the PFD screen on the CPU #2 (MFD) by pushing ❶. In installations including an EICAS page, the sequence of screens when pushing ❶ is:

MFD screen ➔ EICAS screen ➔ PFD screen ➔ MFD screen, etc.

See AFMS for specific instructions in managing the single pilot action for screen changing when applicable.

4.1.5. GPS Failure

GPS degrades or fails resulting from loss of satellite information or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the EFIS provides a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL), it is restored.

Figure 4-3: Loss of Integrity (LOI)

1) 

(Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.

   Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, ground speed, ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.

3) 

(Loss of Navigation) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:

   a) The absence of power;

   b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

   c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;

   d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;

   e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment. Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and

   f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.

> **NOTE:**
>
> At any time, view HFOM on the faults page to see the system-reported accuracy.

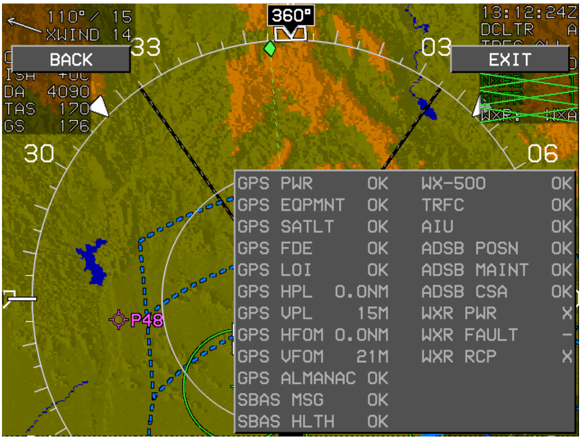


Figure 4-4: FAULTS Menu on MFD

4) **DR** (Dead Reckoning)

If a GPS position cannot be calculated, a dead reckoning solution is provided with a timer DR 01:23. This solution is calculated from heading and TAS derived from the AHRS and ADC.

5) **Loss of Vertical Navigation**

If the navigation equipment is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the LNAV/VNAV approach, “VLON” appears within one second of the onset of any of the following conditions:

a) The absence of power;

b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

c) The presence of a condition where fault detection detects a position failure that cannot be excluded;

d) There are an insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites;

e) The horizontal protection level exceeds the alert limit as follows for LNAV/VNAV approaches:

i) Prior to sequencing, the FAWP- HAL should be 0.3 NM with no limit on VAL.

ii) After sequencing the FAWP- HAL 556m (0.3NM) and VAL 50m.

Figure 4-5: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)

When in LNAV mode, the fault detection function detects positioning failures within 10 seconds after the onset of the positioning failure.

4.2. PFD and MFD Failure Mode Examples

GPS failure results in the EFIS operating in dead reckoning mode. The EFIS continues to provide navigational position, ground speed, and ground track information, based upon the last known wind, current air data, and heading. The PFD and MFD are affected as follows.

4.2.1. PFD Failure Mode 0

Figure 4-6: PFD Failure Mode 0 GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.2. MFD Failure Mode 0

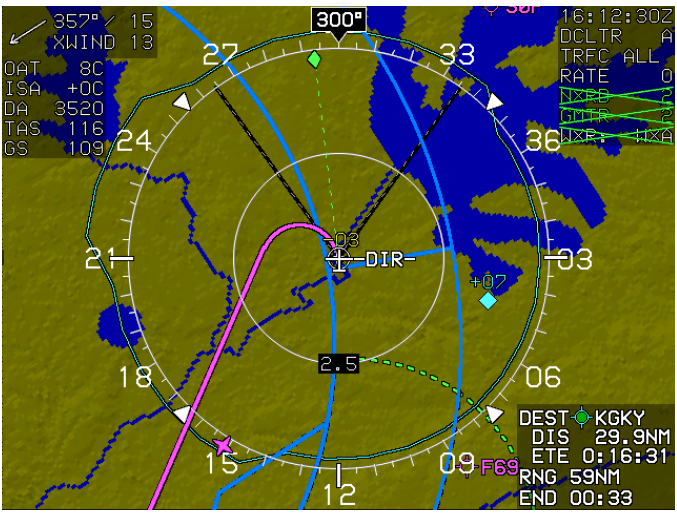


Figure 4-7: MFD Failure Mode 0 GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.3. PFD Failure Mode 1

Figure 4-8: PFD Failure Mode 1
GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.4. MFD Failure Mode 1

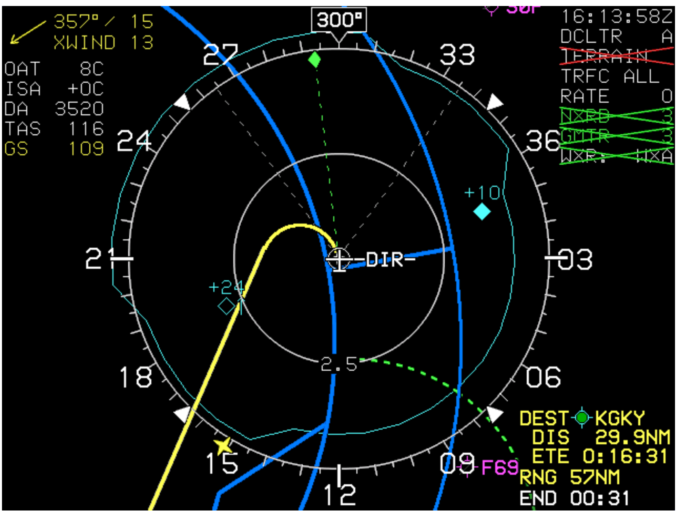


Figure 4-9: MFD Failure Mode 1
GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal

4.2.5. PFD Failure Mode 2

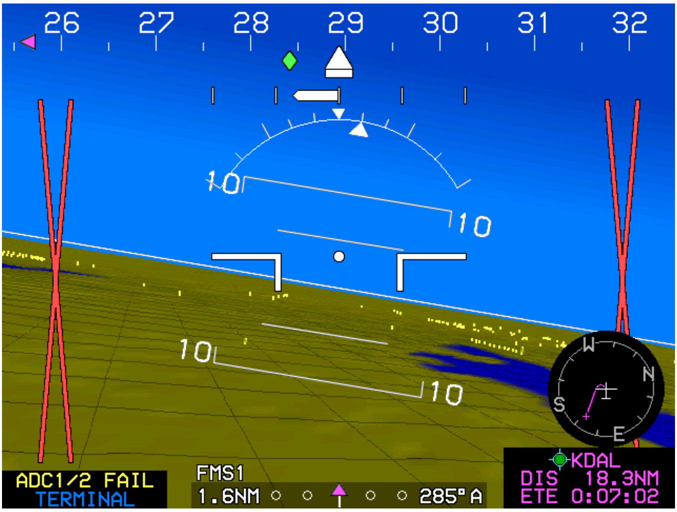


Figure 4-10: PFD Mode 2
ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal

4.2.6. MFD Failure Mode 2

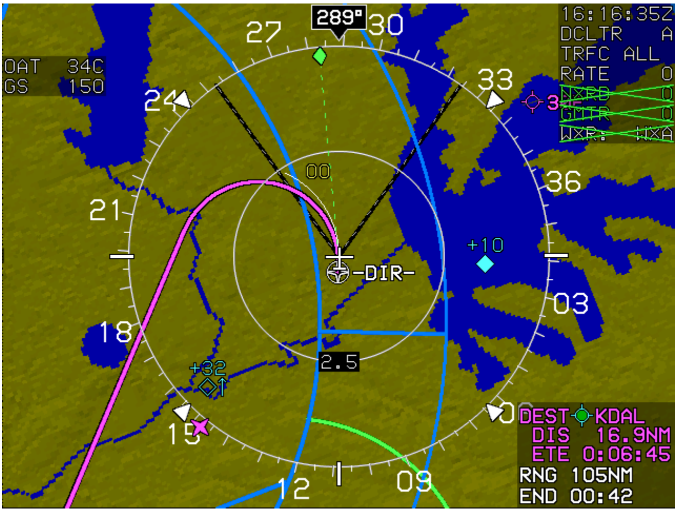


Figure 4-11: MFD Failure Mode 2,
ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal

4.2.7. PFD Failure Mode 3

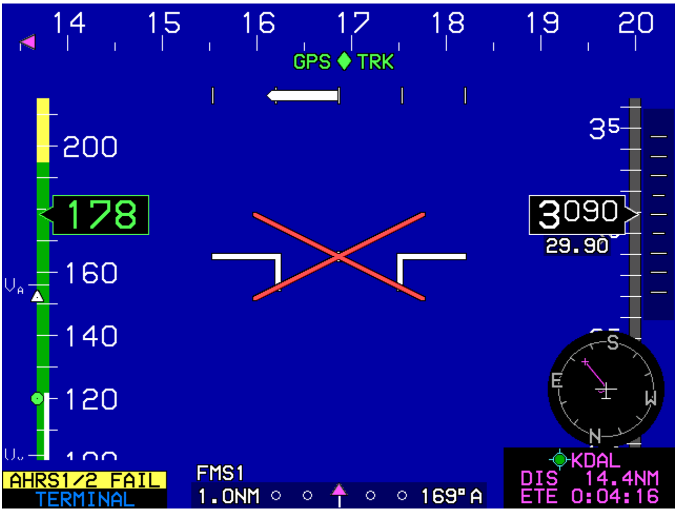


Figure 4-12: PFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal

4.2.8. MFD Failure Mode 3

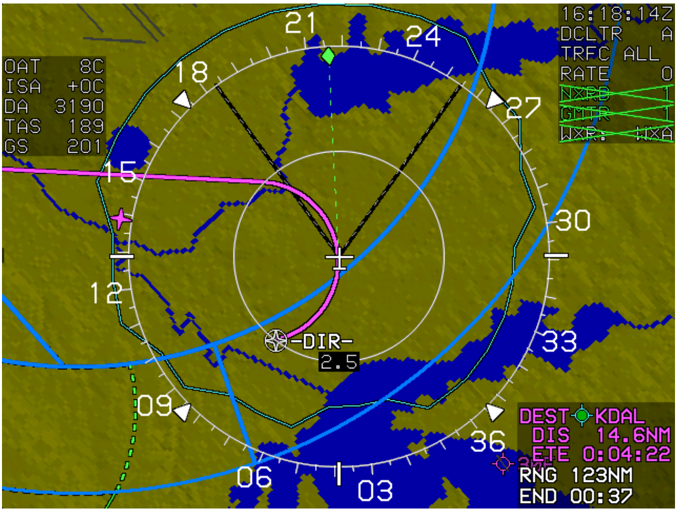


Figure 4-13: MFD Failure Mode 3
AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS and ADC Normal

4.2.9. PFD Failure Mode 4

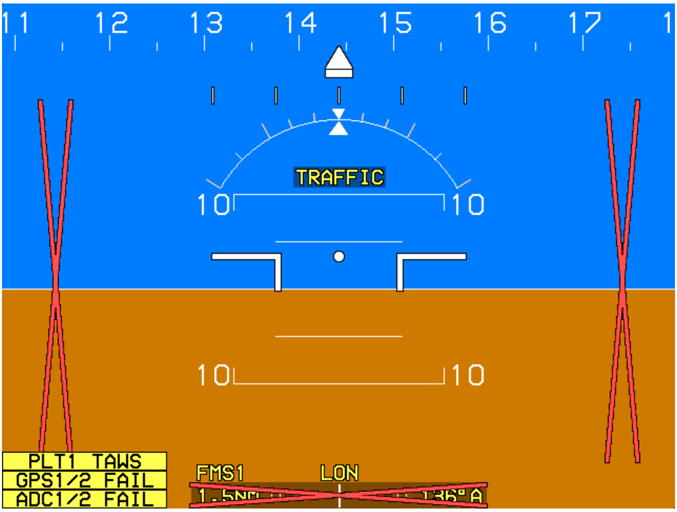


Figure 4-14: PFD Failure Mode 4
GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed, AHRS Normal

4.2.10. MFD Failure Mode 4

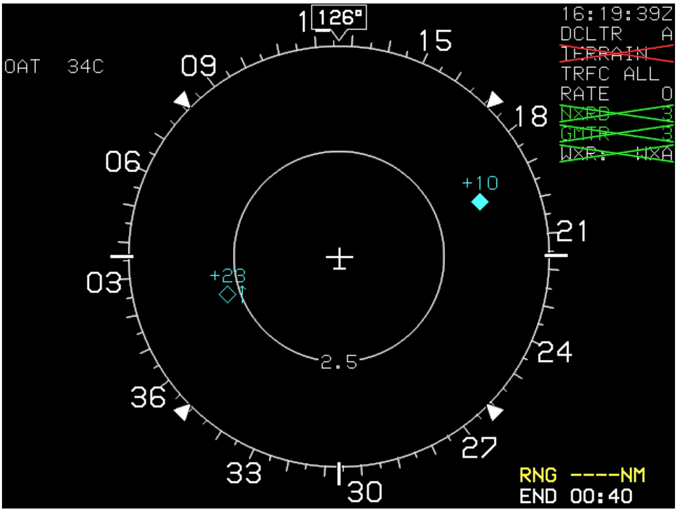


Figure 4-15: MFD Failure Mode 4
GPS/SBAS and ADC Failed, AHRS Normal

4.2.11. PFD Failure Mode 5

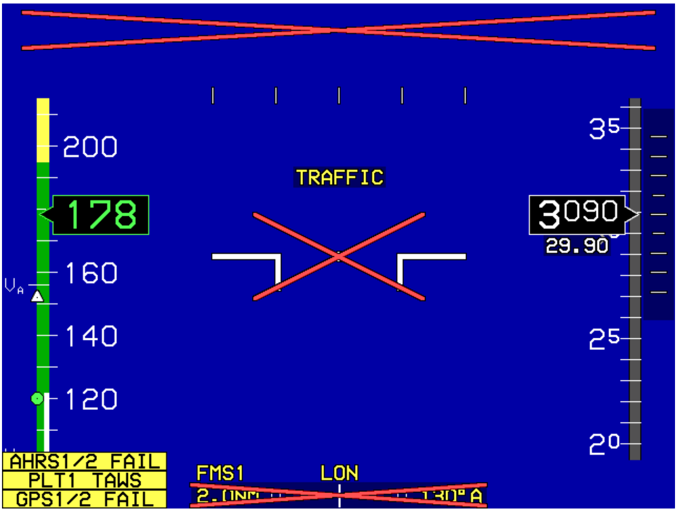


Figure 4-16: PFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed, ADC Normal

4.2.12. MFD Failure Mode 5

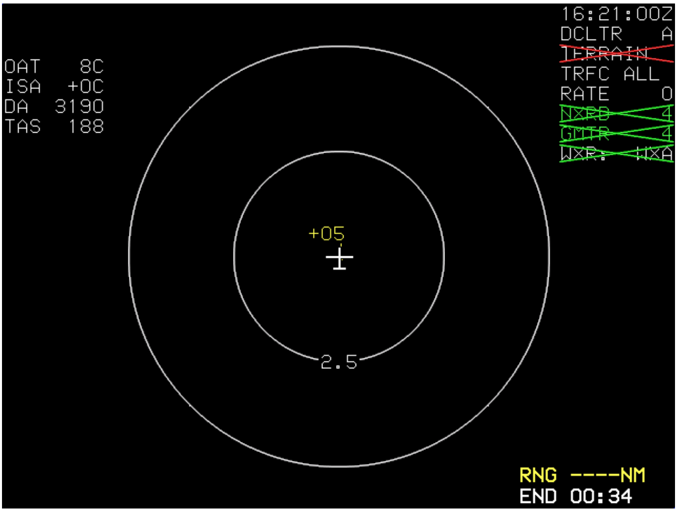


Figure 4-17: MFD Failure Mode 5
GPS/SBAS and AHRS Failed, ADC Normal

4.2.13. PFD Failure Mode 6

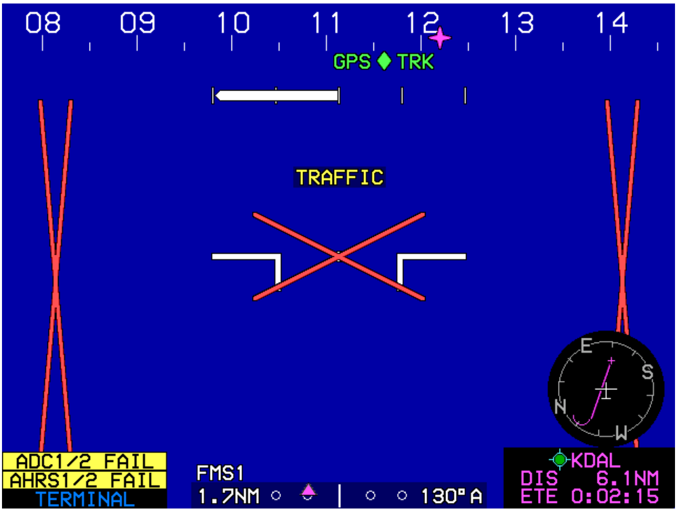


Figure 4-18: PFD Failure Mode 6
ADC and AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS Normal

4.2.14. MFD Failure Mode 6

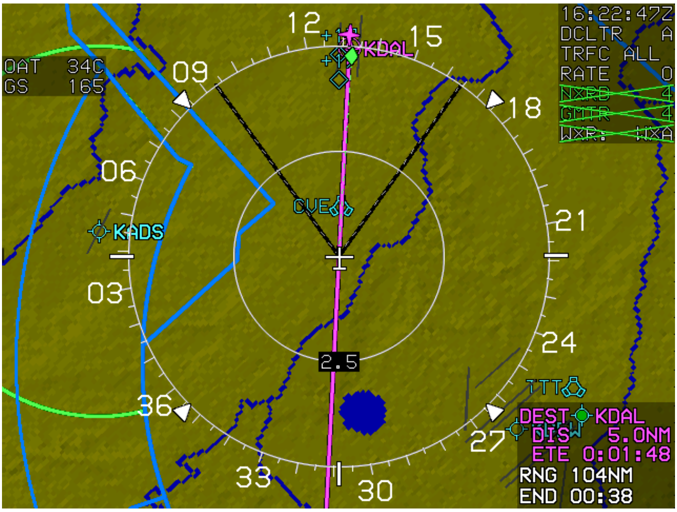


Figure 4-19: MFD Failure Mode 6
ADC and AHRS Failed, GPS/SBAS Normal

4.2.15. PFD Failure Mode 7

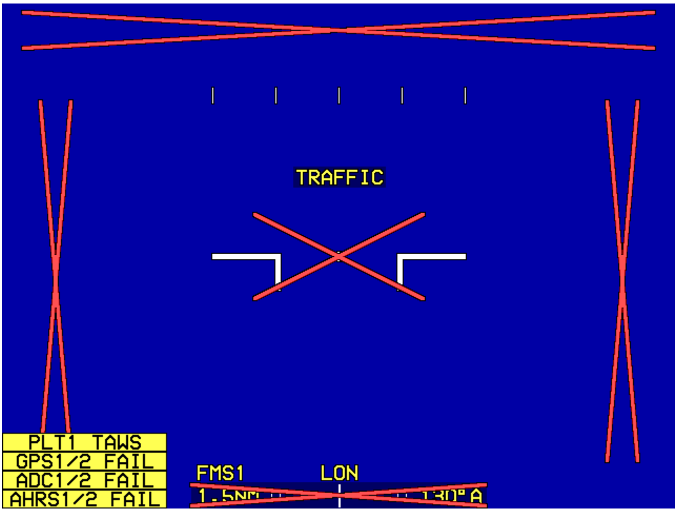


Figure 4-20: PFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC and AHRS Failed

4.2.16. MFD Failure Mode 7

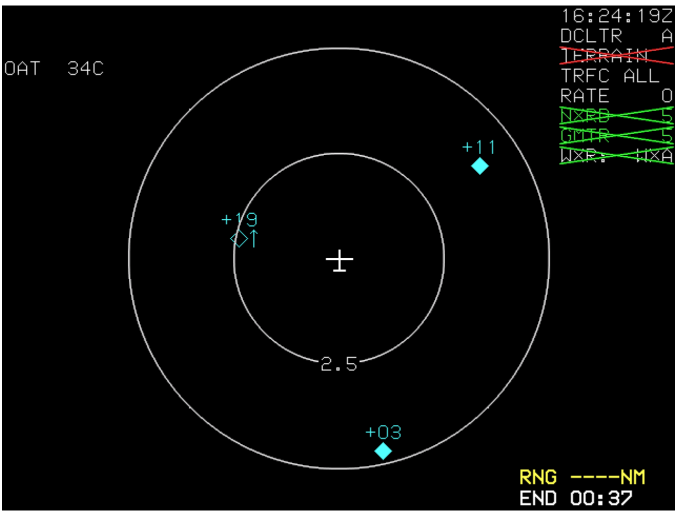


Figure 4-21: MFD Failure Mode 7
GPS/SBAS, ADC and AHRS Failure

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures

5.1. Menu Functions

Figure 5-1: IDU-450 Input Controls

The top-level menu level corresponds to the permanent labeling of the IDU buttons and is active any time no soft menu options appear on the screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button and the right knob ❶ when appropriate.

On the PFD, rotate ❶ to activate the heading menu. On MFD pages with an adjustable display, rotate ❶ to change the display scale (CW = increase scale, CCW = decrease scale, or as set in EFIS limits).

1) Map
2) Strikes
3) Traffic
4) Datalink
5) Weather Radar

With the exception of IDU #1, push ❶ to swap between the PFD and MFD, unless the IDU is in MFD-only mode. IDU #1 is always configured to the PFD page.

5.1.1. Menu Philosophy

The menu system and buttons with an action are clearly labeled. The following rules are in the design of the menu system.

EXIT (R1): Whenever menu system is beyond the top-level, provides a one-touch escape to the top-level.

BACK (L1): Whenever soft menu level is deeper than the first level, regresses through the menu system by one level.

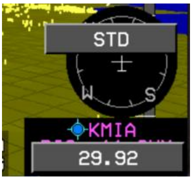
Soft menu tiles: Used (even at the top-level) and are annunciated on the screen adjacent to the appropriate IDU button or knob when appropriate.

Selection list: Menus adjacent to ❶ are frequently a selection list. Lists too long to be presented in the space available provide an indication of location within the list.

Indication of further menu levels:

Within lists or on a soft menu tile, a two-dot trailer indicates further menu levels.

The lack of a two-dot trailer indicates no further menu levels.



Menu messages are displayed for ten seconds but are cleared if no IDU button is pressed or knob pushed or rotated.

Figure 5-2: IDU-450 Menu Messages

5.1.2. Avoidance of Autonomous Behavior

The displays are designed to be under the control of the user to ensure critical functions are placed at the top level. Autonomous changes in function are avoided to the most extent possible. The following autonomous behaviors incorporated into the IDUs, all of which are required by regulation or guidance.

Automatic popup of flight instruments: For IFR approval in aircraft, flight instrument information essential to flight safety must remain available to the user without additional crewmember action after a failure. This guidance is specific to flight instruments, navigation instruments. This requirement is met by assigning an order of precedence of the IDUs based upon the IDU number. IDU #1 always shows the essential flight instruments. Therefore, the IDU-450 is configured to display only the PFD page.

Lower priority IDUs monitor the higher priority IDU via intra-system communications and automatically switch to the PFD upon determining the higher priority IDU has failed.

TAWS popups: When an FLTA alert is generated, a popup function on PFD screen, terrain rendering is enabled only if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled. and activates terrain at an appropriate scale and format on the moving map MFD (one of the multi-function pages). This is a required function of TSO-C151b (Class A, B and C TAWS are described in Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System.)

Traffic popups: See Traffic Appendix.

5.2. Menu Synchronization

System settings changed by the menu system are synchronized between multiple IDUs according to Table 5-1. All parameters for fixed wing aircraft are included. Each appendix for Datalink, Strikes, RBP, Traffic, and Weather Radar contains specific limitations for menu synchronization for that feature.

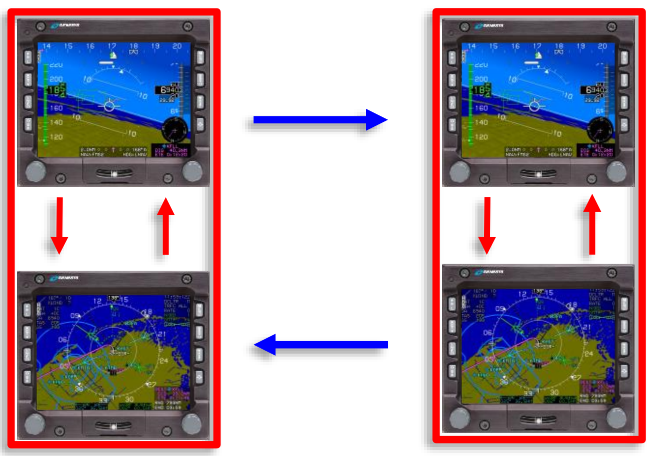
Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization	
Menu Parameter	**Notes**
The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence. ***Intra-System*** *or* ***Inter-System*** *communications.*	
	
AHRS 1 and 2 mode and slewing values	
Fuel Totalizer Quantity	
VNAV Climb Angle	

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
Countdown Timer Start Time	
Countdown Timer Default Value	
Remote Tune Frequencies	
VNAV Descent Angle	
G-Force Limit Parameters	
Decision Height Setting	Used when "Dual Decision Height" option is not selected in EFIS Limits.
Emergency and Minimum Fuel Settings	
Heading Bug and Heading Sub-Mode	
Minimum Altitude Bug Value	
VLOC OBS Settings	
Roll Trim parameter	When applicable AP installed.
Airspeed Bug Setting	
TCAS-II control parameters	
Target Altitude Bug Setting	
Timer Starting Signal	
Traffic Filter Setting	
True North Mode	
UTC Offset	
Settable V-Speeds	
VSI Bug Setting	
WX RDR Control Menu mode parameter	Used to synchronized certain RDR-2100 modes
Crosslink Synchronization Status	

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays when crosslink is enabled. Otherwise, they are only synchronized onside. These parameters are FMS parameters and allow the pilot and co-pilot FMSs to be operated independently when crosslink is inhibited. Intra-System or Inter-System communications.


</td></tr>
<tr><td>Active Flight Plan Parameters</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Runway Display Parameters</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference. ***Intra-System*** *communications.*	
	
Sensor Selections	
Transition Altitude	
Decision Height Setting	Used when “Dual Decision Height” is selected in EFIS Limits.
Barometric Setting Parameters	
Active Navigation Source	
PFD Basic Mode	
PFD Zoom Mode	
Navigation Preview Source	When NAV Preview is enabled
PFD Analog AGL	
PFD Analog G-Force Indicator	
PFD Full-time Bank	
PFD Flight Director	
PFD Mini-map	
PFD Altitude (meters)	
PFD Skyway	
PFD Traffic Thumbnail	
PFD Traffic	
PFD OASIS Overlay	When OASIS is applicable
PFD Terrain	
Rate of turn indication	

Table 5-1: Menu Synchronization	
Menu Parameter	**Notes**
WX-RDR Control Menu parameters	Synchronizes onside when Honeywell RDR-2100 is installed.
Weather Radar Scale	Onside because range is controlled by the weather radar,
The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility. 	
CPU Type	To support mixed CPU type installations
MFD Datalink Page Settings	
MFD Map and HSI Page Pointer Settings	
MFD Map NavData® Symbol Declutter Settings	
MFD Map Function Declutter Settings	
MFD Selected Page	
MFD OASIS Overlay	When OASIS is applicable
MFD Map Page Settings	
MFD Show ETA	
IDU-450 Screen Display status	
MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings	
MFD Traffic Page Settings	
MFD Video Page Settings	

NOTE:

When using EFIS menu system for RDR-2XXX control, the weather radar mode received from the offside system is used to update onside weather radar mode as follows. This is to ensure weather radar power on/off is synchronized between both sides.

When offside mode is commanded to STBY, TEST or ON and if onside mode is OFF, then the onside mode is set to STBY.

When offside mode is commanded to OFF, then the onside mode is also set to OFF.

5.3. Normal Top-Level Menu

There are two types of menu functions on the IDU-450, top-level menu functions corresponding to the labeled buttons, and soft menu functions indicated by menu tiles, which appear on screen. Soft menu function tiles appear next to the appropriate IDU button or in the lower right corner when use of the knob is appropriate. Soft menu functions take precedence over IDU button functions.

5.3.1. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

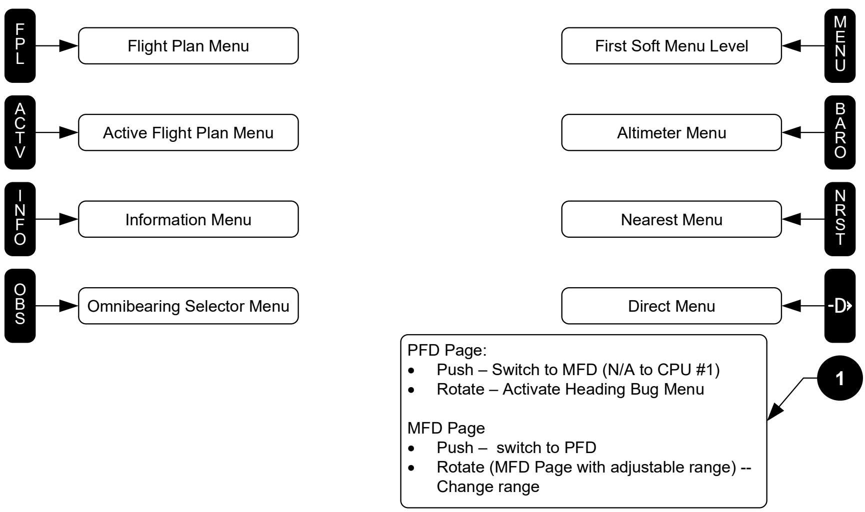


Figure 5-3: PFD Top-Level Menu

1) **FPL (L1)**: Flight plan menu

2) **ACTV (L2)**: Active flight plan menu

3) **INFO (L3)**: Information menu

4) **OBS (L4)**: Omnibearing selector menu

5) **MENU (R1)**: First-level associated with the current display page and times out after 10 seconds if there are no subsequent user actions.

6) **BARO (R2)**: Altimeter menu option

7) **NRST (R3)**: Nearest menu option

8)  **(R4)**: Direct menu option

9) #1 Knob ❶

   a) On a PFD, rotate to activate the heading menu.

   b) On MFD pages with an adjustable display scale (e.g., Map, Strikes, Traffic, Datalink, or Weather Radar), rotate to change display scale (CW = increase, CCW = decrease or as set in EFIS limits).

   c) On the video page, rotating changes the zoom level (CW = increase zoom, CCW = decrease zoom)

   d) On an OASIS page (when configured) that includes a CAS box, rotating scrolls the CAS box.

   e) With the exception of IDU #1, push to swap between the PFD and MFD. IDU #1 is always fixed to the PFD page.

5.3.2. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-up Function Descriptions

Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions, Tile Legend, and Action in Order of Precedence

FPL (L1)	1) When a terrain popup occurs during a TAWS FLTA alert, **RESET** appears. (MFD only) 2) When showing ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **PN OFF** appears. Press to disable pan mode. **RESET** has precedence over **PN OFF**. 3) When display is transmit-enabled, **LNAV** appears when there is an active flight plan, heading bug sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate heading bug sub-mode and resume guidance to active flight plan path. **RESET**, **PN OFF** and

Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions, Tile Legend, and Action in Order of Precedence

	MISS has precedence over **LNAV**. (PFD only with autopilot enabled) 4) When display is transmit-enabled, **MISS** appears upon transitioning the FAF. Press to activate the missed approach procedure. **RESET** and **PN OFF** have precedence over **MISS**. 5) When the display is transmit-enabled, **HDG** appears when LNAV sub-mode is active and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot with HDG mode engaged. Press to deactivate LNAV sub-mode and resume guidance to the heading bug. **RESET**, **PN OFF** and **MISS** has precedence over **HDG**. (PFD only with autopilot enabled)
ACTV (L2)	1) When ND or Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block. 2) When showing the Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint being shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block; **WX** appears to allow the display of textual METAR and TAF data for the airport. 3) When the display is transmit-enabled, **CONT** appears when in a holding pattern with further active flight plan legs after the holding pattern. Press to re-enable automatic waypoint sequencing to allow normal sequencing to the leg after the holding pattern. **WX** has precedence over **CONT**. 4) When the display is transmit-enabled, **RESUME** appears when the following leg is a manual leg and the FMS is in FROM operation. Press to activate a Direct-To the waypoint after the manual leg. **WX** has precedence over **RESUME**. 5) When the display is transmit-enabled, **VNAV** appears when VNAV guidance is valid, the selected altitude sub-mode is active, and the system is integrated with an analog autopilot. Press to deactivate selected altitude sub-mode and resume guidance to VNAV path. **WX**, **CONT**, and **RESUME** have precedence over **VNAV**. (PFD only with autopilot enabled) 6) When the display is transmit-enabled, **ARM** appears when on the final approach segment (between FAF and MAP).

Table 5-2: Top-Level Menu Automatic Function Descriptions, Tile Legend, and Action in Order of Precedence

	Press to arm missed approach procedure to automatically activate upon sequencing MAP. **WX**, and **VNAV** have precedence over **ARM**. 7) When showing the Video page with a zoom level greater than 1, **UP** appears. When **UP** is pressed, the section of the zoomed video image displayed moves up in the full video image.
INFO (L3)	1) When showing ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **NORTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. 2) When showing the Video page with a zoom level greater than 1, **DOWN** appears. When **DOWN** is pressed, the section of the zoomed video image displayed moves down in the full video image.
OBS (L4)	When showing ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **SOUTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
BARO (R2)	1) When showing ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **INFO** or **HIDE** appears. Press to toggle the display of information for the nearest highlighted waypoint. 2) When showing the Video page with a zoom level greater than 1, **LEFT** appears. When **LEFT** is pressed, the section of the zoomed video image displayed moves left in the full video image.
NRST (R3)	1) When ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **EAST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction. 2) When showing the Video page with a zoom level greater than 1, **RIGHT** appears. When **RIGHT** is pressed, the section of the zoomed video image displayed moves right in the full video image.
 **(R4)**	When showing ND or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **WEST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.

5.4. First Page (PFD)

The IDU #1 is fixed to the PFD page, and other IDUs may show the PFD page as a backup function. The PFD page first-level options are as follows.

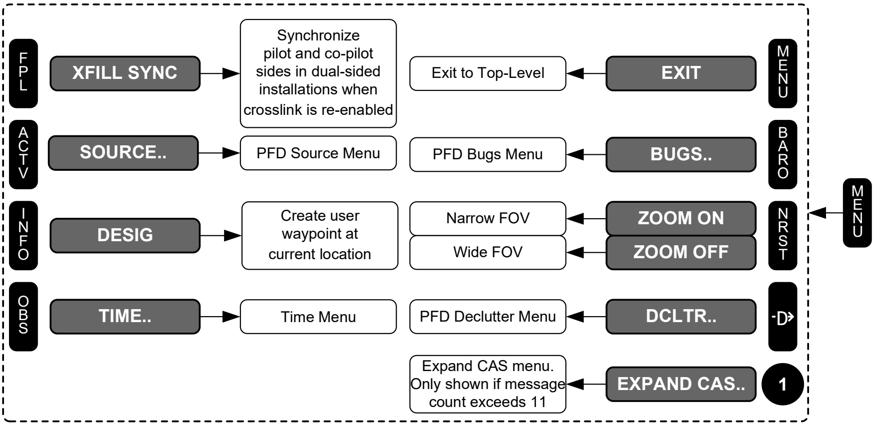


Figure 5-4: First Page PFD

5.4.1. PFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

1) **XFILL SYNC (L1)**: Appears in dual-sided installations where the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized, but crosslink is enabled. Press to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters to the side where the button press occurred.

Table 5-3: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function

Crossfill (1)	**Flight Plan**	**Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot)**	**Action to Synchronize Flight Plans**		**Result**
			Pilot	**Co-pilot**	
Enabled (Cond.1)	Synchro-nized	None	None	None	No action required. Pilot and co-pilot sides already synchronized.
Enabled (Cond.2)	Not Synchro-nized (2)	XFILL ARM	**MENU (R1)** **XFILL SYNC (L1)**	None	Pilot's flight plan is sent to co-pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward. XFILL ARM is removed from both sides.
			None	**MENU (R1)** **XFILL SYNC(L1)**	Co-pilot's flight plan is sent to pilot side and both sides are synchronized going forward. XFILL ARM is removed from both sides.

Table 5-3: Crossfill Inhibit/Arm/Sync Function

Crossfill (1)	Flight Plan	Indication (Pilot and Co-pilot)	Action to Synchronize Flight Plans		Result
			Pilot	Co-pilot	
Inhibited (Cond.3)	Not Synchro-nized	XFILL INHBT	Enable crossfill (1) (proceed to Cond. 2)		XFILL INHBT removed. XFILL ARM displayed on both sides.

(1) Crossfill is inhibited with the use of a latching (ON) crossfill inhibit switch. Crossfill is enabled by releasing (OFF) this switch. The location and number of crossfill inhibit switches in a cockpit varies by installation. Usually a single crossfill switch can be centrally located in a side-by-side cockpit within reach of both pilots. If a single switch cannot be installed within reach of both pilots (tandem cockpits or very wide cockpits), two switches can be installed to function in parallel (either switch inhibits or enables crossfill on both the pilot and co-pilot sides).

(2) Pilot and co-pilot flight plans can become unsynchronized under the following conditions:

1) Crossfill is inhibited, and pilot and co-pilot flight plans are separately changed before crossfill is re-enabled.
2) Either the pilot or co-pilot side is restarted with an active flight plan on the other side and crossfill enabled.
3) If XFILL FAIL condition exists and any changes are made to either side flight plans.

2) **SOURCE.. (L2)**: Activates PFD source selection menu.

3) **DESIG (L3)**: Creates a user waypoint at current aircraft location. In addition, if pressed with an ND page in pan mode, creates a user waypoint at the panning location. User waypoint at current location is automatically named OF### where "###" is the next available over-fly user waypoint number. User waypoint at panning location is automatically named PN### where "###" is the next available panning user waypoint number. When DESIG (L3) is pressed but there are more than 998 user waypoints, the EFIS displays USER WPTS FULL message.

4) **TIME.. (L4)**: Activates time menu

5) **BUGS.. (R2)**: Activates the PFD bug set menu

6) **ZOOM ON/ZOOM OFF (R3)**: Toggles between wide FOV mode and narrow FOV mode. ZOOM ON appears when current mode is wide FOV. ZOOM OFF appears when current mode is narrow FOV.

7) **DCLTR.. (R4)**: Activates the PFD declutter menu

8) **EXPAND CAS** (❶): Activates Expand CAS menu only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

5.5. First-Level (MFD)

IDUs other than #1 may show various MFD pages as described in § 5.21. MFD first-level options are as follows.

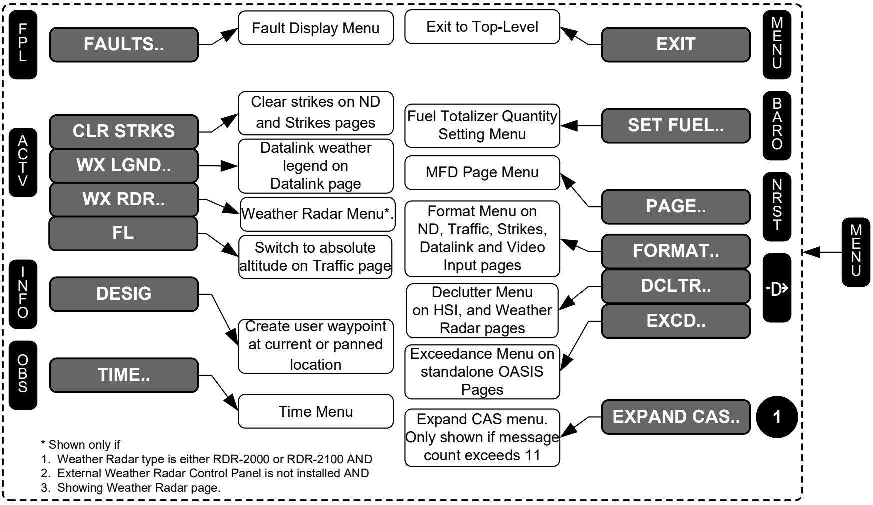


Figure 5-5: First-Level MFD

5.5.1. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

1) **FAULTS.. (L1)**: Activates the fault display menu

2) **CLR STRKS, WX LGND..**, **WX RDR..**, or **FL (L2)**: On Map or Strikes page with WX-500 option enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates strike clear option for the WX-500 (see Strikes appendix). On Datalink page, **WX LGND..** activates datalink weather legend (see Datalink appendix). On the WX RDR page, **WX RDR..** activates the weather radar menu (if no external control panel is installed; see WX RDR appendix). On Traffic page, **FL** replaces the intruder's relative altitude readout with absolute altitude for 15 seconds (see Traffic appendix).

3) **DESIG (L3)**: Same function as first-level PFD page

4) **TIME.. (L4)**: Same function as first-level PFD page

5) **SET FUEL.. (R2)**: Activates fuel totalizer set menu

6) **WX RDR.. (L2):** If a weather radar is displayed, activates Weather Radar menu for controlling Honeywell RDR 2000/2100

7) **PAGE.. (R3):** Activates MFD display page select menu option

8) **FORMAT DCLTR.. (R4)** or **EXCD (R4)**: On the ND, activates the appropriate page format menu.

   a) **FORMAT..** On the Map, Traffic, Strikes, Datalink, and Video, pages, activates the appropriate page format menu option.

   b) **DCLTR..** On HSI page with VOR or ADF symbology enabled, or OASIS overlays, activates HSI declutter menu option.

9) **EXPAND CAS ❶**: Activates the expand CAS menu option only when there are more than 11 active CAS messages.

5.6. Lower-Level Menus (Below First-Level)

The buttons and knob that control the top-level and first-level menus, called lower-level menus, are described in the following diagrams with button and knob numbers as defined in Figure 5-1.

5.7. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu

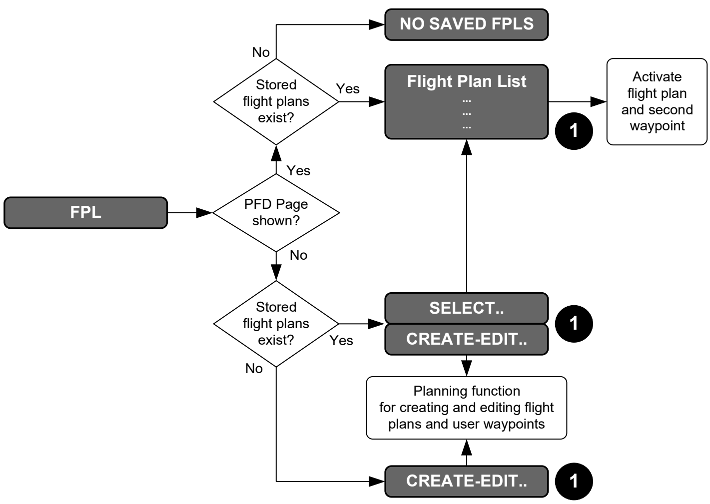


Figure 5-6: Flight Plan Menu

5.7.1. Flight Planner Page

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, **CREATE-EDIT..** knob message is issued (MFD only). Otherwise, a list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

Because the flight planner takes over the IDU's controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner. The flight planner is not available when a PFD page is being displayed on the IDU (MFD in reversion mode).

When the flight planner is accessed, it only appears on the MFD to preserve access to crucial PFD page controls such as altimeter settings.

Flight Plan Limits: Flight plans are stored routes (100 maximum) for repeated use without having to re-enter the waypoints each time. A flight plan consists of at least two waypoints (a start and an end) and may have up to 40 waypoints. Flights requiring more than 40 waypoints are divided into two or more flight plans.

NOTE:

Locked flight plans (created with a Ground-Based Utility and loaded into the system using a Ground Maintenance Function) are shown first preceded by a  symbol. The creating, editing, deleting, and reversing of locked flight plans can only be conducted with a ground-based utility.

5.7.2. Flight Planner Page

Perform following types of functions through the flight planner page.

1) Manage stored flight plans (activate, create, edit, delete, and reverse);

2) Manage user waypoints (create, edit, and delete); and

3) Perform RAIM predictions.

These operations demand pilot attention and are not a normal operating condition for the IDU. When the flight planner page is in use, it takes over the IDUs controls and disables the menu operations described (other than automatic EICAS page reversions). Normal menu operation and IDU control function are restored upon:

1) Exiting the flight planner page; or

2) Automatic reversion of the IDU to PFD automatic reversion exits the flight planner page and wipes out any changes being performed.

Because the flight planner page takes over the IDUs controls, limitations are placed upon access and display of the flight planner page. When the flight planner page is accessed, it only appears on the MFD.

5.7.3. PFD Shown

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. If there are no saved flight plans, NO SAVED FPLS appears. Otherwise, a selection list of saved flight plans is presented. Upon selection of a saved flight plan, the second waypoint in the flight plan is activated.

5.7.4. MFD Page Shown

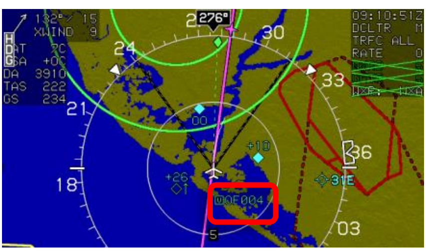
SELECT..
CREATE-EDIT..

Upon activation of the flight plan menu, the system checks for existing saved flight plans. The flight planner is activated. Otherwise, an option list is presented for the user to either select a saved flight plan or enter the flight planner.

> **NOTE:**
>
> Locked flight plans (created with a Ground-Based Utility and loaded into the system using a Ground Maintenance Function) are shown first preceded by a  symbol. The creating, editing, deleting, and reversing of locked flight plans can only be conducted with a ground-based utility.

5.7.5. Create an Overfly User Waypoint (Step-By-Step)

1) When flying over intended waypoint, press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **DESIG (L3)** on the PFD or MFD. (PFD shown)



2) A user waypoint is created at the present position and automatically named "**OF###**," where **###** is the next available sequence overfly user waypoint number. (MFD shown)

NOTE:

A maximum of 998 user waypoints may be created and stored.

If configured in EFIS limits, "Remote User Waypoint Designate," may be used to easily create a user waypoint.

5.7.6. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Selecting (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

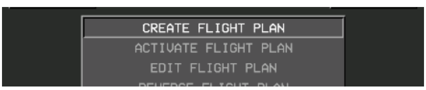
1) Press **FPL (L1)**. (PFD shown)

2) Rotate ❶ to desired flight plan and then push to activate flight plan.

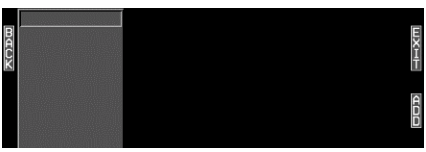
5.7.7. Flight Plan (FPL) Menu Create-Edit (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



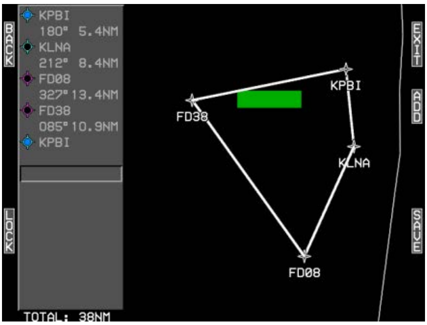
3) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter.



4) Press **ADD (R2)** to begin creating first waypoint.

5) Press **NRST APT (L2)**, **NRST VOR (L3)**, **NRST NDB (L4)**, **NRST FIX (R2)**, **NRST USR (R3)**, or **AIRWAY (R4)** (when applicable) to view applicable list, rotate ❶ to desired selection. Push to insert into flight plan as first waypoint.

6) Each flight plan is required to have a minimum of two waypoints. Press **ADD (R2)** and continue process as stated above to build flight plan.



7) As the flight plan creation continues, a blank space is created and ready for adding another waypoint by pressing **ADD (R2)**.

8) If necessary, rotate ❶ to scroll up the list to any desired waypoint.

9) Press **INFO (L3)** and view information about selected waypoint.

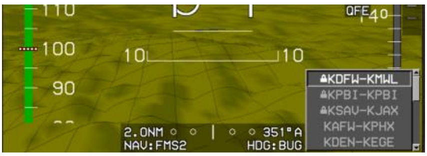
NOTE:

LOCK (L4) only appears on the EFIS Training Tool or Ground-Based Utility in GMF mode. This feature is never found on the IDUs installed in the aircraft operating in the flight mode.

When all waypoints (maximum of 40) have been added, press **SAVE (R4)** to save flight plan or **LOCK (L4)** to lock flight plan and save. If flight plan is locked, it appears in future access menus with .

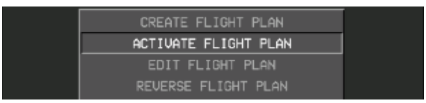
5.7.8. Activate Flight Plan (MFD shown) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

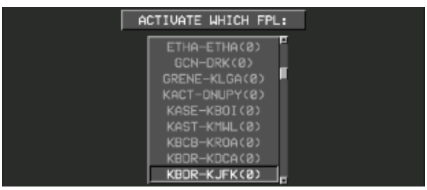


2) Press **FPL (L1)**. Rotate ❶ to desired saved flight plan and then push to activate. Flight plans with  are locked flight plans, which cannot be edited.

3) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



4) Rotate ❶ to **ACTIVATE FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter.



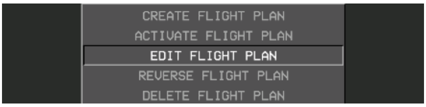
5) Rotate ❶ to desired saved flight plan and then push to enter. This action activates the desired flight plan.

6) Press **EXIT (R1)** if no other action is necessary.

5.7.9. Edit Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

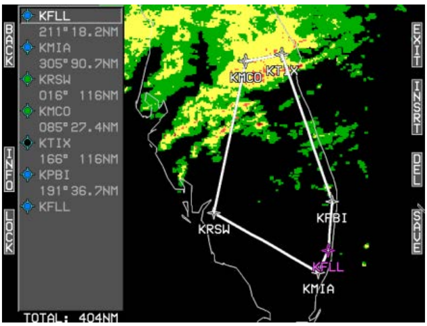
1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



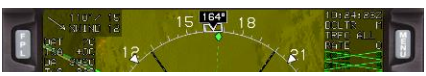
3) Rotate ❶ to **EDIT FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to desired flight plan and then push to enter.



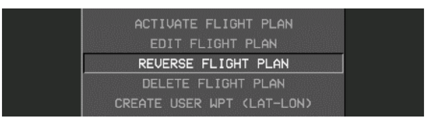
5) Edit flight plan by adding or deleting waypoints as appropriate. INSRT (R2) inserts to one line above the highlighted line. ADD (R4) adds waypoint to the blank line.

5.7.10. Reverse Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)



1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to **REVERSE FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter.

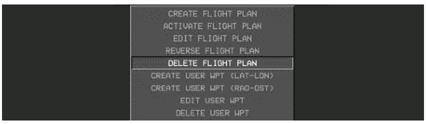
4) Rotate ❶ to desired flight plan and then push to enter. This action reverses the selected flight plan and alphabetizes the flight plan list in the new order.

5) If no other flight plan to reverse, press **EXIT (R1)**.

5.7.11. Delete Flight Plan (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to **DELETE FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter. This option is not shown if there are no stored flight plans.

4) Rotate ❶ to flight plan to delete. Push to enter.

5) Push ❶ to **CONFIRM DELETE FPL.**

6) The next flight plan is highlighted.

7) If no further deletions, press **EXIT (R1)**.

5.7.12. Create User Waypoint (MFD only) (LAT-LON) (Step-By-Step)

User waypoints may be created with three methods:

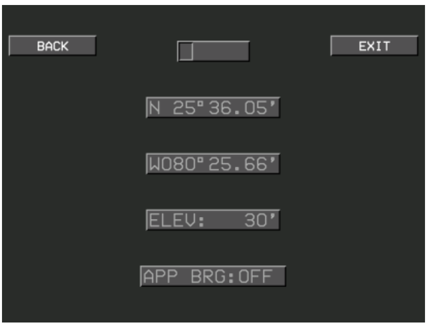
1) Latitude and Longitude
2) Radial and Distance
3) Overfly (Designate)

To create a user waypoint using latitude and longitude, use the following step-by-step procedure.

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.

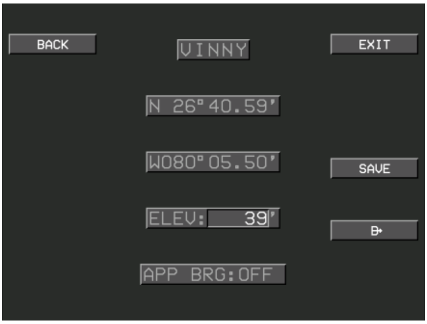
3) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE USER WPT (LAT-LON)** and then push to enter. (Maximum of 998 user waypoints saved.)



4) To name a new user waypoint, rotate ❶ and then push to enter all five-character spaces.

NOTE:

Duplicate user waypoint names are not accepted.



5) With new user waypoint name created, push ❶ to proceed through all fields as necessary.

Approach bearing preloading depends on mode of flight as follows:

On Ground: Preloaded with current heading

In Flight: Preloaded with **“OFF”** value.

If desired, specify the approach bearing to user waypoint in degrees **1°- 360°.** “**OFF**” disables VFR approaches to the user waypoint.

NOTE:

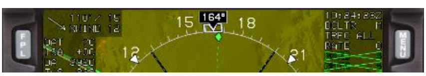
Pressing **EXIT (R1)** only exits menu and does not save the new user waypoint.

6) Press **SAVE (R3)** to save user waypoint or press  **(R4)** to create **VINNY** as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

NOTE:

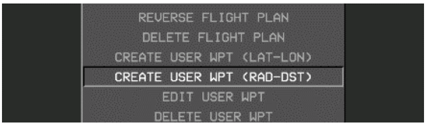
The Direct-To action returns to the **CREATE-EDIT** page. If no further action is necessary, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.

5.7.13. Create User Waypoint (RAD-DST) (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)



1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.

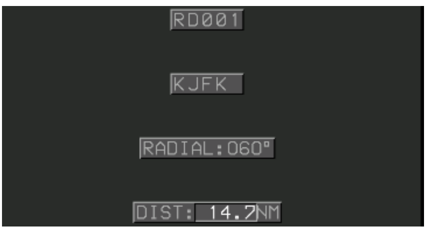


3) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE USER WPT (RAD-DST)**. Push to enter.

4) Identifier is automatically named **RD###** where **###** is the next available radial distance waypoint number.

5) Rotate ❶ to enter identifier for reference waypoint. If a single search result, menu advances to radial entry box. If multiple search results appear, a list appears. **INFO (R3)** appears to verify each waypoint information.

6) If **OF004** is desired, push ❶ to enter as the waypoint to be used.



7) Rotate ❶ to enter the radial entry and distance as the **060°** at **14.7** NM from **OF004**.

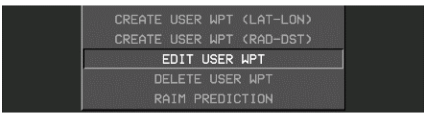
8) Press **SAVE (R3)** to save new waypoint or press  **(R4)** to activate/save **RD004** as the active waypoint and begins navigation guidance.

> **NOTE:**
>
> Creation of duplicate names for user waypoints is not possible.

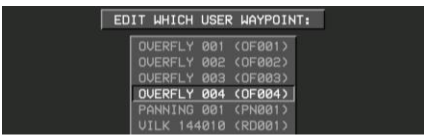
5.7.14. Edit User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to **EDIT USER WPT** and then push to enter. This option not shown if there are no stored user waypoints.



4) Rotate ❶ to waypoint to be edited. Push to enter.

5) Use ❶ to enter alphanumeric characters; follow prompts to edit information. Push ❶ to step through all character spaces. To back up, press **BACK (L1)** and continue to the end of all character spaces.

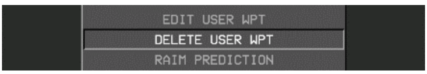
6) **OF004** was renamed **RUFUS** and **APP BRG** was set to **015°**. Press **SAVE (R3)** to save new waypoint name or press  **(R4)** to activate/save **RUFUS** as active waypoint and begin navigational guidance.

7) Press **BACK (L1)** to regress inside procedure for making changes or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit **EDIT USER WPT** menu and save changes.

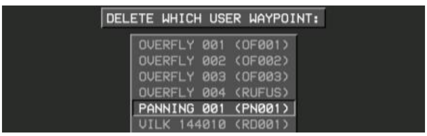
5.7.15. Delete User Waypoint (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to **DELETE USER WPT** and then push to enter. This option not shown if there are no stored user waypoints.



4) Rotate ❶ to desired waypoint to be deleted and then push to enter.

5) Push ❶ to confirm **DEL USER WPT**.

6) If no more waypoints to delete, press **EXIT (R1)**.

When changes are made to a user waypoint, and those changes are desired in existing flight plans, which use the waypoint, it must be deleted and replaced in the flight plans with the following steps:

1) Edit the user waypoint as described above.

2) Open a flight plan which uses the user waypoint.

3) Delete the existing waypoint from the flight plan.

4) Save and exit.

5) Reload the flight plan if it was in use.

NOTE:

Pilot alterations of user waypoint parameters while in flight do not automatically update to an active flight plan.

5.7.16. RAIM Prediction (MFD only) (Step-By-Step)

When selected, the RAIM prediction screen is only shown if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction (not suitable for enroute predictions). This requires there be no faults along with a current almanac in memory. Check the **FAULTS** menu to determine if the GPS/SBAS receiver is capable of performing a RAIM prediction.

NOTE:

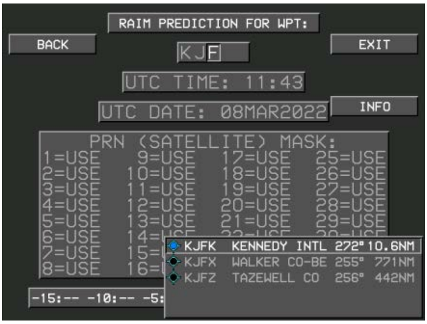
GPS Almanac must be valid before RAIM Prediction can be performed.

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

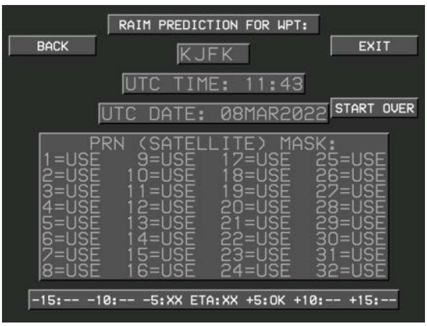
2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to **RAIM PREDICTION** and then push to enter.

4) Press **BACK (L1)** to return to FPL menu.



SEE NOTE BELOW.



5) If another RAIM prediction is necessary, press **START OVER (R2)** or press **EXIT (R1)**.

NOTE:

The user may perform RAIM prediction at a designated waypoint. The screen has various data entry boxes as follows:

1) **Designated Waypoint:** Prompted to enter an identifier for the designated waypoint. If there is a single result, advanced to UTC time entry box. If there is no result, re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, is advanced to UTC time entry box. **INFO (R2)** aids in selection and gives access to information for the highlighted results.
2) **UTC Time Entry:** Allows entry of the 24-Hour UTC estimated time of arrival at the designated waypoint.
3) **UTC Date Entry:** Allows entry of the UTC estimated date of arrival at the designated waypoint.
4) **PRN Mask Entry:** Allows specification the PRN number of satellites expected to be unavailable at the destination.
5) **EXIT:** Exit of the RAIM prediction screen at any time.
6) Once a designated waypoint and UTC estimated time of arrival are entered, **CALC (R2)** appears to initiate the RAIM Prediction. Press **CALC (R2)** to check the UTC estimated time of arrival and ensure it is within the current almanac (i.e., <3.5 days from current date and time). If it is, a Predictive FDE Request message requesting “Detection Availability” with a required HAL of 0.3NM is sent to the GPS/SBAS receiver. In response, the GPS/SBAS receiver replies with a sequence of Predictive FDE Response messages. These messages are parsed and used to fill in the RAIM Prediction result area at the bottom of the screen. The RAIM Prediction result area shows the RAIM Prediction results as “OK” or “XX” for ETA ± in 5-minute increments. Once a prediction is complete, press **START OVER (R2)** to perform another prediction without exiting the RAIM Prediction screen.

5.8. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu

See Section 7 IFR Procedures for active flight plan description.

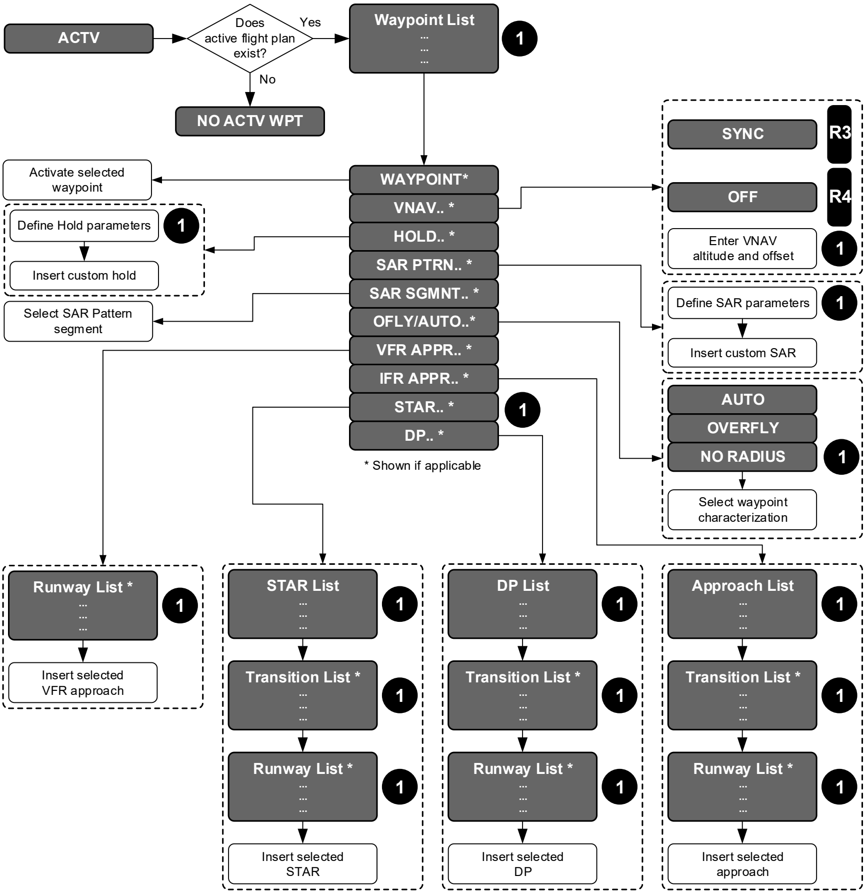


Figure 5-7: Active Flight Plan Main Menu

5.8.1. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

The following options allow various modifications to be made to the active flight plan. Press **ACTV (L2)** for the various options to appear at the same level as the nav log.

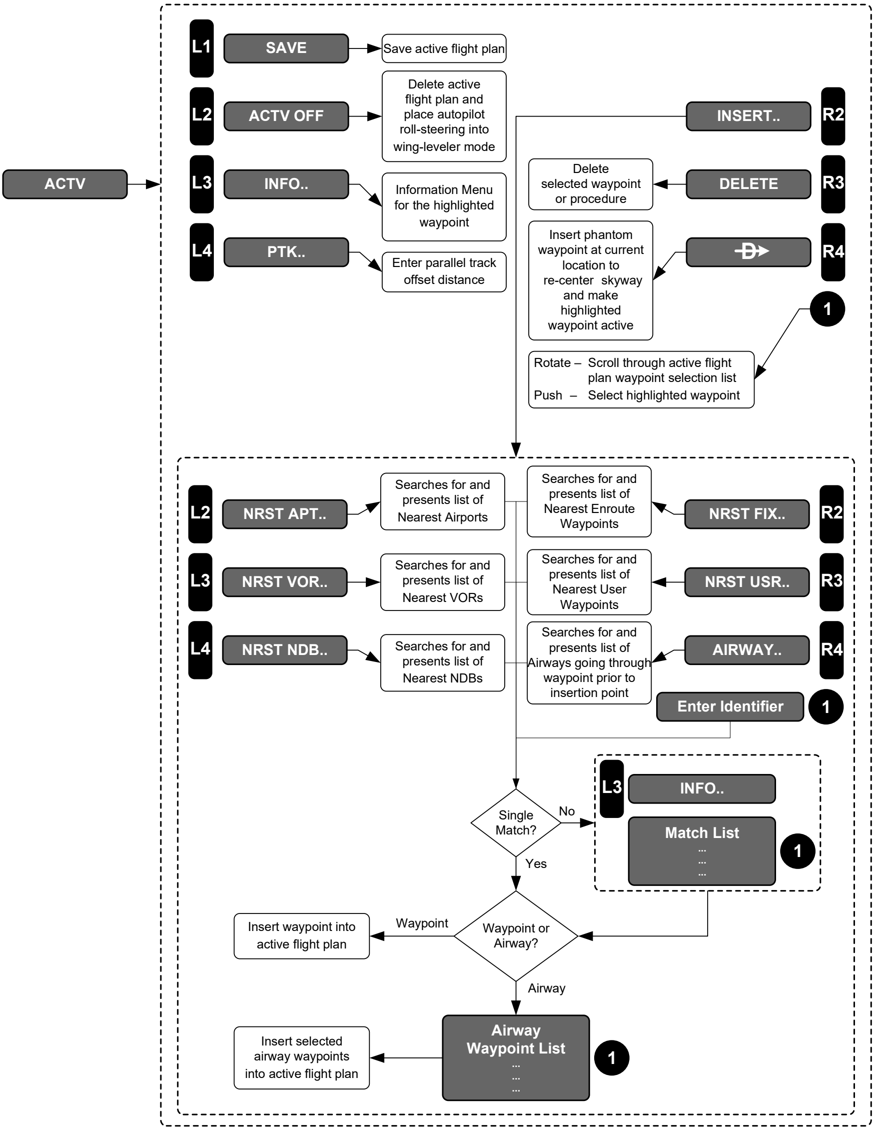


Figure 5-8: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
SAVE (L1)	Saves and is part of 100 stored flight plans	N/A	Saves without procedures or phantom waypoints. Named by first and last waypoints.
ACTV OFF (L2)	Deletes		Prompted to confirm deletion.
INFO.. (L3)	Activates information menu for the highlighted waypoint.		With no active flight plan, activates information for nearest airport.
PTK.. (L4)	If active leg is eligible for offset, allows pilot to specify parallel offset distance for non-procedure segments.		20NM left or right in 1NM increments.
INSERT../ADD.. (R2)	Insert or add a waypoint or airway.		**ADD**: At the end of active flight plan. **INSERT**: Above the highlighted waypoint. **SEARCH**: Requires minimum of 2 characters. **INFO**: After adding waypoint, appears to aid in selection. **AIRWAY**: Search for all airways going through highlighted waypoint. Offers option to select exit waypoint. Includes datalinked weather info when available.

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options			
Menu Options	**Action for Active Flight Plan**	**Search Limits**	**Limitations**
NRST APT.. (L2)	Search for airports of runway length criteria set in EFIS limits.	Search for 20 items within 240 NM nearest to the waypoint prior to the insertion point.	**NO RESULTS**: No eligible airports within search area or selection list includes bearing, distance to each result. **INFO**: After adding waypoint, appears to aid in selection.
NRST FIX.. (R2)	Search for fixes		**NO RESULTS**: No fixes within search area or selection list includes identifier, bearing and distance to each result. **INFO**: Provides information and aids in selection.
NRST NDB.. (L4)	Search for NDBs		**NO RESULTS**: No NDBs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. **INFO**: Provides information and aids in selection.
NRST USR.. (R3)	Search for nearest user waypoints		**NO RESULTS**: No user waypoints within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result.

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options			
Menu Options	**Action for Active Flight Plan**	**Search Limits**	**Limitations**
			INFO: Provides information and aids in selection.
NRST VOR.. (L3)	Search for nearest VORs		**NO RESULTS**: No VORs within search area or selection list including identifier, bearing, and distance to each result. (Geodetic results only) **INFO**: Provides information and aids in selection.
Identifier Entry Box	Area to enter identifier where knob message would normally appear.	N/A	Entry of at least 2 characters and then **SEARCH (R4)** appears for immediate search to begin. Selection list may appear for addition to add to flight plan. **INFO**: Provides information and aids in selection. Includes optional Datalinks weather when available.
DELETE (R3)	If highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure waypoint, deletes the waypoint after confirmation.		If highlighted waypoint is part of a procedure, deletes entire procedure after confirmation. Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is a non-procedure and there are fewer

Table 5-4: Active Flight Plan Menu Options

Menu Options	Action for Active Flight Plan	Search Limits	Limitations
			than three non-procedure waypoints in active flight plan. Does not appear if highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.
DIRECT (R4)	Inserts phantom waypoint at the current aircraft position and makes the highlighted waypoint active.		Phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. Assures the skyway is re-centered for guidance. Does not appear when the highlighted waypoint is suppressed or one position beyond the end.

NOTE:

To prevent corruption of IFR approaches, STARs, and DPs, holding patterns and SAR patterns, the title does not appear when:

1) Highlighted waypoint is the second or subsequent waypoint of a procedure.

2) Highlighted waypoint is a suppressed airport and the prior waypoint is part of an approach procedure.

3) Highlighted waypoint is a holding point, or

4) Highlighted waypoint is a SAR pattern exit waypoint.

When activated, a sub-menu is presented as follows:

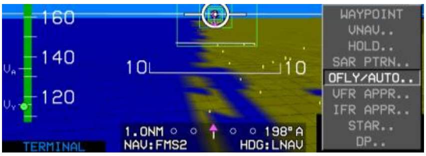
For waypoints, if there is a single result, it is inserted or added to the active flight plan. If there is no result, pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a list with matching identifiers is presented and, upon selection, the selected waypoint is inserted or added to the active flight plan. **INFO (L3)** aids in selection and gives access to information for the highlighted result.

For airways, This option only appears when an airway transits through the waypoint prior to the insertion point. When activated, a search is performed for all airways going through the highlighted waypoint and matching the entered identifier (i.e., for a list of all Victor airways, Q-routes and T-routes, enter an identifier string of “V”, “Q,” “T”, etc.). If there is a single result, a list of airway waypoints is shown to select the desired user selected exit point. If there is no result, pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a list with matching airway identifiers is presented and, upon selection, a list of airway waypoints is shown to select the desired exit point. Upon selecting the desired exit point, all airway waypoints from the previous waypoint to the desired exit point are inserted or added to the active flight plan. Each active flight plan has a limit of a maximum of **40** waypoints.

5.8.2. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

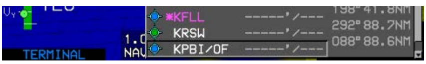
1) With desired flight plan selected and activated, press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.

2) Rotate ❶ to desired waypoint. Push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to desired option (for example **OFLY/AUTO..**) and then push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to **OVERFLY** and then push to enter.

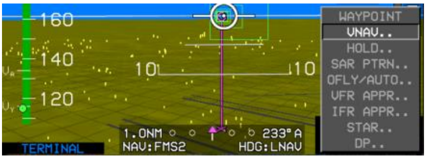


5) KPBI is now overflown as a "Fly-Over" waypoint.

5.8.3. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) With desired flight plan selected and activated, press **ACTV (L2)** to view active flight plan.

2) Rotate ❶ to desired waypoint and then push to enter.



3) As one option, rotate ❶ to **VNAV..** and then push to enter a VNAV setting.

4) Rotate ❶ to **ALTITUDE:** and then push to enter. Rotate ❶ to select **7500'** and then push to enter. Rotate ❶ to **OFFSET:** and then push to enter. Rotate ❶ CCW to **-3NM** and then push to enter.

5) View active flight plan with waypoint crossing altitude offset of **3 NM** before at **7500'**.

5.8.4. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Options NRST Menu Option (PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) Rotate ❶ to highlight waypoint where another waypoint is to be inserted above and press **INSERT.. (R2).**

2) Press **NRST APT.. (L2)**, **NRST VOR.. (L3)**, **NRST NDB.. (L4)**, **NRST FIX.. (R2)**, or **NRST USR.. (R3)**, to view applicable list. Rotate ❶ to desired selection and then push to insert into active flight plan.

3) Press **SAVE (L1),** this action saves this active flight plan as one of the 100 saved flight plans in the system. This action is the same as creating a flight plan in the **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** menu. This action exits the Active Flight Plan menu.

4) Pressing **EXIT (R1)** saves changes to the existing active flight plan only.

5.9. Information (INFO) Menu

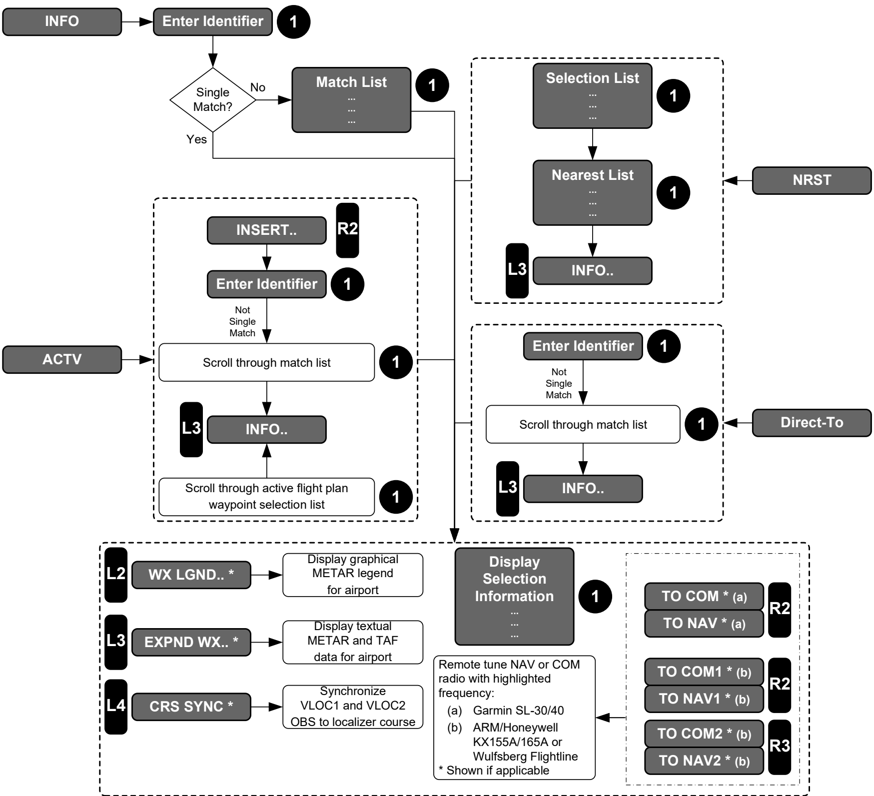


Figure 5-9: Information Menu

If **INFO** is activated from within the **ACTV, NRST,** or **Direct** menus, information on the highlighted waypoint is shown. Otherwise, the function checks for an active waypoint. If there is an active waypoint, it becomes the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, then the nearest airport becomes the default entry. If the default entry is accepted, then information for the default entry is shown. If the user rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, then a search for matching characters is performed. Only two identifier characters are needed prior to searching, therefore after entering two identifier characters, **SEARCH (R4)** appears which allows an immediate search to begin if desired. If there is a single result from the search, information for that result is shown. If there is no result from the search, the user is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results from the search, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented to allow the user to select the desired identifier.

The amount and type of information presented depends upon the type of waypoint. For all types of waypoints, waypoint identifier, waypoint type, waypoint elevation (if it exists), long name, bearing and distance, and latitude/longitude is presented. For navigation aids, navigation aid frequency is also presented. For airports, communication frequencies and airport runway data is presented. In addition, with datalink enabled, airport graphical METAR, current altimeter setting and current wind conditions is presented. If textual METAR data for a specified airport is not available, the graphical weather conditions data, current altimeter setting, and current wind conditions is presented as "----".

The amount and type of information presented depends upon the type of waypoint as in Table 5-5.

Table 5-5: INFO Menu Information

Type	NAVAID	Airports
Waypoint Identifier	NAVAID Type	Communication frequencies
Waypoint Type	Frequency	Airport runway data
Waypoint elevation		
Long Name		
Bearing and distance		
Latitude and longitude		

For remote tuning, **COM1 (R2)** and/or **COM2 (R3)** is shown to allow transmission of the frequency to remote radios when frequencies greater than or equal to 118 MHz are highlighted in the INFO block.

Figure 5-10: Remote Tuning COM Radios

NAV1 (R2) or **NAV2 (R3)** is shown to allow transmission of the frequency to remote radios when frequencies less than 118 MHz are highlighted in the INFO block.

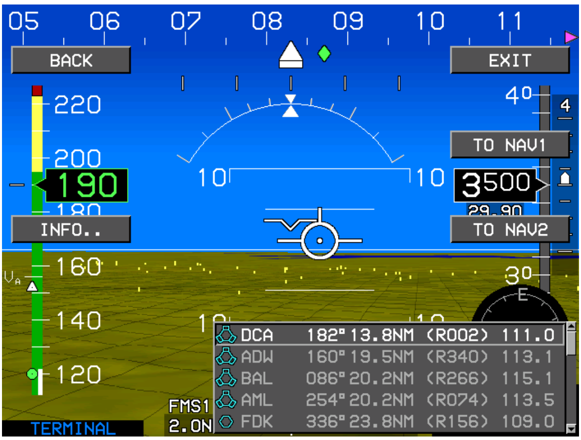


Figure 5-11: Remote Tuning NAV Radios

When information presented is for an ILS or localizer waypoint and the VLOC1 or VLOC2 omnibearing selectors are not synchronized with the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** synchronizes VLOC1 and VLOC2 omnibearing selectors to the localizer course.

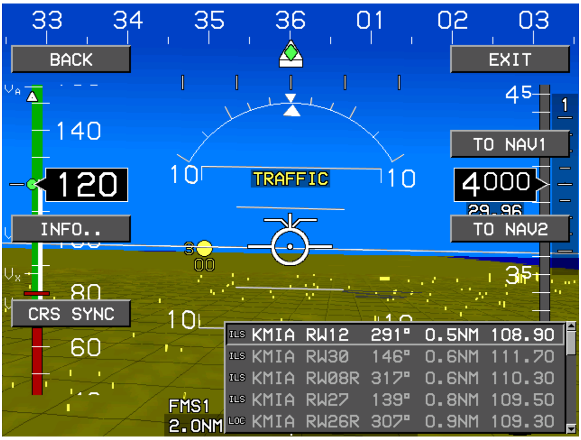
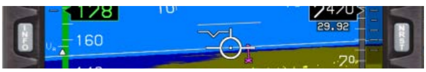


Figure 5-12: CRS SYNC

> **NOTE:**
>
> If remote tuning is enabled for Garmin SL-30/40 radios, only a single **TO COM** or **TO NAV (R2)** appears. If remote tuning is enabled for Cobham CD/Honeywell KX radios, **TO COM1** or **NAV1 (R2)** appears and **TO COM2** or **NAV2 (R3)** appears.

5.9.1. Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step) PFD



1) Press **INFO (L3)** to view active waypoint.

2) Push ❶ to view information.

3) Press **BACK (L1)** to regress one step and view the active flight plan again or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit Active Flight Plan menu.

5.9.2. Information (INFO) Menu (Step-By-Step) MFD

1) Repeat steps 1 through 3 from § 5.9.1.

2) Press **WX LGND (L2)** to view examples of weather symbology or **EXPND WX (L3)** to view METARS and or TAF reports.

3) In this case, **KMIA** includes METAR and TAF reports from the optional Datalink configured in EFIS limits.

5.10. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

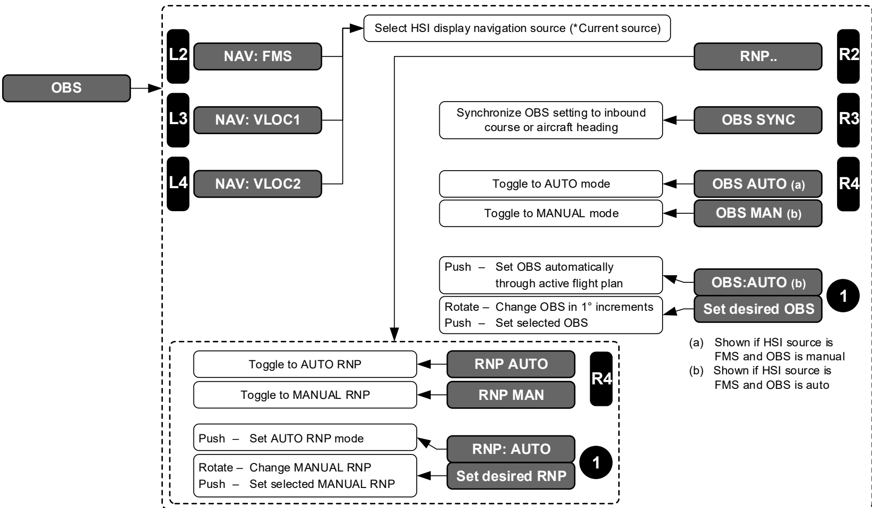


Figure 5-13: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu

OBS menu allows the user to control the omnibearing selector for showing course deviations. With FMS as the active navigation source press **OBS (L4)** to specify a manual or automatic OBS setting in which the active OBS is controlled by the active flight plan. With optional VOR equipment enabled, OBS for VLOC1 allows the user to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC1 navigation function. OBS for VLOC2 allows the user to specify the active OBS setting for the VLOC2 navigation function. Manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, and **VLOC2 OBS** settings are settable in increments of 1°. **OBS SYNC (R3)** synchronizes the manual **FMS**, **VLOC1**, or **VLOC2 OBS** settings (depending upon HSI source) to the inbound course or, if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading. When HSI source is FMS, **OBS AUTO/OBS MAN (R4)** toggles between automatic and manual OBS settings.

NOTE:

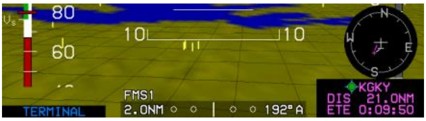
If true north mode is not configured in EFIS limits through external switching, the OBS menu allows the user to toggle between **TRUE NORTH** and **MAG NORTH** modes.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Table 5-6: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu Options</th></tr>
<tr><th>OBS (L4)
*Nav Source in use</th><th>OBS SYNC (R3)</th><th>OBS MANUAL (R4)</th><th>Nav Source and CDI Indication</th></tr>
<tr><td>NAV:FMS (L2)
NAV:FMS*</td><td>Only available with active waypoint. Synchronizes FMS to inbound course.</td><td>Only available with active waypoint. Set in increments of 1° with ❶.</td><td>GPS navigation source
FMS1 or FMS2</td></tr>
<tr><td>NAV: VLOC1 (L3)
NAV:VLOC1*</td><td>Synchronizes VLOC1 or VOR1 to the inbound course or if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading.</td><td rowspan="2">Set in increments of 1° with ❶.</td><td>LOC1
VOR1
BC1</td></tr>
<tr><td>NAV: VLOC2 (L4)
NAV:VLOC2*</td><td>Synchronizes VLOC2 or VOR2 to the inbound course or if the inbound course cannot be determined, to aircraft heading.</td><td>LOC2
VOR2
BC2</td></tr>
</table>

Table 5-6: Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu Options			
OBS (L4) *Nav Source in use	**OBS SYNC (R3)**	**OBS MANUAL (R4)**	**Nav Source and CDI Indication**
RNP (R2) RNP **RNP MANUAL (R4)** RNP MANUAL	When selected, allows for **RNP MANUAL (R4)** OBS:AUTO or OBS MANUAL	Rotate ❶ to set desired manual RNP value.	Manual RNP is selectable between 0.15NM and 15NM. 0.01 increments RNP 0.10-0.3 0.1NM increments RNP0.3-2.0 1NM increments RNP 2.0-15
TRUE NORTH (L1) TRUE NORTH	Toggle between TRUE NORTH **(L1)** and MAG NORTH **(L1)**		

The OBS function also permits the user to select either **FMS**, **VLOC1**, or **VLOC2** as the HSI source. The HSI source selects the navigation source used to generate HSI guidance symbology. The OBS function also permits the user to select between manual and automatic RNP settings.

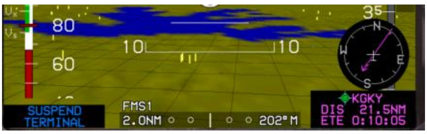
5.10.1. Omnibearing Selector (OBS) Menu (Step-By-Step)



1) Before pressing **OBS (L4)** to make any OBS changes, view the current setting to see **FMS** is selected.

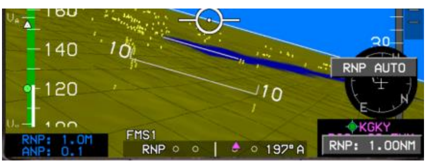
2) Press **OBS (L4)** then make HSI source selection or change to **OBS MANUAL (R4).** (There must be an active waypoint selected to use manual OBS.)

3) When the OBS is set to FMS, press **OBS MANUAL (R4)** and rotate ❶ to select new OBS course and then push to enter.



4) With an active waypoint. To select manual RNP press **OBS (L4)** then **RNP (R2)**.

5) Press **RNP MANUAL (R4)**.



6) Rotate ❶ to desired RNP FSD setting and then push to enter to view estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.

5.10.2. True North and Magnetic North Menu (Step-by-Step)

1) Press **OBS (L4)** to open menu for true north option selection.

2) Press **TRUE NORTH (L1)** to change heading reference to true instead of magnetic, or activate switch if True North is configured in EFIS limits.

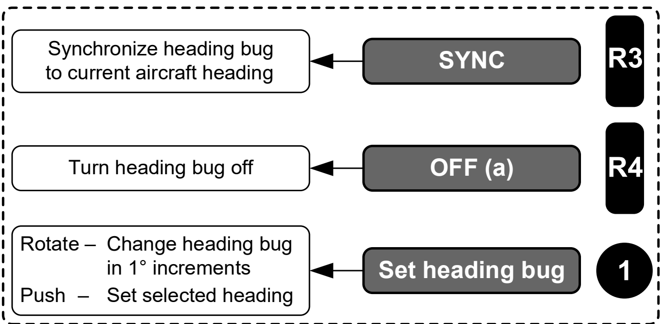
3) Reference is now true north as seen in heading indications and TRUE NORTH advisory flag.

4) Press **MAG NORTH (L1)** to restore heading reference to magnetic north.

5) Heading reference is now magnetic.

5.11. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu

Rotate ❶ to activate the heading bug menu to set the heading bug in increments of 1°, and to synchronize to current heading.



(a) Not available if integrated autopilot installed

Figure 5-14: Heading Bug (HDG) Menu

5.11.1. Heading Bug (HDG) Menu (PFD only) (Step-By-Step)

Use the heading bug menu to set the heading bug in increments of 1°, synchronize to current heading, or turn off heading bug.

1) Rotate ❶ to change heading bug in 1° increments.

2) Press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize heading to current heading.

3) When heading bug is displaced beyond heading scale boundaries it is often easier to press **SYNC (R3)** and then make small adjustments by rotating ❶ to desired heading and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu and save HDG bug setting.

5.12. Nearest (NRST) Menu

Upon selecting a category from the option list, a list of up to 20 items within 240NM matching the category appears. If the list is empty (i.e., no items within 240NM), **NO RESULTS** is displayed. The selection list includes identifier, bearing, and distance to the item. The list of airports contains only airports with runway length greater than or equal to the minimum runway length setting as configured during installation.

The list for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, ARTCCs, and FSSs includes an associated frequency (CTAF for airports). Tiles allow transmission of the associated frequency to remote NAV or COM radios. If the frequency is greater than or equal to 118 MHz, tiles read to either **COM1 (R2)** or **COM2 (R3)**. If the frequency is less than 118 MHz, tiles read **NAV1 (R2)** or **NAV2 (R3)**.

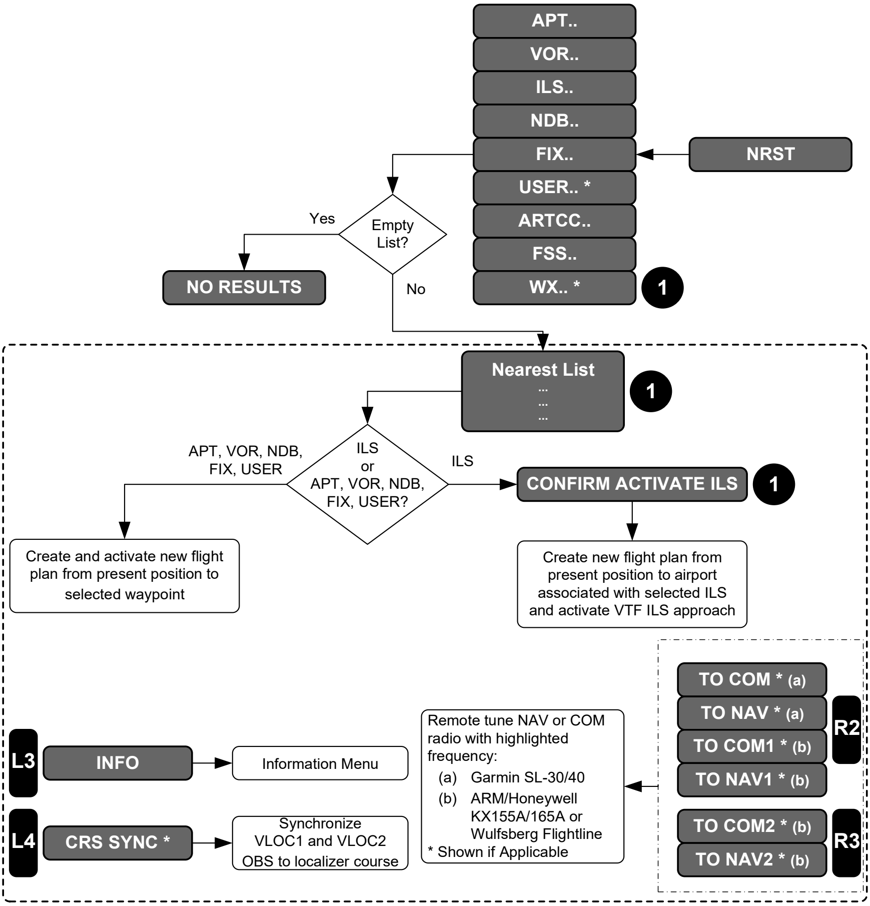


Figure 5-15: Nearest (NRST) Menu

NOTE:

Frequencies are only sent to either com or nav radios in the standby position. It is up to the user to swap frequencies to the active position in the applicable radio.

When the results for the nearest category of airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, fixes, user waypoints, ARTCC, and FSS, are displayed, **INSERT (R2)** inserts a waypoint into the active flight plan at the active waypoint position. This feature facilitates rapid clearance changes from air traffic control. To prevent corruption of IFR approaches, STARs, and DPs, **INSERT (R2)** does not appear if the active waypoint is within a procedure.

When the results for airports, VORs, ILSs, NDBs, fixes, and user waypoints are displayed, **INFO (L3)** provides further information on the highlighted item.

In the case of **NRST ILS** where the current VLOC1 or VLOC2 OBS does not match the localizer course, **CRS SYNC (L4)** synchronizes VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS to the localizer course.

Upon selecting airport, VOR, NDB, fix, or user waypoint, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. Upon selecting ILS, **CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS** is displayed. When the ILS is confirmed, the following actions occur:

1) Previous active flight plan is deleted.

2) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created;

3) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated;

4) If the heading bug is turned off, it is activated to current heading to act as a starting point for receiving vectors (AP enabled systems only);

5) VLOC1 and VLOC2 OBS settings are set to the associated localizer course;

6) HSI source is switched as follows:

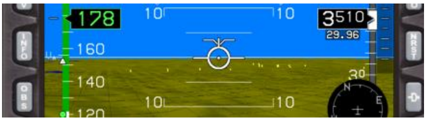
    a) If there is only one NAV radio installed, the source for the selecting side is changed to VLOC1.

    b) Default sensor for the selecting side controls which source is used. Source for the other side does not change.

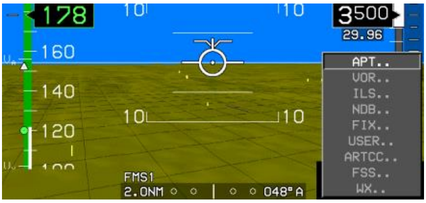
7) If there are two NAV radios installed, then the default sensor (ref: 01-000029-090A) for the selecting side controls which source is used. The source for the other side does not change.

8) Connected NAV radios are remote tuned to ILS frequency (if enabled in EFIS limits for remote tuning.)

5.12.1. Nearest (NRST) Menu PFD or MFD) (Step-By-Step)



1) Press **NRST (R3)** to enter nearest menu.



2) Push ❶ to open list of 20 airports to select from.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired airport and select **TO COM1 (R2)**, **COM2 (R3)**, **INFO.. (L3)**, and/or push ❶ to change active waypoint to desired airport.

5.12.2. NRST VOR..

1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

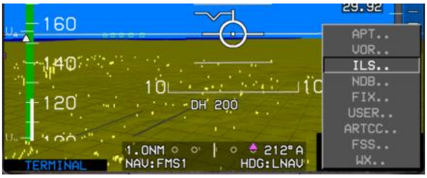
2) Rotate ❶ to select **VOR..** and then push to enter.

3) If a nav frequency is selected, press **TO NAV1 (R2)** or **TO NAV2 (R3)** to send frequency, or push ❶ to change active waypoint to selected VOR.

NOTE:

TO NAV1 and **TO NAV2** only appear if this remote-tuning feature is enabled in EFIS limits.

5.12.3. NRST ILS..



1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

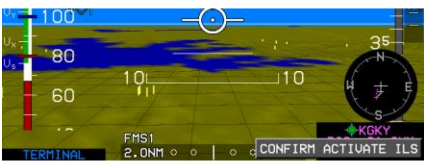
2) Rotate ❶ to **ILS..** and then push to enter.

3) If a nav frequency is selected, press **TO NAV1 (R2)** or **TO NAV2 (R3)** to send frequency, or push ❶ to change active waypoint to selected localizer.

NOTE:

TO NAV1 and **TO NAV2** only appear if this remote-tuning feature is enabled in the EFIS.

ILS frequency is automatically transmitted to NAV1 and NAV2 in standby position. (Pilot must ensure correct frequency is swapped to active position and identified on both nav receivers)



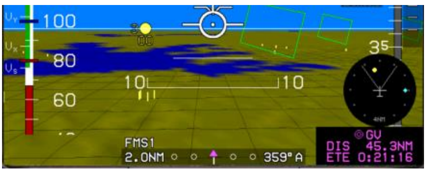
4) Push ❶ to confirm activate ILS. This action clears any prior active flight plan once confirmed.

5.12.4. NRST NDB..

1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

2) Rotate ❶ to desired NDB and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired NDB and then, push ❶ to change active flight plan for Direct-To the highlighted NDB via geodesic routing.



4) **GV NDB** is now the active waypoint.

5.12.5. NRST FIX..

1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

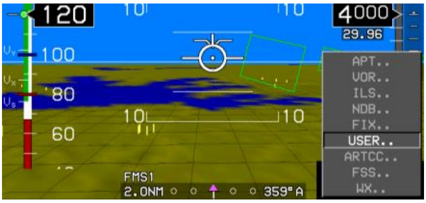
2) Rotate ❶ to **FIX..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired fix and then, push ❶ to change active flight plan for Direct-To the highlighted fix via geodesic routing.

4) Another option is to press **INFO (L3)** for viewing information about the fix.

5) Information is presented with bearing and distance to and the LAT/LON location of the fix.

5.12.6. NRST USER..



1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

2) Rotate ❶ to **USER..** and then push to enter.

3) In this case, there is only one User fix within 240NM. Push ❶ to change active flight plan for Direct-To the highlighted fix via geodesic routing.

4) Another option is to press **INFO (L3)** for viewing information about the user fix.

5) Information is presented for the user waypoint 

5.12.7. NRST ARTCC..

1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

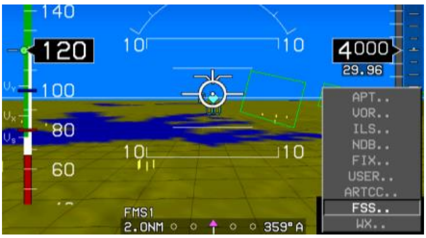
2) Rotate ❶ to **ARTCC..** and then, push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired ARTCC and press **TO COM1 (R2)** or **TO COM2 (R3)**, to send frequency to desired transceiver.

NOTE:

TO NAV1 (R2) and **TO NAV2 (R3)** only appear if remote-tuning feature is enabled in the EFIS limits.

5.12.8. NRST FSS..



1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

2) Rotate ❶ to **FSS...** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired nearest **20** FSS facilities within **240 NM** and view bearing and distance/frequencies.

4) Press **TO COM1 (R2)** or **TO COM2 (R3)**, to send frequency to desired transceiver.

5.12.9. NRST WX..

1) Repeat **NRST APT..** step 1 (see § 5.12.1).

2) Rotate ❶ to **WX..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired nearest **20** airports reporting weather within **240 NM** and view symbology for reported weather conditions.

4) Press **INFO (L3)** for information on selected airport.

5) See Datalink appendix for symbology reference.

5.13. Direct Menu

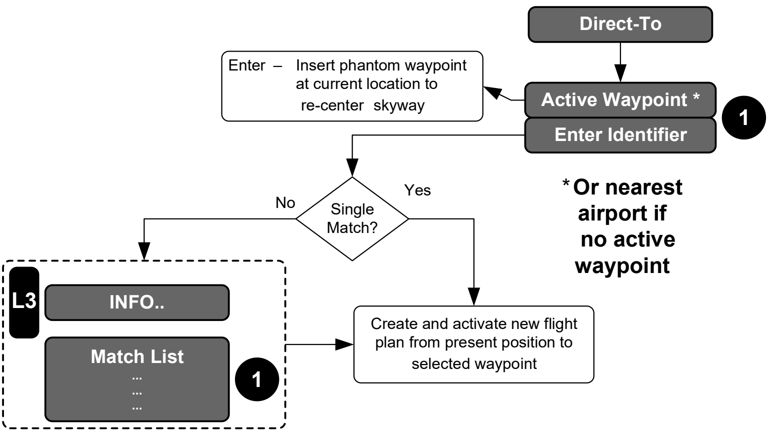


Figure 5-16: Direct Menu

Upon activating the direct menu from the top-level menu, if an active waypoint is found, it is the default entry. If there is no active waypoint, the nearest airport is the default entry.

If the default entry is the active waypoint and accepted by the user, a phantom waypoint is inserted at the current aircraft location. The phantom waypoint is a fly-over defined entry waypoint, and the leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity. This assures the skyway is re-centered to provide guidance to the new active waypoint. The rest of the active flight plan remains unchanged.

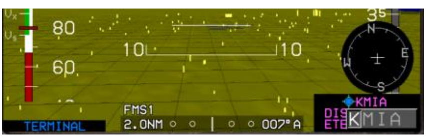
If the default entry is not the active waypoint and accepted by the user, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If the user rejects the default entry by entering identifier characters, a search for matching identifiers is performed. If there is a single result, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint.

If there is no result, pilot is re-prompted to enter an identifier. If there are multiple results, a selection list with matching identifiers is presented. Upon selection, the resulting action depends upon whether the aircraft is in the air or on the ground. If in the air, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. If on the ground, a search is conducted for a database airport within 6NM. If an airport is found, a new active flight plan is created from the found airport to the selected waypoint. Otherwise, a new active flight plan is created from present aircraft position to the selected waypoint. **INFO.. (L3)** gives information for the highlighted result.

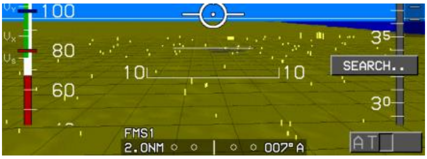
5.13.1. Direct Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press  **(R4)** to enter direct menu.

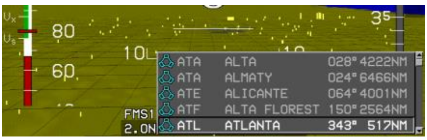


2) Active or nearest airport waypoint appears. In this case **KMIA** was the active waypoint.

3) If new waypoint is to be created, rotate ❶ to begin entering new waypoint identifier and rotate/push ❶ to complete all 5 spaces and then push to enter new identifier.



4) **AT** was entered, press **SEARCH.. (R4)** bringing up a list of several options from which to select.



5) Rotate ❶ to the desired destination waypoint and then push to enter. This created a new active flight plan from the present aircraft position.

5.14. Time (TIME) Menu

Upon selecting the time menu, a list appears to choose **COUNT UP..** timer, **COUNT DN..** timer, **UTC OFFSET..**, or **FLT TIME** display. **OFF** (**R4**) turns off any active timer functions.

If the user selects the count up timer, the count up timer is activated. If the countdown timer is selected, the user is prompted to enter a start time from which the countdown begins. Shortcut buttons to quickly add or decrease by five-minute increments. After entering a start time, start the countdown timer or press **STORE (R4)** or push ❶ to store the start time for later u se.

If UTC offset is selected, the user is prompted to enter a UTC offset between -12:00 and +14:00 in 15-minute increments.

If the user selects the count up timer, the count up timer is activated. If the countdown timer is selected, the user is prompted to enter a start time from which the countdown begins. Shortcut buttons to quickly add or decrease by five-minute increments. After entering a start time, start the countdown timer or press **STORE (R4)** or push ❶ to store the start time for later use.

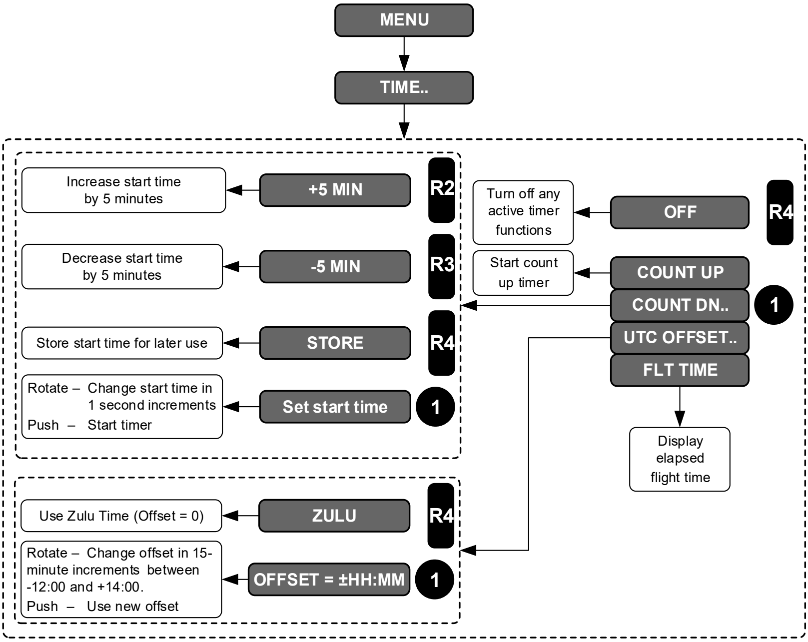


Figure 5-17: Time Menu

If UTC offset (Local) is selected, the user is prompted to enter a UTC offset between -12:00 and +14:00 in 15-minute increments.

If the user selects the flight time display option, the elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or until any button is pressed. If the aircraft has not yet transitioned from ground to air mode, upon selecting the flight time display option, elapsed time is displayed as **FLT TM: 00:00:00**.

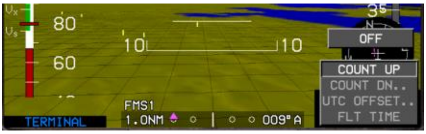
5.14.1. Time (TIME) Menu (PFD and MFD) (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds… (PFD shown)

2) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds… (MFD shown)

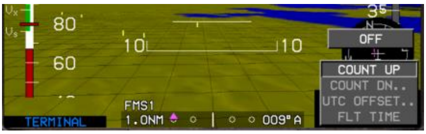
3) Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter time menu. (PFD shown)

4) Press **TIME.. (L4)** to enter time menu. (MFD shown)

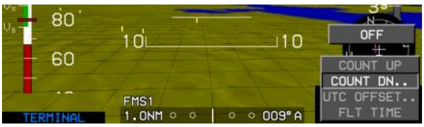


5) Rotate ❶ to **COUNT UP**, **COUNT DN..**, **UTC OFFSET..**, or **FLT TIME**. Push to enter. (PFD shown)

6) If **COUNT UP** is selected, a timer appears on the PFD only, below bank scale.



7) To turn off timer, press **MENU** within 10 seconds **(R1)**, **TIME (L4)**, then **OFF (R4)**.

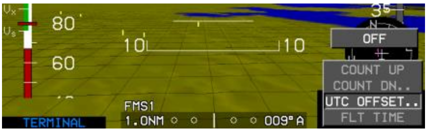


8) If **COUNT DN..** is selected, a timer appears on the PFD only. Below bank scale. (PFD shown, MFD is similar)

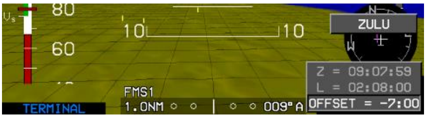
9) Press **+5 MIN (R2)** to step up in 5-minute increments (up to 55 minutes) for storage in memory.

10) Press **STORE (R4)** to save in storage for later retrieval of countdown timer. (PFD shown)

11) To adjust time set in countdown timer storage, press **-5 MIN (R3)** to step down in 5-minute increments. (PFD shown)



12) To set offset for local time, rotate ❶ to **UTC OFFSET...** Push to enter. (PFD shown)

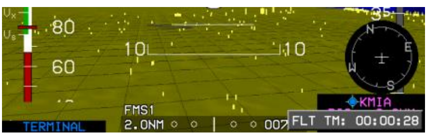


13) Rotate ❶ to desired offset value. Push to enter. (PFD shown)

14) Local time now appears where Zulu time was previously displayed on the MFD only.

15) Press **ZULU (R4)** to reset local time back to ZULU time.

16) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **TIME.. (L4)** then rotate ❶ to **FLT TIME** and then push to enter to view current elapsed time since the aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode.



17) Current elapsed time aircraft transitioned from ground to air mode is displayed for 10 seconds or until any key is pressed. If not yet transitioned to air mode FLT TM: 00:00:00 appears for 10 seconds. (MFD and PFD shown).

NOTE:

When local time is created and local time is present, all ETA references in active flight plan information and Nav Log no longer refers to UTC. Use caution with ATC clearances since they are always based upon UTC.

5.15. PFD Source Menu

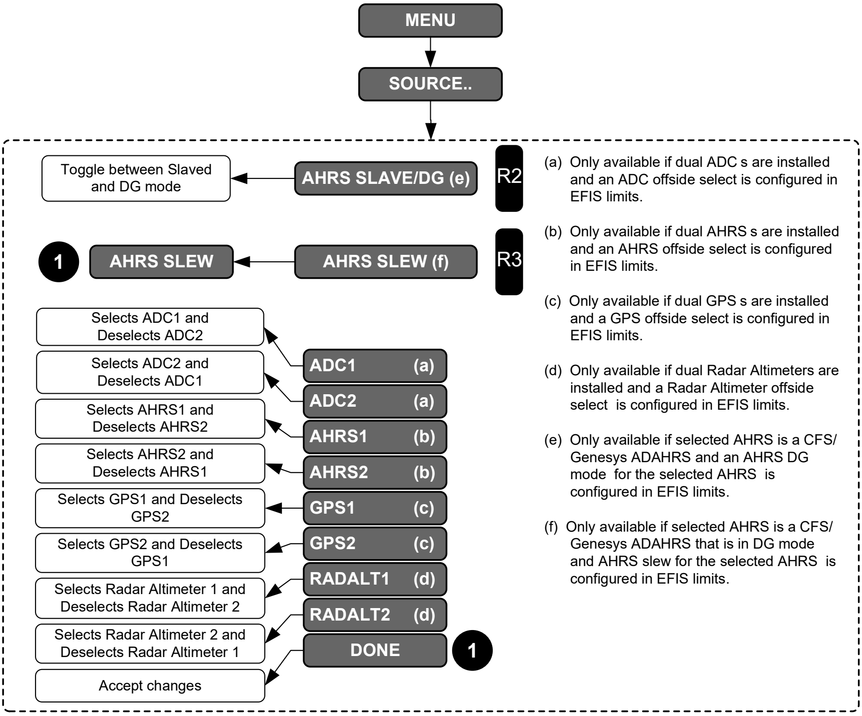


Figure 5-18: PFD Source Menu

Upon activating the PFD source menu, an option list of sensor sources appears to select/deselect the following items if external switches are not configured through input configuration:

1) ADC1;
2) ADC2;
3) AHRS1;
4) AHRS2;
5) DME1;
6) DME2;
7) EICAS1; (When configured)
8) EICAS2; (When configured)
9) GPS1;
10) GPS2;
11) Radar Altimeter 1; and
12) Radar Altimeter 2.

5.15.1. PFD Page First-Level Source Selection (Step-By-Step)

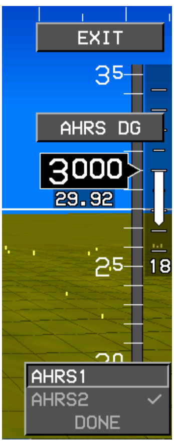
1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds…

2) Press **SOURCE.. (L2)**.

3) Rotate ❶ to select desired source, push to select, rotate to **DONE**, and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)**.

5.15.2. AHRS SLAVE/ AHRS DG

AHRS SLAVE/AHRS DG (R2) toggles between the two AHRS modes. **AHRS SLEW (R3)** enters a submenu to adjust the DG mode slewing value (if a DG/Slave input is not configured for that AHRS.)



1) When dual AHRS are installed without external switching rotate ❶ to desired AHRS and then push to enter.

2) When Genesys AHRS is installed and in DG mode without external switching press **AHRS SLAVE (R2)** or **AHRS SLEW (R3)** for desired action.

5.16. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu

Upon selecting the PFD bugs menu, choose from the following:

1) **MINS.. (R3)**: Push ❶ to select **DEC HT..** then **200 FT (R3)** or **OFF (R4)**, or set DH in increments of 10' or;

   Rotate ❶ to select **MIN ALT..**, press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize minimums to current altitude or rotate ❶ to desired minimum altitude in increments of 10';

2) **IAS.. (L2)**: Rotate ❶ to set airspeed bug or press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize with current airspeed, press **OFF (R4)** to turn off, or set the bug in increments of 1 knot IAS. (No bug setting less than 1.2 $\mathbf{V_S}$ or 60KIAS, whichever is lower. No higher than $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$/$\mathbf{M_{MO}}$);

3) **VNAV CDA.. (R4)**: Push ❶ to select VNAV **DCND ANG..** or rotate to **CLIMB ANG..** and then push to select. Rotate for (setting either in increments of 0.1° with corresponding feet per nautical mile, or selecting a shortcut for **3° (R4)** when values are other than default of **3°**);

4) **V-SPDS.. (L3)**: Push ❶ to select **TAKEOFF..** or rotate to **APPROACH..** and then push to select. Rotate to set V-speeds options for either takeoff V-speed ($\mathbf{V_1}$, $\mathbf{V_R}$, $\mathbf{V_2}$, and $\mathbf{V_{ENR}}$) or approach V-speeds ($\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ and $\mathbf{V_{APP}}$); or

5) **VSI.. (L4)**: Rotate ❶ to set the VSI bug in increments of 100 feet per minute or press **SYNC (R3)** to synchronize the VSI bug to the current VSI, or press **OFF (R4)** to turn off the VSI bug.

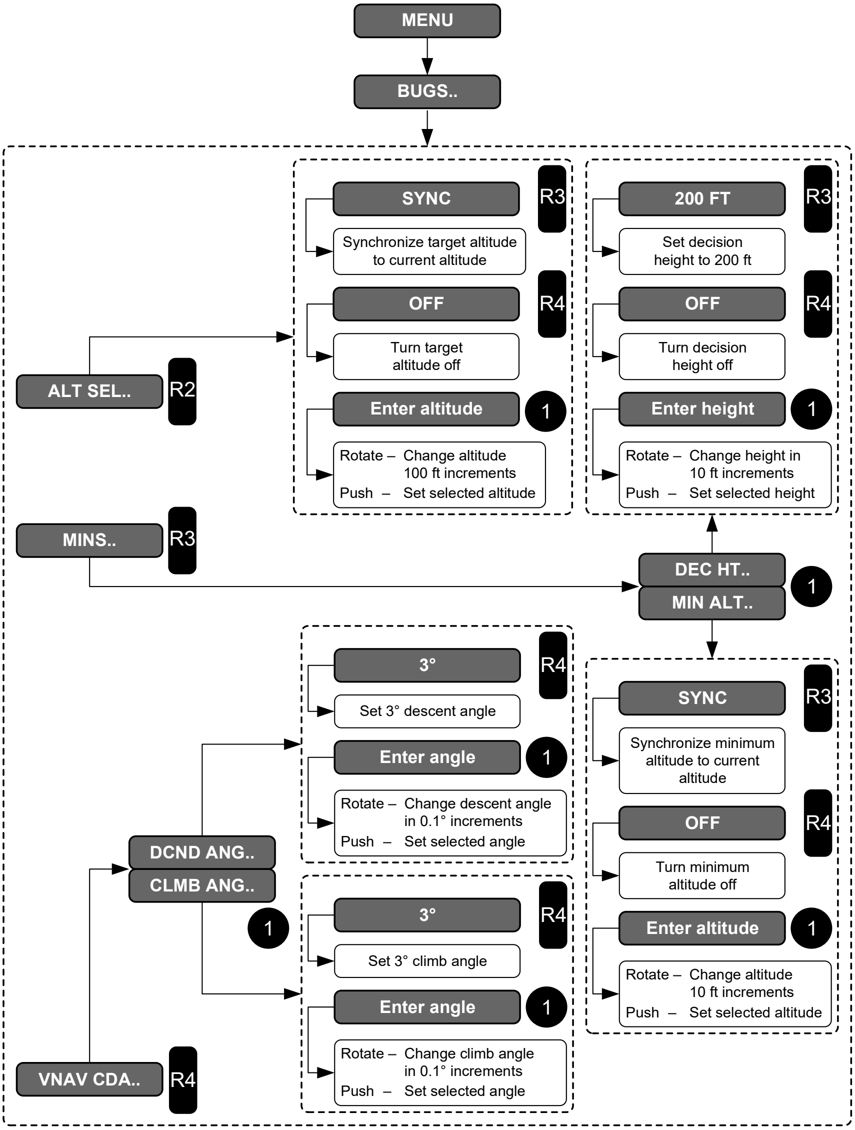


Figure 5-19: PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu

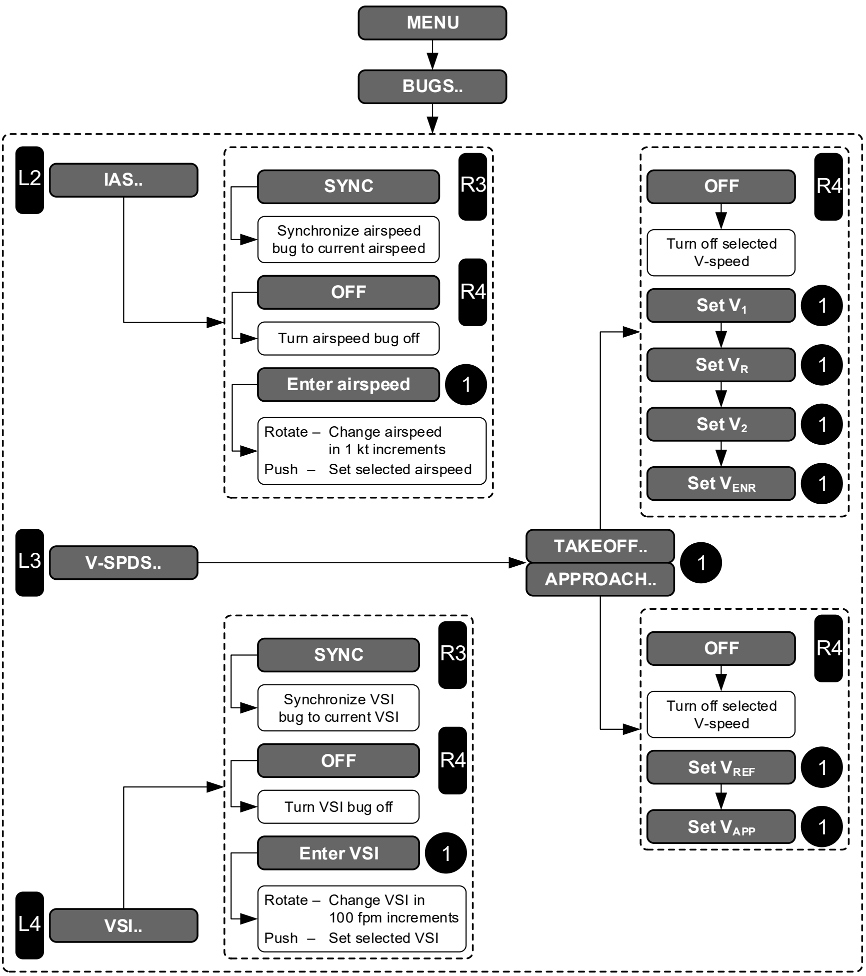
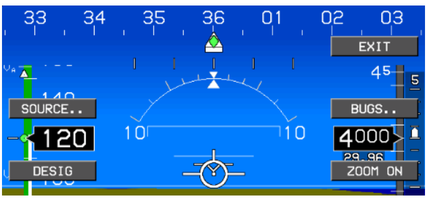


Figure 5-20: PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu (Continued)

5.16.1. PFD Bug (BUGS) Menu (Step-By-Step)

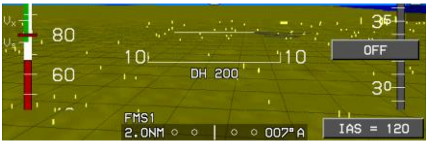


1) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **BUGS.. (R2)** to enter the bugs menu.

2) Press **IAS.. (L2)**, **V-SPDS.. (L3)**, **VSI.. (L4)**, **MINS.. (R3)**, or **VNAV.. CDA (R4)**.

3) Press **BACK (L1)** to back up one step.

4) Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu and save changes.



5) If IAS was selected, press **SYNC (R3)** to accept or **OFF (R4)** to turn off IAS bug.

6) For a different IAS bug, rotate ❶ to select airspeed. Push to enter new value. Value is displayed on the PFD above airspeed tape.

7) If VSI is selected, rotate ❶ to set in increments of **±100 FPM** and then push to select or press **OFF (R4)** to turn off VSI bug.

NOTE:

IAS and VSI Bugs are mutually exclusive.

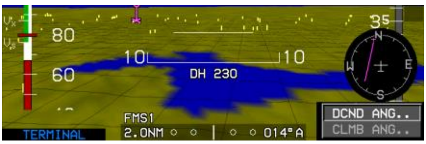
8) If **MINS (R3)** is selected, push ❶ to select **DEC HT..** or rotate to **MIN ALT..** and then push to enter.

9) If **DEC HT..** is selected rotate ❶ to create new decision height and then push to enter.

10) New DH displays below the FPM.

11) Press **OFF (R4)** to turn off.

12) If **MIN ALT..** is selected, rotate ❶ to create new minimum altitude or press **OFF (R4)** to turn off.



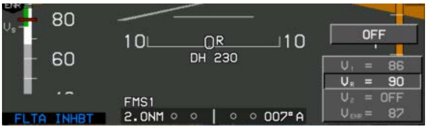
13) If **VNAV CDA.. (R4)** is selected, rotate ❶ to select **DCND..** or **CLIMB..** and then push to enter.

14) If **DCND..** is selected, rotate ❶ to create new descent angle.

15) For example, select -4.5° (-478 FPNM). Push ❶ or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and enter.

16) If V-speeds are selected, Push ❶ to enter **TAKEOFF..** V-Speeds menu.

17) Rotate ❶ to desired **V1** speed and then push to enter.



18) Rotate ❶ to desired **VR** speed and then push to enter.

19) Rotate ❶ to desired **V2** speed and then push to enter.

20) Rotate ❶ to desired **VENR** speed and then push to enter. Normally, takeoff speeds are set in sequence on the ground prior to takeoff.

21) With V-Speeds selected, rotate ❶ to **APPROACH..** and then push to enter.

22) Rotate ❶ to desired **VREF** speed and then push to enter.

23) Rotate ❶ to desired **VAPP** speed and then push to enter. Press **OFF (R4)** to turn off **VREF** sped bug.

5.17. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

Upon activation of the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items are shown.

Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options

Option	Configuration		Notes
	Normal SVS	Basic	
ANLG AGL	✓	✓	Mutually exclusive
ANLG G	✓	✓	
MINI MAP	✓	✓	
MINI TRFC	✓	✓	

Table 5-7: PFD Declutter Options

Option	Configuration		Notes
	Normal SVS	Basic	
BANK SCL	✓		Always in view while in basic mode
BASIC	✓	✓	Switches PFD to basic mode.
SKYWAY	✓		Skyway guidance symbology
SVS TAWS	✓		SVS TAWS is labeled “SVS ADVNCD” when TAWS is not enabled
SVS BASIC	✓		
TRAFFIC	✓		Perspective Traffic indications
TURN IND	✓	✓	Turn rate indication
FD1	✓	✓	Mutually exclusive
FD2	✓	✓	
METERS	✓	✓	Additional metric display of altitude, target altitude, and bug setting

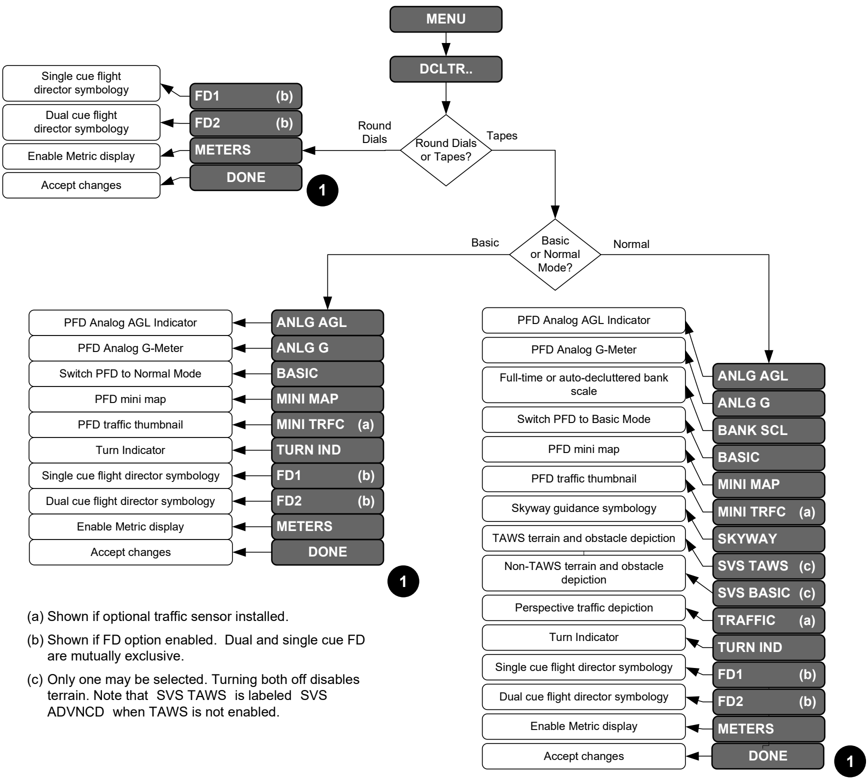


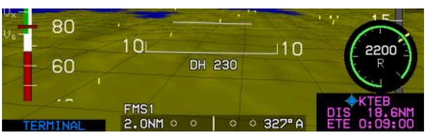
Figure 5-21: PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

5.17.1. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)** to enter the declutter menu.

2) Rotate ❶ to **ANLG AGL**, **ANLG G**, **BANK SCL**, **BASIC**, **MINI MAP**, **MINI TRFC**, **SKYWAY**, **SVS TAWS**, **SVS BASIC**, **TRAFFIC**, **TURN IND**, **FD1**, **FD2**, or **METERS**. Push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

3) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **ANLG AGL** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.



4) When below maximum AGL display as set in EFIS limits, the analog AGL indicator appears above the active waypoint information.

5) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **ANL G** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

6) View analog G meter above active waypoint.

7) If **BANK SCL** was deselected, press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter.

8) Bank scale is removed while in level flight and reappears when the magnitude of bank angle exceeds 2.8°.

9) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **BASIC** and then push to select/deselect.

10) Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

11) Reverse process to deselect **BASIC** mode and return display to SVS mode.

12) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **MINI MAP** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

13) The mini map appears when there is information available to reveal a compass rose, and active navigation route and active nav source pointers.

14) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **MINI TRFC** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

15) Traffic thumbnail appears above the active waypoint information.

NOTE:

Decluttering is possible. In the event of a traffic warning (TA or RA), the traffic thumbnail is automatically enabled while the traffic is active and aircraft above 500’ AGL.

16) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to SVS TAWS and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

17) To restore to SVS TAWS, Use same process as in step 16 and then push ❶ to select **SVS TAWS**. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

18) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to SVS BASIC and then push to toggle deselect/select for display.

19) To restore to SVS TAWS, repeat step 17.

20) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **TRAFFIC,** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

NOTE:

This action declutters proximate traffic depiction. User decluttering is automatically overridden while an RA or TA is active.

21) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **TURN IND,** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

22) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **FD1,** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

23) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **FD2,** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

NOTE:

FD1 and **FD2** are mutually exclusive.

24) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **DCLTR (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **METERS,** and then push to select/deselect. Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or Press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

25) With METERS selected metric values appear in addition to normal altitudes in feet.

5.18. Altimeter Menu

Press **BARO (R2)** to activate the altimeter menu. Rotate ❶ to increase (CW) or decrease (CCW) the barometric setting and then push to accept the new barometric setting. In addition, the following options are available in the altimeter menu:

1) **QNH/QFE (L2):** Toggles between QNH and QFE altimeter operation. When in QNH mode, QNE operation is automatically selected when above the transition altitude with a standard altimeter setting.

   a) **QFE**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

   b) **QNE**: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

   c) **QNH**: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

2) **TRANS ALT (L3)**: Changes transition altitude in units of 500 feet. Transition altitude is used to generate barometric setting warnings and to determine QNE/QNH operation. If current transition altitude is not 18,000 feet, **18000' (R4)** sets the transition altitude as 18,000 feet.

3) **MBAR/IN HG (L4)**: Sets barometric setting units (inHg or mbar).

4) **STD (R4)**: Sets barometric setting to standard (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar).

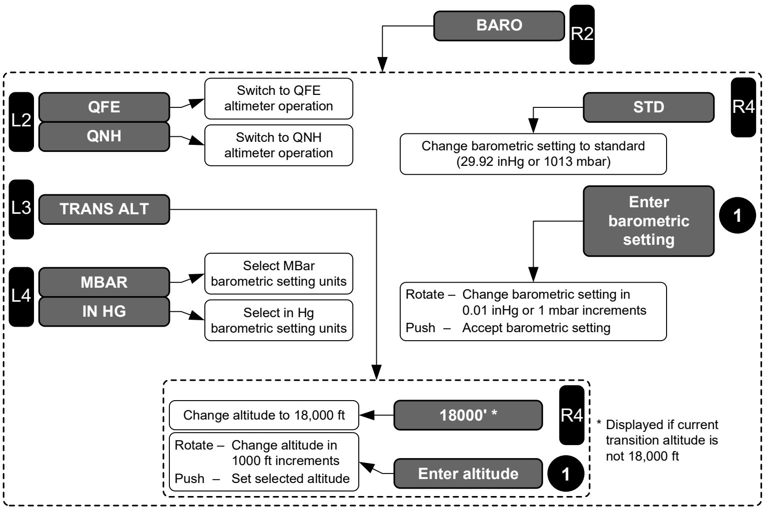


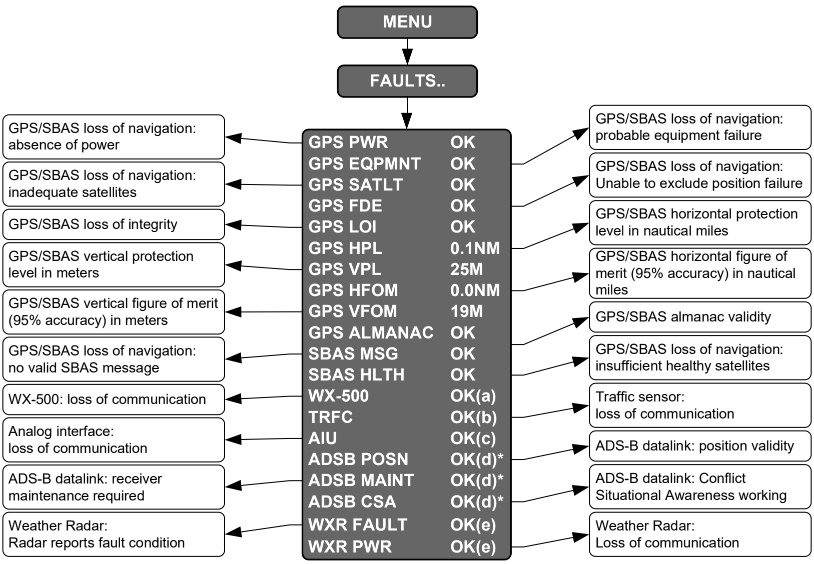
Figure 5-22: Altimeter Menu

5.18.1. PFD Altimeter Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **BARO (R2)** to enter altimeter menu.

2) Rotate ❶ to set proper QNH and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.
3) Crosscheck proper QNH under altitude indication.
4) Press **BARO (R2)** again and **STD (R4)** to reset QNH to 29.92 inHg (or 1013 mbar). Push ❶ to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu.

5.19. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu



(a) Shown if optional WX-500 installed
(b) Shown if optional traffic sensor installed
(c) Shown if optional AIU installed
(d) Shown if optional ADS-B datalink installed
(e) Shown if optional weather radar installed

Figure 5-23: MFD Fault Display Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, status of the following system parameters are displayed.

1) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to absence of power (GPS PWR).

2) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to probable equipment failure (GPS EQPMNT).

3) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to inadequate satellites to compute a position solution (GPS SATLT).

4) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to a position failure that cannot be excluded within the time to alert (GPS FDE).

5) GPS/SBAS loss of integrity and loss of navigation due to loss of integrity (GPS LOI). 

6) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal protection level (GPS HPL) in nautical miles. This value may be used as the estimate of position uncertainty required in RNP airspace.

7) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical protection level (GPS VPL) in meters.

8) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS horizontal figure of merit (GPS HFOM) in nautical miles. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence horizontal position accuracy.

9) Readout of the current GPS/SBAS vertical figure of merit (GPS VFOM) in meters. This value is an indication of the 95% confidence vertical position accuracy. (For example, the MSL altitude used in the TAWS algorithms use geodetic height converted to MSL with the current Earth Gravity Model (EGM) database. For this to be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, the VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet.) Additionally, the tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet. When AGL altitude is based on BARO, it is because the RADALT was in a failed state (if so equipped) and the VFOM exceeded 106 feet rendering the vertical component of GPS altitude invalid in the MSL altitude calculation.

10) An indication of whether the GPS/SBAS receiver has a valid almanac in memory (GPS ALMANAC).

11) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to no valid SBAS message received for 4 seconds or more (SBAS MSG).

12) GPS/SBAS loss of navigation due to insufficient number of SBAS HEALTHY satellites (SBAS HLTH).

a) An Attitude or Range Fault Condition exists.

b) A Control Fault Condition exists.

c) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

13) If the WX-500 option is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 (WX-500).

14) If the traffic option is enabled, loss of communications with the traffic sensor (TRFC).

15) If the analog interface option is enabled, loss of communications with the analog interface (AIU).

16) If ADS-B datalink is enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), an indication of whether maintenance of the ADS-B receiver is required (ADSB MAINT) and an indication of whether the conflict situational awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA).

17) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar power/communication status (“WXR PWR X” or “WXR PWR OK”). Weather radar power/communication status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:

a) Loss of weather radar communication (ARINC 453 label 055 or 171 not available or not accepted for more than 2 seconds).

b) Weather radar mode is OFF.

18) If weather radar is enabled, an indication of weather radar fault status (“WXR FAULT -,” “WXR FAULT X,” or “WXR FAULT OK”). When weather radar power/communication status is failed, weather radar fault status indicates determination of weather radar faults is not possible (WXR FAULT –). Weather radar fault status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects that any one of the following conditions are true:

a) A cooling fault condition exists

b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.

c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840 or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.

d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.

e) A control fault condition exists.

f) A T/R Fault Condition exists.

19) If weather radar is enabled, the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and an external radar control panel is installed, an indication of radar control panel status ("WXR RCP X" or "WXR RCP OK"). External radar control panel status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates either loss of communication or a failure status.

5.19.1. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **FAULTS (L1)** to view the faults menu.

2) View status of GPS and equipment parameters.

5.20. MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu

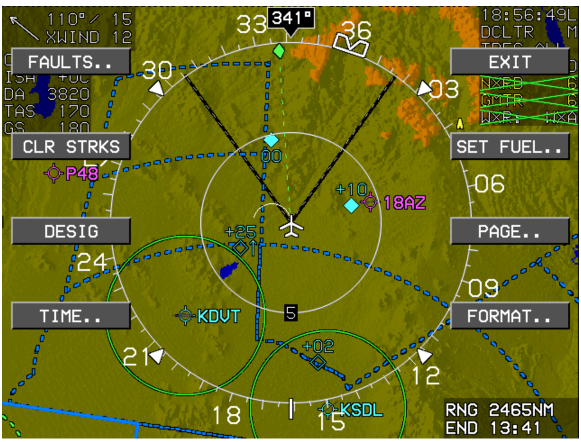


Figure 5-24: MFD SET FUEL

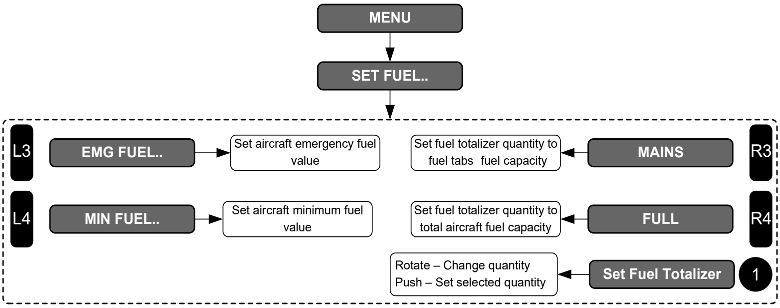


Figure 5-25: MFD Fuel Totalizer Quantity Menu

SET FUEL menu allows the user to:

1) Set the fuel totalizer quantity in increments of volume units.

   If either a fuel totalizer or fuel level sensing (with no unmonitored fuel) is configured in the aircraft limits, set emergency and minimum fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

2) Press **MAINS** (**R3**) to set the quantity to the “fuel tabs” fuel capacity. Press **FULL** (**R4**) to set the quantity to the total aircraft fuel capacity. Units of measure and fuel flow are shown in the quantity window when available. If fuel flow is available, current fuel flow is shown on the Nav Log top area.

3) If an aircraft fuel caution or aircraft fuel warning is configured in the limits, set **EMG FUEL.. (L3)** and **MIN FUEL.. (L4)** fuel bugs in increments of volume units.

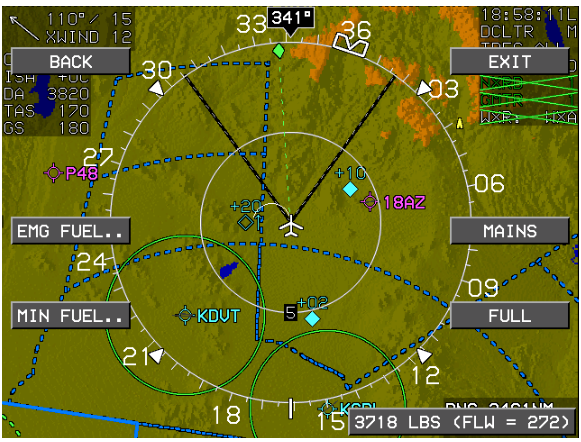


Figure 5-26: Fuel Totalizer Quantity Setting (SET FUEL) Menu

5.21. MFD Page Menu

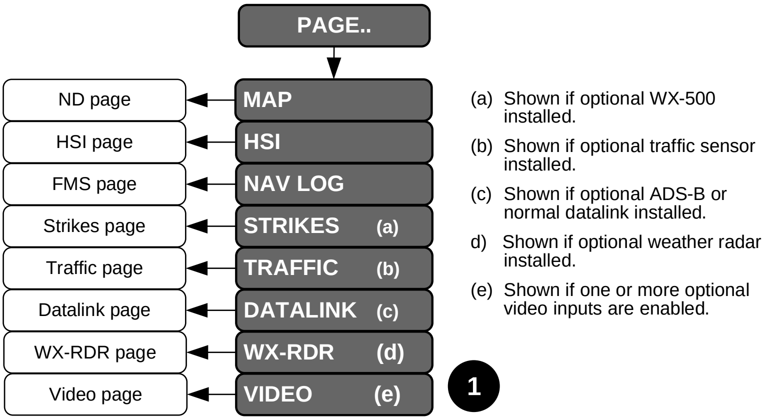


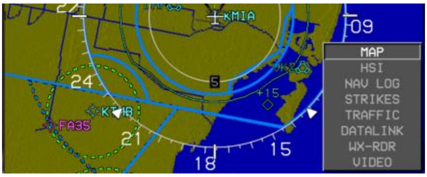
Figure 5-27: MFD Page (PAGE)

PAGE menu allows the user to select which MFD page to display:

1) **MAP**: ND page
2) **HSI**: HSI page
3) **NAV LOG**: FMS page
4) **STRIKES**: WX-500 Lightning Strikes page (See Strikes Appendix)
5) **TRAFFIC**: Traffic page (See Traffic Appendix)
6) **DATALINK**: Datalink page (See Datalink Appendix)
7) **WX-RDR**: Weather Radar page (See Weather Radar Appendix)
8) **VIDEO**: Video page (See Video Appendix)

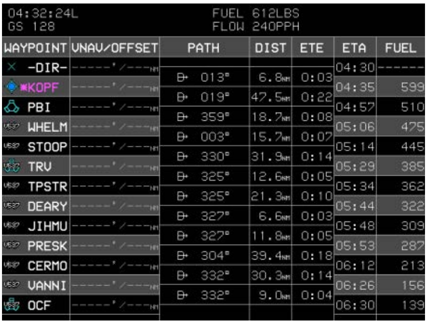
5.21.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**.



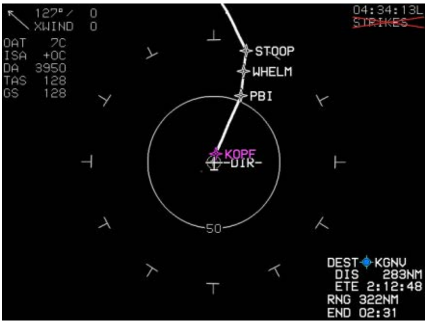
2) Rotate ❶ to **MAP**, **HSI**, **NAV LOG**, **STRIKES**, **TRAFFIC**, **DATALINK**, **WX-RDR, or VIDEO**. Push to enter.

3) Example of HSI page shown. (See § 5.22 for details.)

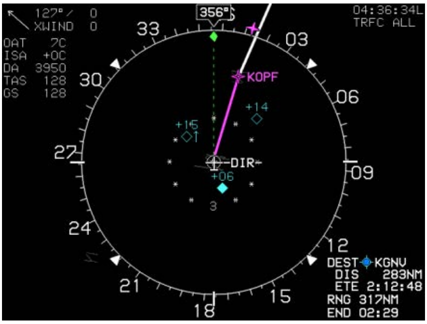


WAYPOINT	UNAV/OFFSET	PATH	DIST	ETE	ETA	FUEL
-DIR-	-----°/---NM				04:30	-----
KOPF	-----°/---NM	013°	6.8NM	0:03	04:35	599
PBI	-----°/---NM	019°	47.5NM	0:22	04:57	510
WHELM	-----°/---NM	359°	18.7NM	0:08	05:06	475
STOOP	-----°/---NM	003°	15.7NM	0:07	05:14	445
TRV	-----°/---NM	330°	31.9NM	0:14	05:29	385
TPSTR	-----°/---NM	325°	12.6NM	0:05	05:34	362
DEARY	-----°/---NM	325°	21.3NM	0:10	05:44	322
JIHMU	-----°/---NM	327°	6.6NM	0:03	05:48	309
PRESK	-----°/---NM	327°	11.8NM	0:05	05:53	287
CERMO	-----°/---NM	304°	39.4NM	0:18	06:12	213
VANNI	-----°/---NM	332°	30.3NM	0:14	06:26	156
OCF	-----°/---NM	332°	9.0NM	0:04	06:30	139

4) Example of NAV LOG shown with full page. Rotate ❶ CW to view additional Nav Log legs.

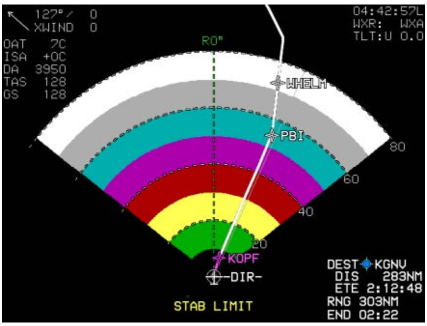


5) Example of **STRIKES** page shown. (See Strikes Appendix for details.)



6) Example of **TRAFFIC** page shown. (See Traffic Appendix for details.)

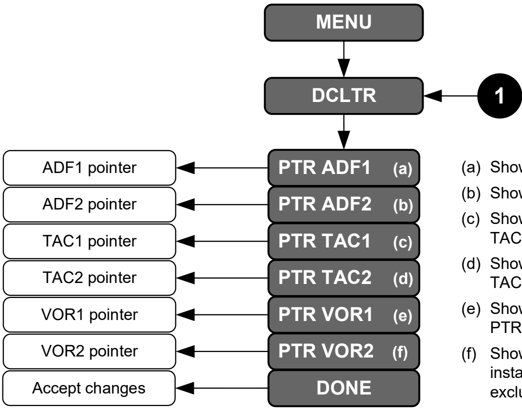
7) Example of **DATALINK** page shown. (See Datalink Appendix for details.)



8) Example of WX RDR page shown. (See WX RDR Appendix for details.)

9) Example of **VIDEO** page shown. (See Video Appendix for details.)

5.22. MFD HSI Declutter Menu



(a) Shown if optional ADF receiver installed.

(b) Shown if optional 2nd ADF receiver installed.

(c) Shown if optional TACAN receiver installed. PTR TAC1 and PTR VOR1 are mutually exclusive.

(d) Shown if optional 2nd TACAN receiver installed. PTR TAC2 and PTR VOR2 are mutually exclusive.

(e) Shown if optional VHF navigation receiver installed. PTR TAC1 and PTR VOR1 are mutually exclusive.

(f) Shown if optional 2nd VHF navigation receiver installed. PTR TAC2 and PTR VOR2 are mutually exclusive.

Figure 5-28: MFD HSI DCLTR Menu

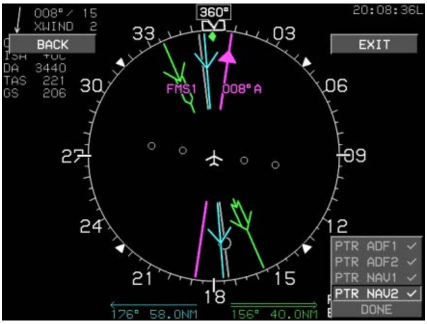
Upon selecting the HSI declutter menu in the HSI page, a list appears to individually display:

1) ADF1 pointer (if ADF symbology is enabled);
2) ADF2 pointer (if dual ADF symbology is enabled);
3) TAC1 pointer (if TACAN symbology is enabled); and
4) TAC2 pointer (if dual TACAN symbology is enabled).
5) VOR1 pointer (if VOR symbology is enabled); and
6) VOR2 pointer (if dual VOR symbology is enabled).

5.22.1. MFD HSI Declutter (DCLTR) Menu (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **DCLTR.. (R4)** to enter Declutter menu.

2) It is not possible to declutter the FMS HSI needle.



3) Rotate ❶ to **PTR ADF1**, **PTR ADF2**, **PTR VOR1**, **PTR VOR2**, **PTR TAC1**, or **PTR TAC2** and then push to select. Press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate to **DONE** and then push to enter.

NOTE:

The following pointers are mutually exclusive:

TAC1 and VOR1 and

TAC2 and VOR2.

5.23. MFD Page Format Menu

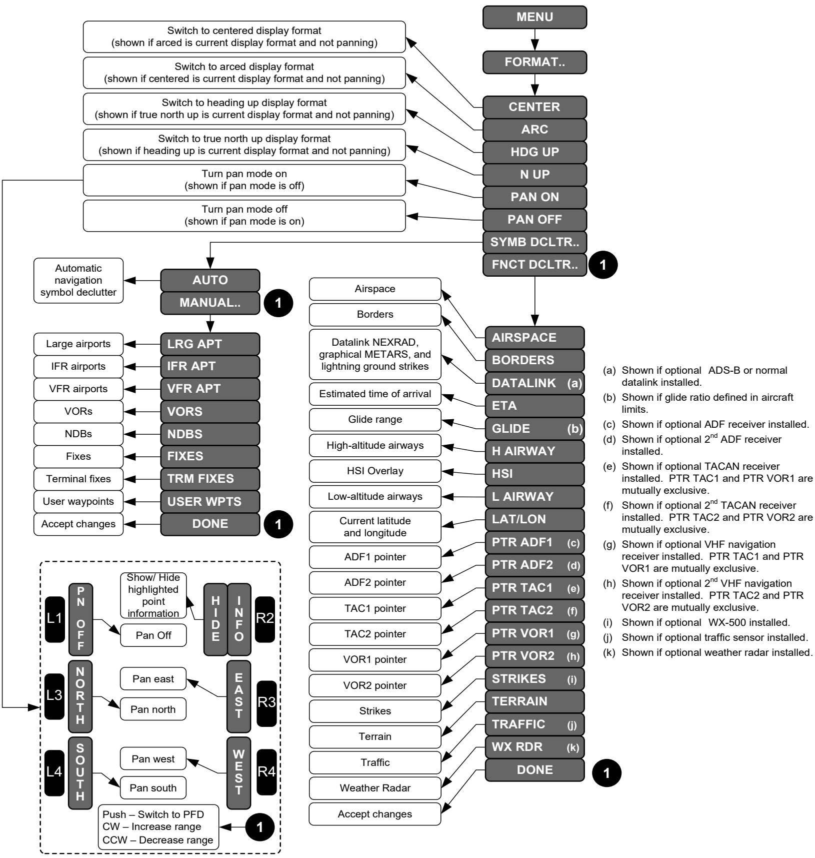


Figure 5-29: MFD Page Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu when in the ND page, a list appears with the following options:

1) **CENTER/ARC**: Toggles between centered and arced ND display format (if not panning).

2) **HDG UP/N UP**: Toggles between heading-up and north-up ND display format (if not panning).

3) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles ND page pan mode.

4) **SYMB DCLTR**: Activates a list to choose automatic or manual navigation symbol declutter. If the user chooses manual navigation symbol declutter, a list appears to individually select:

   a) large airports;

   b) IFR airports;

   c) VFR airports;

   d) VORs;

   e) NDBs;

   f) fixes;

   g) terminal fixes; and

   h) user waypoints

Figure 5-30: MFD Symbol Declutter

Turning on VFR airports also turns on large and IFR airports. Turning on IFR airports also turns on large airports. Turning off large airports also turns off IFR and VFR airports. Turning off IFR airports turns off VFR airports.

5) **FNCT DCLTR**: Activates a list to individually toggle display of:

   a) airspace

   b) borders

   c) Datalink (ADS-B)

   d) ETA

   e) H AIRWAY (High-altitude airways)

   f) HSI (overlay)

   g) L AIRWAY (Low-altitude airways)

   h) LAT/LON (Current latitude and longitude position)

   i) PTR ADF1

   j) PTR ADF2

   k) PTR TAC1

l) PTR TAC2
m) PTR VOR1
n) PTR VOR2
o) Strikes (WX-500 lightning)
p) TERRAIN
q) TRAFFIC
r) WX RDR

5.23.1. MFD Page Format (Step-By-Step)

All possible options for formatting are not shown for Symbol declutter or Function declutter. Review above VISIO menu for details.

5.23.1.1. Changing MFD ND Orientation

1) Press **MENU (R1)**.
2) Press **FORMAT.. (R4)**.

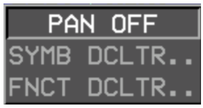
3) If in arc mode, rotate ❶ to **CENTER** and then push to enter to center display.

4) If in center mode, rotate ❶ to **ARC** and then push to enter to change to arc mode.

5) If in HDG UP mode, rotate ❶ to **N UP** and then push to enter and change display to north-up orientation.

6) To enter pan mode, press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds **FORMAT.. (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **PAN ON** and then push to enter.

7) To turn off pan mode, either press **PN OFF (L1)** or **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds then **FORMAT.. (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **PAN OFF** and push to enter.



5.23.1.2. Adding LAT/LON to MFD ND Page

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds…

2) Press **FORMAT.. (R4).**

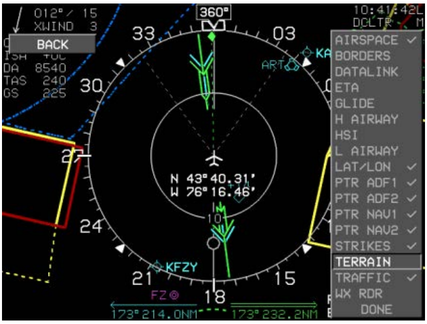
3) Rotate ❶ to **FNCT DCLTR...** Push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to **LAT/LON** and then push, then either press **EXIT (R1)** or rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter.

NOTE:

With long declutter list presented, the **EXIT (R1)** is hidden. Press **BACK (L1)** to view **EXIT (R1)**.

Latitude/longitude display is removed when a traffic alert is present.



1) To turn off terrain, press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **FORMAT (R4)**. Rotate ❶ to **TERRAIN** and then push to uncheck.

2) Rotate ❶ to **DONE** and then push to enter or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit menu

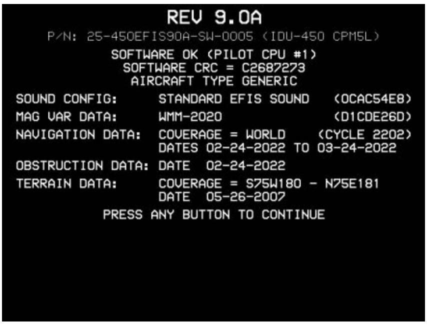
NOTE:

When the IDU is powered down and reinitialized, terrain remains off until restored.

Section 6 Quick Start Tutorial

Quick Reference Guide (DOC 64-000101-090A)

Begin by reading the EFIS Aircraft Flight Manual Supplement (AFMS).



Power up the EFIS. The system performs a built-in test routine. If all tests pass, the system displays a screen identifying the database coverage. Press any button or push/rotate ❶ to acknowledge. The system begins a two-minute count down while awaiting sensor initialization. For the purpose of flight planning, etc., press any button or push/rotate ❶ to override this countdown.

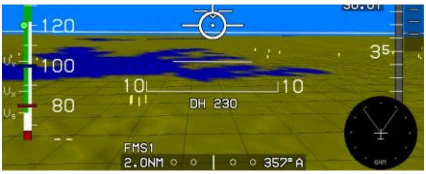
❷ ❶

Right knob is numbered ❶. The left knob ❷ is for lighting control only.

PFD

Press **BARO (R2).**

Rotate ❶ to proper setting and then push to enter value or press **EXIT (R1)**.



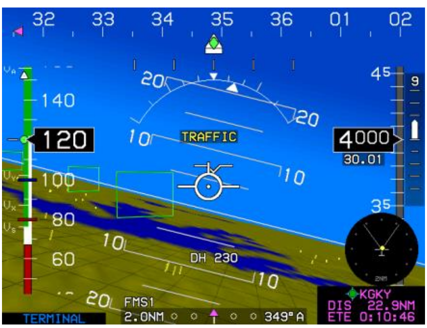
Without an active waypoint, press  **(R4)** to proceed direct to nearest airport.

Either push to enter or rotate ❶ to the desired alpha or numerical character, push to confirm, and advance to the next position. Push to enter once, until all five spaces have been either entered or viewed.

Magenta star bearing to the waypoint and green diamond ground track symbols are displayed on the directional scale.

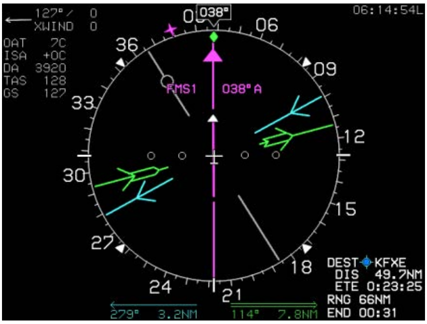
A direct route to the active waypoint is activated and appears as magenta tethered balloon on the PFD.

Active waypoint information, including waypoint type and identifier; elevation or crossing altitude; and bearing and distance are displayed below the analog AGL indicator or mini map as configured.



Indicated airspeed is on the left, altitude is on the right, and heading is across the top. FMS/VLOC CDI is located on the bottom. VSI appears on the right side of the altitude tape. Time-critical caution is displayed in the primary field of view.

MFD



Analog navigation symbology on MFD HSI page. Active navigation source matches color of HSI CDI. VOR1 and VOR2 bearings and DME on bottom of display.

Manual Termination Leg

A manual leg has been created within a procedure and waypoint sequencing is suspended.

To resume normal waypoint sequencing press **RESUME (L2)**.

Now **RESUME (L2)** is no longer present, and the system is no longer in SUSPEND mode.

Flight Plans (Stored Routes)

Activate Flight Plan on PFD or MFD

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to **SELECT..** and then push to enter.
3) Rotate ❶ to select desired flight plan and then push to activate.

Create Flight Plan on MFD

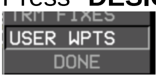
1) Press **FPL (L1)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.
3) Select **CREATE FLIGHT PLAN** and then push to enter.
4) Press **ADD (R2)** to create first waypoint using ❶ to enter waypoints from beginning to end; or press **NRST APT (L2)**, **NRST VOR (L3)**, **NRST NDB (L4)**, **NRST FIX (R2)**, **NRST USR (R3)** or **AIRWAY (R4)** (when applicable) to select next waypoint, and then push to enter.
5) Press **SAVE (R4)** to save flight plan or press **LOCK (L4)** to lock and save flight plan from being edited or deleted.
6) Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit flight planner.

NOTE:

LOCK (L4) only appears on the ETT or Ground-Based Maintenance Utility in GMF mode. This feature is never found on the IDUs installed in the aircraft operating in the flight mode.

Waypoints

Create a User Waypoint on PFD or MFD

1) Press **MENU (R1)**.
2) Press **DESIG (L3)**. (Results are never seen in PFD nor ND if 

in symbol declutter menu remains deselected.)

Edit a User Waypoint MFD

1) Press **FPL (L1)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to **EDIT USER WPT** and then push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to highlight waypoint to edit and then push to enter.

5) Edit waypoint. Press **SAVE (R4)** or **(R4)** to create new waypoint as the active waypoint and begin navigation guidance.

   a) If **SAVE (R3)** is pressed, **EDIT WHICH USER WAYPOINT** appears for further action, if none is desired, press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.

   b) If **(R4)** is pressed, a new active waypoint is created and navigation guidance begins. Press **EXIT (R1)** to exit menu.

Insert Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to location on waypoint list where added waypoint is to be inserted above.

3) Press **INSERT (R2)**.

4) Press **NRST APT (L2)**, **NRST VOR (L3)**, **NRST NDB (L4)**, **NRST FIX (R2)**, or **NRST USR (R3)**, or **AIRWAY (R4)** and then:

   a) Rotate ❶ to make selection and then push to enter, or

   b) Use ❶ to enter waypoint identifier and then push to enter.

5) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit active flight plan.

Add Waypoint to an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to end of active flight plan and one empty row below.

3) Press **ADD (R2)** and then steps 4 and 5 as shown above.

Delete Waypoint from an Active Route on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to waypoint to delete and press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL WPT**. If part of a published procedure, press **DELETE (R3)** to prompt **CONFIRM DEL PROC**.
3) Push ❶ to **CONFIRM DEL WPT** or **CONFIRM DEL**.
4) Press **SAVE (L1)** to save new active flight plan as another stored flight plan, or press **EXIT (R1)** to save changes and exit active flight plan.

Omnibearing Selector Function

Automatic OBS (FMS OBS Only) on PFD or MFD

1) Press **OBS (L4)**.
2) Press **OBS AUTO (R4)**.
3) Push ❶ **OBS:AUTO** to enter.

Manual OBS on PFD or MFD

1) Press **OBS (L4)**.
2) If HSI source is NAV FMS, press **OBS MANUAL (R4)**, rotate ❶ to desired OBS value, and then push to enter, or press **OBS SYNC (R3)** and then push ❶ to enter.

Approaches/Track

Select a VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

(The active flight plan must contain an eligible airport for runway selection and VFR approach creation.)

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to desired airport or user waypoint and then push to enter.
3) Rotate ❶ to **VFR APPR..** and then push to enter.
4) For published airport, rotate ❶ to desired runway and then push to enter.

Change Runway during VFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to highlight the following and then push to enter:
    a) Destination airport
    b) **VFR APPR..**
    c) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to select desired runway and then push to enter.

(This deletes the previous VFR approach and creates a new VFR approach to the selected runway.)

Select an IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to desired eligible airport and then push to enter.
3) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.
4) **PICK APPR:** Rotate ❶ to desire d approach and then push to enter.
5) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to desired transition and then push to enter.
6) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to desired runway and then push to enter.

Change Runway on IFR Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**.
2) Rotate ❶ to destination airport and then push to enter.
3) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.
4) **PICK APPR:** Rotate ❶ to desired approach and then push to enter.
5) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to desired transition and then push to enter.
6) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to desired runway and then push to enter.
7) Push ❶ to `CONFIRM REPLACE APPROACH`

(This deletes the previous IFR approach and creates a new IFR approach to the selected runway.)

Create NRST ILS Approach on PFD or MFD

1) Press **NRST (R3)**.

2) Rotate ❶ to **ILS..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to desired airport (beginning with “ILS”) and then push to enter.

4) ILS frequency is sent to NAV1 and NAV2 standby positions. Further pilot action is necessary to swap frequencies to respective active positions. (when configured in EFIS limits.)

5) Push ❶ to CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS. (Previous active flight plan is deleted.)

6) A direct flight plan to the airport associated with the ILS is created.

7) If the heading bug was turned off, it is activated to current heading to act as a starting point for receiving vectors (with or without autopilot enabled.)

8) A vectors-to-final ILS approach to the ILS is activated.

9) Automatic HSI nav source switching to the VLOC1 pilot side and VLOC2 co-pilot side occurs (if applicable.)

10) With crossfill normal, both pilot side and co-pilot side VLOC1 and VLOC2 (regardless of active nav source selection), OBS settings are set to the associated localizer course. (With crossfill inhibited [if applicable] this action only occurs on side where NRST ILS menu was activated.)

    (Any previous waypoints from the canceled active flight plan need to be added to the new NRST ILS active flight plan.)

XFILL SYNC Operation

XFILL Sync Operation on PFD

(Crossfill is the normal default mode of operation.)

1) During crossfill inhibited operation, XFILL INHBT appears on the PFD in the lower left corner.

2) After the XFILL switch is pressed again, the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized; XFILL ARM appears in lower left corner of both PFDs.

3) When the pilot and co-pilot sides are not synchronized, press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds press **XFILL SYNC (L1)** to synchronize the pilot and co-pilot active flight plan parameters from the side where the button press occurred.

Section 7 IFR Procedures

7.1. EFIS Navigation Operational Capabilities

The installed Genesys Aerosystems EFIS, receives GPS/SBAS satellite data from the Genesys Aerosystems TSO-C145c GPS Beta 3 sensor, meets TSO-C146c Class 3, and complies with AC 20-138D for navigation using GPS and GPS/SBAS (within the coverage of a satellite-based augmentation system complying with ICAO Annex 10) for enroute, terminal area, non-precision approach, and approach procedures with vertical guidance operations. Non-precision approach operations include those based on conventional navigation aids with “or GPS” in the title and those with “GPS” and “RNAV (GPS)” in the title to “LNAV” and “LP” minimums. Approach procedures with vertical guidance includes “RNAV (GPS) to “LNAV/VNAV” and “LPV” minimums.

Navigation information is referenced to the WGS-84 reference system, and should only be used where the Aeronautical Information Publication (including electronic data and aeronautical charts) conform to WGS-84 or equivalent.

The geodesic path computation accuracy for the cross-track path deviation error between the computed path used to determine cross-track deviations and the true WGS-84 geodesic, is less than 10% of the horizontal alert limit of the navigation mode applicable to the leg containing the path.

The Genesys Aerosystems EFIS, as installed, complies with the requirements for GPS oceanic/remote navigation, when used in conjunction with the RAIM prediction program. This does not constitute an operational approval. The VNAV system meets the accuracy requirements of VFR/IFR enroute, terminal, and approach VNAV operation within the conterminous U.S. and Alaska in accordance with the criteria in AC 20-138D (as revised).

The navigational equipment as installed complies with the requirements established for the navigation specifications in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
Oceanic and Remote Areas of Operation	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Dual Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D AC 91-70B This does not constitute operational approval.
RNAV-10 RNP-10	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Dual Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
B-RNAV/ RNAV-5 RNP-5	ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	Single Genesys GPS/SBAS systems, which meet TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities			
Navigation Specification	**Operational Requirements/ Authorizations**	**Required Equipment**	**Reference Guidance**
RNP-4 Oceanic and Remote Area Operations	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	GPS/SBAS system with flight management system capabilities and navigation data display on EFIS, when combined with other aircraft equipment.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
RNAV-2 RNAV-1 P-RNAV RNAV Routes (DPs, STARS, Q, and T Routes) RNP-2 RNP-1	GNSS is required for takeoff in P-RNAC airspace. GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities			
Navigation Specification	**Operational Requirements/ Authorizations**	**Required Equipment**	**Reference Guidance**
RNP-APCH [titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (GNSS)] – including RNP procedures to a minimum value of RNP-0.3 (LNAV minimums and LPV minimums) RNP AR-APCH procedures, and approach procedures with RF legs are NOT authorized.	All instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the navigation system database are authorized. GNSS is required to initiate RNAV (GPS) approach procedures. For RNAV (GPS) approach procedures, a missed approach is required if both GNSS sensors become unavailable. ANP does not exceed RNP (except during a missed approach procedure following loss of GNSS navigation. Maximum predicted RAIM outage is 5 minutes. For ILS, LOC, LOC-BC, LDA, and SDF approach procedures, the active navigation source must be LOC or BC (green needles) prior to crossing the final approach fix.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities			
Navigation Specification	**Operational Requirements/ Authorizations**	**Required Equipment**	**Reference Guidance**
RNP AR-APCH procedures, and approach procedures with RF legs	All instrument approach procedures that are retrieved from the navigation system database are authorized. GNSS is required to initiate RNAV (GPS) approach procedures. For RNAV (GPS) approach procedures, a missed approach is required if both GNSS sensors become unavailable. ANP does not exceed RNP (except during a missed approach procedure following loss of GNSS navigation. Maximum predicted RAIM outage is 5 minutes.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c when GPS sensor data is from a TSO-C145c receiver.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

Table 7-1: Navigational Operational Capabilities

Navigation Specification	Operational Requirements/ Authorizations	Required Equipment	Reference Guidance
Advanced RNP functions as follows: - RF Legs - Parallel Offsets - Scalable RNP - Fixed Radius Transitions (FRT) The following advanced RNP functions are not included: - RNAV Holding - Time of Arrival Control (TOAC)	GNSS FDE availability must be verified prior to flight. Maximum predicted FDE unavailability is 25 minutes. ANP does not exceed RNP. No time limit using GNSS as the primary navigation sensor.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c when GPS sensor data is from a TSO-C145c receiver.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.
Enroute, Terminal and Approach Vertical Navigation (VNAV)	Use of vertical glide path (GP) guidance to a published DA is approved.	At least one Genesys GPS/SBAS, which meets TSO-C146c, with GPS sensor data from the Genesys TSO-C145c receivers.	AC 20-138D This does not constitute operational approval.

7.2. Active Flight Plan

Before using the Genesys EFIS GPS navigation system to fly any part of an instrument procedure instrument procedure in VMC or IMC conditions, always compare each leg of the applicable and current published charted procedure to the flight plan displayed on the map. This EFIS and FMS may not support some specific navigation leg types. All users must understand how each leg is depicted and navigated prior to conducting the procedure.

After updating the navigation database and planning to fly an instrument procedure, practice in the **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** to view how each leg is depicted.

If navigation planning includes manual sequencing of any leg in a procedure, verify what specific navigation guidance the EFIS provides. When any procedure includes ARINC-424 legs defined by headings, or that terminate at a specific altitude, the user must understand how the EFIS behaves and how system behavior can affect coupled autopilot operations.

Upon activation of the active flight plan menu, the application checks for an active waypoint. If there is no active waypoint, NO ACTIVE WPT is issued. Otherwise, a nav log of waypoints in the active flight plan is presented with the following:

1) Waypoint identifier and characterization (default, overfly [**OF**], or no radius [**0R**])

2) Symbol designating waypoint type and what type of procedure (if any) the waypoint is associated

3) VNAV altitudes and offsets associated with each waypoint

4) Information related to flight plan path between each waypoint

In the case of an approach with a final approach segment data block, the VNAV offset readout associated with the missed approach point is "GPI" to designate distance to the glide path intercept point (GPIP). When courses are presented as part of the path information, they are displayed referenced to magnetic north with the degree (°) symbol.

VNAV altitudes and offsets from the navigation database or have been manually entered are white, and those computed automatically are gray. The active waypoint is designated by an asterisk and is magenta but turns amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution.

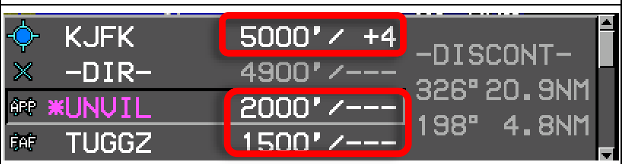
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table 7-2: VNAV Altitudes and Offsets</th></tr>
<tr><th>Input Source</th><th>Color</th></tr>
<tr><td>Navigation database or manually entered</td><td>
</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-2: VNAV Altitudes and Offsets

Input Source	Color
Computed automatically	

A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure. After an approach procedure is activated, the associated airport is no longer part of the active flight plan for guidance purposes. However, the associated airport is still shown in the nav log for it to be highlighted for information or to activate other procedures to the airport. Since only one approach may be active at any given time, only one waypoint may be suppressed by adding an Instrument approach procedure at any given time.

NOTE:

Adding a STAR procedure with no instrument approach nor SID does not suppress the airport waypoint. Adding a STAR to a different airport in the active flight plan does not change the original suppressed waypoint airport.

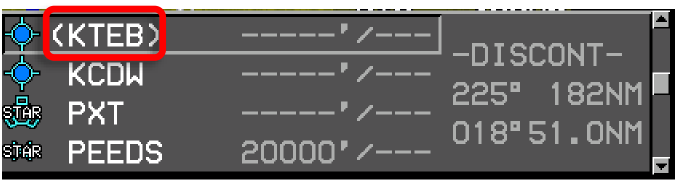


Figure 7-1: Suppressed Waypoint

It is possible to add a departure procedure to another airport within an active flight plan and have two suppressed waypoints within the same active flight plan.

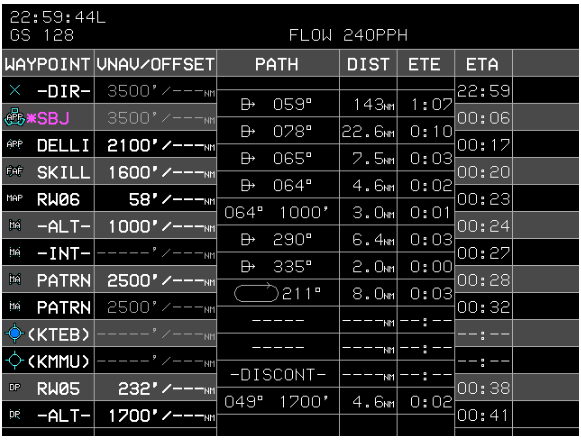


Figure 7-2: Active Flight Plan with Two Suppressed Waypoints

A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a "Course to a Fix" leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

To add a waypoint to the end of the active flight plan, rotate through each waypoint of the flight plan to one position past the end. If not, the application makes the selected waypoint active. Otherwise, a list is presented.

Upon selection of a waypoint from the selection list, the EFIS checks whether the selected waypoint meets the criteria for waypoint activation, manual VNAV parameter entry, custom holding pattern entry, SAR pattern entry, SAR pattern segment selection, manual overfly characterization, VFR approach entry, IFR approach entry, STAR entry, or DP entry. If it does, a list is presented as follows:

1) **WAYPOINT**: If valid, make the selected waypoint the active waypoint. Option valid for any waypoint except:

   a) Suppressed waypoint;

   b) Skipped waypoint;

   c) A waypoint following a discontinuity; or

   d) The first waypoint. (If valid, this option allows the user to make the selected waypoint the active waypoint.)

2) **VNAV**: If valid, enter a manual VNAV altitude and offset for the selected waypoint. This menu level allows for synchronizing the VNAV altitude to current altitude and for removing the manual VNAV altitude and offset entries. These altitudes are settable in increments of 100 feet and distances of 1 NM. Option valid for any waypoint except:

   a) Suppressed waypoint
   b) Skipped waypoint;
   c) A manual termination waypoint;
   d) A waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach;
   e) A SAR pattern exit waypoint:
   f) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or
   g) One of the following types of termination legs:
      i) Dynamic;
      ii) Altitude;
      iii) DME;
      iv) Radial; or
      v) Intercept

3) **HOLD**: If valid, this option allows the user to enter a manual holding pattern at the selected waypoint. Option valid for any waypoint except:

   a) Suppressed waypoint;
   b) Skipped waypoint;
   c) A manual termination waypoint;
   d) A waypoint that is part of a missed approach procedure, including the missed approach waypoint;
   e) A waypoint that is part of a VFR approach;
   f) A holding pattern waypoint;
   g) A SAR pattern exit waypoint;
   h) A waypoint that begins with a departure procedure;
   i) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or
   j) One of the following dynamic termination waypoints:
      i) Altitude;
      ii) DME;
      iii) Radial; or
      iv) Intercept

4) **SAR PTRN**: If valid, create and enter a SAR pattern as defined in the SAR appendix. If SAR patterns are enabled in the EFIS limits this option is valid for any waypoint except:

   a) Suppressed waypoint;
   b) Skipped waypoint;
   c) A manual termination waypoint;

d) A waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach;

e) A holding waypoint;

f) A SAR pattern exit waypoint;

g) A waypoint that begins a departure procedure;

h) A parallel offset entry or exit waypoint; or

i) One of the following dynamic termination waypoints:

   i) Altitude;

   ii) DME;

   iii) Radial; or

   iv) Intercept

If valid, this option allows the user to enter a SAR pattern at the selected waypoint using the SAR pattern types and parameters defined above.

5) **SAR SGMNT**: Select which segment within the SAR pattern should be active for navigation guidance. If the selected waypoint is the active waypoint and is one of the following types of SAR patterns:

   a) Expanding square;

   b) Rising ladder; or

   c) Sector search

6) **OFLY/AUTO**: If the selected waypoint is neither suppressed, skipped, nor a manual termination or a parallel offset entry or exit waypoint. This option allows the user to change the waypoint's overfly characterization. The choices are:

   a) **AUTO**: Reset automatic overfly characterization by FMS.

   b) **OVERFLY**: Manually force the overfly characterization to be an overfly adjust-exit waypoint and force the inbound course to go directly to the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

   c) **NO RADIUS**: Manually force the turn radius at the waypoint to be zero. This forces the inbound course and outbound course to go directly to and from the waypoint regardless of the amount of course change required.

NOTE:

It is not possible to track a “NO RADIUS” path perfectly, but the FMS path guidance quickly recaptures the outbound course after resuming automatic waypoint sequencing. Designating a waypoint as a “NO RADIUS” waypoint affects the turn radius used to calculate procedure turn and holding pattern leg paths.

7) **VFR APP**: This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint (note: this forces the user to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating a VFR approach). Otherwise, if the selected waypoint is a user waypoint with an approach bearing, then a VFR approach to the user waypoint based upon the approach bearing is created and the user waypoint becomes suppressed. If the selected waypoint is a VFR airport or an IFR airport with surveyed runways, then the user is presented with a selection list of runways. After selecting a runway, a VFR approach to the runway is created and the airport waypoint becomes suppressed. Activating a VFR approach] automatically deletes (after user confirmation) any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If a heading bug is not already active, activating a VFR approach automatically activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading. The heading bug can then be used to define the course intercept angle

8) **IFR APP**: This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a user to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). Otherwise, If selected waypoint is an airport with an IFR approach, the user is presented with a list of available approaches (including, if applicable, the five-digit channel number, followed by a list of available transitions, if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate IFR approach is created, and the airport waypoint becomes suppressed.

   Activating an IFR approach deletes any pre-existing IFR or VFR approaches. If there is a pre-existing STAR to the airport, the IFR approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR waypoints. If a heading bug is not active and the activated transition is “Vectors to Final,” activating an IFR approach activates the heading bug on current aircraft heading for purposes of defining the course intercept angle.

9) **STAR**: This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a user to deactivate

a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). If selected waypoint is an airport with a STAR, the user is presented with a list of available STARs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways at the airport). After selection, the appropriate STAR is created. Activating a STAR automatically deletes any pre-existing STAR. If there is a pre-existing approach (IFR or VFR) to the airport, STAR waypoints are inserted prior to the approach waypoints.

10) **DP**: This option is invalid if the selected waypoint is a holding pattern waypoint or SAR pattern exit waypoint. (This forces a user to deactivate a manual holding pattern or SAR pattern prior to activating an IFR approach). If selected waypoint is an airport with a DP, the user is presented with a list of DPs, followed by a list of available transitions (if there are more than one) and a list of runways (if there are surveyed runways and more than one runway authorized for the DP). After selection, the appropriate DP is created, and upon activation, deletes any pre-existing DPs.

7.3. Operations outside of a GPS/SBAS Coverage Area

When outside of a GPS/SBAS service provider's coverage area, the GPS receivers can revert to using FDE for integrity. The GPS receiver uses GPS/SBAS integrity or FDE; whichever provides the best protection level. GPS/SBAS equipment does not have any limitations in oceanic and remote areas provided the operator obtains an FDE prediction program.

7.4. IFR Procedures

Users operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to the planned route or flight. The EFIS employs two types of departure procedures, obstacle departure procedures (ODPs), which are printed either textually or graphically, and standard instrument departure procedures (SIDs), which are always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures have RNAV printed in the title.

ODPs are not found in the navigation database, and therefore the climb angle found in the PFD BUGS menu should be set to comply with the steeper than normal climb gradient during the departure until established on the enroute structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance, unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

Approach minima are never coded in NavData®. On some approaches, the altitude coded at the MAP for a non-precision approach coincides with an MDA (normally where the final approach course does not align with the runway), but more often the coded altitude is some height above the threshold.

7.5. Overview of Procedures and Instrument Approaches

This EFIS provides 3D GPS precision and non-precision instrument approach guidance using a system integral TSO C146c BETA 3 GPS receiver with GPS and augmented GPS with SBAS (Satellite Based Augmentation System) commonly referred to as WAAS (Wide Area Augmentation System).

Use of this GPS receiver provides a level of certified service supporting RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LPV lines of minima within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have lower availability of vertical guidance.

Approach with vertical guidance (APV) procedures are defined in ICAO Annex 6 and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV procedures presently being flown with barometric vertical navigation (BARO-VNAV). These approaches provide vertical guidance but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. With the WAAS BETA 3 GPS receiver and updatable navigation database in this system, these approaches may be flown using an electronic glide path, which eliminates errors introduced by using barometric altimetry.

In addition to LNAV/VNAV procedures, APV takes advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by GBS/SBAS. This SBAS (TEROS/ICAO) generated angular guidance allows use of the same TERPS approach criteria for ILS approaches. The resulting approach procedure minima, localizer performance with vertical guidance (LPV), have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown (EASA OPS LPV 250 ft.) with visibility minimums as low as ½ mile (providing the terrain and airport infrastructure and regulations support the lowest minima criteria).

Another non-precision GPS/SBAS approach, certified as an localizer performance (LP) approach where terrain or obstructions prohibit the certification of the LPV vertically guided approach, takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors (provided by GPS/SBAS) to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface. In the LP approach, vertical guidance is for information only and is based on SBAS or BARO information.

The EFIS guides the user through every step of the approach procedure with Highway in the Sky (HITS) 3D symbology. The system defines a desired flight path based upon the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to the desired path in order to determine lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI and VDI. The EFIS auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next in accordance with the flight plan along the flight path with the following exceptions:

1) User has selected a manual GPS/SBAS OBS (SUSPEND shown).

2) Active waypoint is the missed approach waypoint, and missed approach procedure has not been armed (**ARM**) nor initiated (**MISS**) (SUSPEND shown).

3) Aircraft is in a published or manually created holding pattern, and user has not chosen to continue (**CONT**) out of the holding pattern (SUSPEND shown).

4) Active waypoint is the last waypoint of the active flight plan (no flag shown).

5) Leg following active waypoint is a manual termination leg, and the user has not chosen to resume (**RESUME**) to the waypoint following the manual termination (SUSPEND shown).

6) The aircraft is in a repeating SAR pattern (race track, sector search, or orbit) and the user has not chosen to continue out of the SAR pattern (SUSPEND shown).

Where automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 1, 2, or 4 above, the EFIS automatically switches from TO operation to FROM operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs upon the following conditions:

1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for the fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (transition from “TO” to “From” operation);

2) Aircraft location is within one turn diameter (based upon current true Airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the transition point; and

3) Aircraft heading is within 90° of the current course (generally pointed in the correct direction).

7.5.1. Highway in the Sky (Skyway)

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course 3D manner with a series of skyway boxes, which overlay the flight plan route at a desired altitude and provide lateral and vertical guidance. Skyway boxes conform to the VNAV requirements of GPS/SBAS receiver requirements (TSO-C-146c). The top and bottom of the boxes are parallel to the horizon on straight leg segments and dynamically tilt with respect to the horizon on turning leg segments based on leg-segment turn-radius and ground speed.

Table 7-3: Highway in the Sky Configuration

Type HITS Lines	**Fully Integrated Autopilot**	**Genesys/S-TEC DFCS** (HDG Mode and/or NAV/APR mode)	**Un-Integrated Autopilot or No Autopilot**
Dashed	Not coupled to skyway		
Solid	Coupled to Skyway	Coupled to skyway. AP is either in HDG mode with LNAV heading/roll-steering sub-mode engaged or in NAV/APR mode with FMS1, or FMS2 as the selected navigation source.	Always Solid

When the active route is in view, up to five boxes are shown with the dimensions being a constant 400 feet wide (±200 feet from the desired lateral path) by 320 feet tall (±160 feet from the desired vertical path) spaced horizontally 2000 feet.

Skyway boxes are drawn using the hidden surface removal techniques of the terrain and obstruction rendering, so a skyway box behind terrain appears to be so. Skyway boxes disappear in basic mode and unusual attitude mode. In reversionary mode 1 (GPS failure), skyway boxes disappear after one minute to indicate degraded navigation performance.

Skyway box altitude is controlled by VNAV altitude, aircraft altitude, climb performance, and climb/descent angle setting (in PFD BUGs menu outside of the FAF when an instrument approach is loaded). If no VNAV altitude is set, the skyway boxes describe the desired lateral flight path at the aircraft's current altitude.

With a VNAV altitude set, the boxes provide both lateral and vertical guidance. Climb and descent angle settings are controlled individually with a resolution of 0.1°.

When no VNAV altitudes associated with a waypoint exist and a target altitude is set, HITS box altitudes emanate from the current aircraft altitude and indicate a climb or descent, as appropriate, until reaching the target altitude. When a climb is shown, the HITS boxes are drawn at the higher of actual climb angle or the dynamic climb angle setting. When a descent is shown, the HITS boxes are drawn at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting in the PFD bugs menu.

Figure 7-3: Highway in the Sky Five Boxes

> **NOTE:**
>
> The purpose of this symbology is to emulate an altitude pre-selector and give guidance to climb or descend real-time as if being issued an assigned altitude from ATC.

When at least one VNAV altitude associated with a waypoint exists, HITS boxes are guided by VNAV waypoints determined by VNAV altitude and VNAV offsets from flight plan waypoints. The two sources for VNAV altitudes come from the navigation database or are manually input through the ACTV menu. VNAV altitudes are automatically computed by the system using “look-ahead” rules if not coming from the navigation database or manually input.

When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint above the previous VNAV altitude constraint (climb commanded), then an automatic VNAV altitude is continuously calculated for the waypoint based upon an immediate climb to the altitude constraint at the dynamic climb angle.

When “look-ahead” finds a further VNAV altitude constraint below the previous VNAV altitude constraint (descent commanded), then an automatic VNAV altitude is calculated for the waypoint based upon a descent to reach the VNAV altitude constraint at the associated waypoint using the descent angle setting. If no further VNAV altitude constraints are found, then the automatic VNAV altitude is set to the last valid altitude constraint.

When a VNAV climb is desired, the HITS boxes are drawn at a vertical position that is higher of the following:

1) The dynamic climb angle emanating from the aircraft’s present position (aircraft-referenced;

2) The dynamic climb angle emanating from the next waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced forward); OR

3) The climb angle setting emanating from the previous waypoint VNAV altitude (geo-referenced backward).

NOTE:

The geo-referenced backward calculation is only considered when the current leg is part of a procedure and is designed to provide user awareness if a specified climb angle gradient is not being met.

As the HITS boxes intercept the VNAV altitude, further boxes are drawn with a zero angle to show a level off followed by a level flight segment. Since five HITS boxes are shown, the level-off depiction is an anticipatory cue for the user. VNAV climb guidance is shown in Figure 7-4, Figure 7-5, and Figure 7-6.

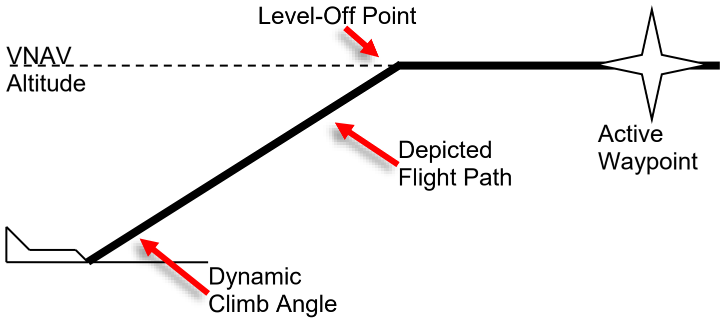


Figure 7-4: Highway in the Sky (Aircraft Referenced)

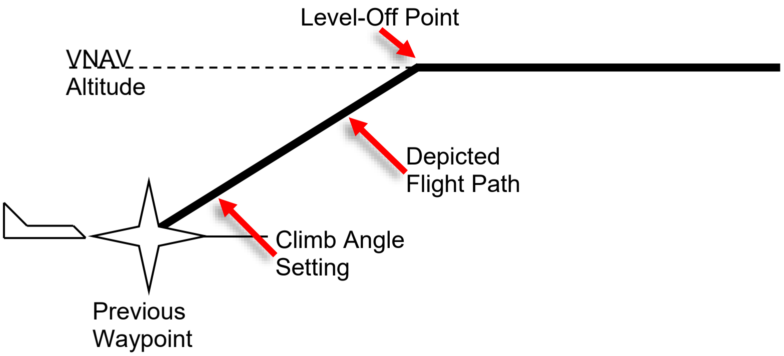


Figure 7-5: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Backward)

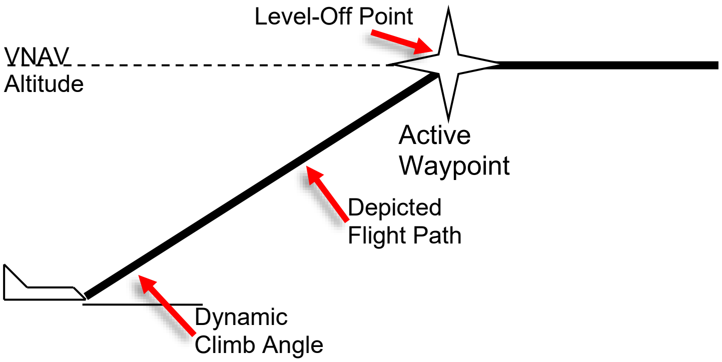


Figure 7-6: Highway in the Sky (Geo-Referenced Forward)

When a VNAV descent is desired, boxes are drawn with a zero angle until reaching a descent point. Further boxes are drawn downward at an angle corresponding to the descent angle setting. The descent point is defined by the intercept of a line emanating upward from the subsequent VNAV waypoint at the descent angle setting and a line representing level flight at the previous VNAV altitude. On the final approach segment of an IFR approach, descent angle and VNAV waypoint are defined in Table 7-4.

Table 7-4: Final Segment of IFR Approach, Descent Angle and VNAV Waypoint

Condition	VNAV Waypoint	Descent Angle
IFR approach with valid final approach segment data block	GPIP as defined in final approach segment data block	Descent angle as defined in final approach segment data block
No or invalid final approach segment data block No intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP	Missed approach point location	Straight line from FAF to MAP location and altitudes.
No or invalid final approach segment data block Intermediate waypoints exist between FAF and MAP	Missed approach point location	Steepest descent angle based upon straight lines from FAF and sub-sequent inter-mediate waypoints to MAP location and altitudes

On the final approach segment of a VFR approach procedure, the higher of the descent angle setting or 3° is used.

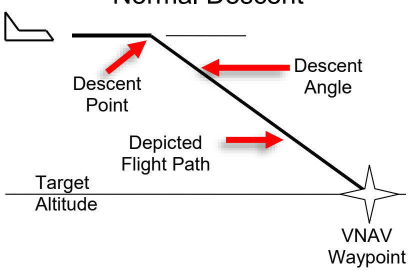
Figure 7-7: Highway in the Sky Final Approach Segments

Because five boxes are shown, the descent point depiction is an anticipatory cue. Figure 7-7 depicts descent guidance and creates an easily understood, yet safe, VNAV paradigm to meet the VNAV requirements current guidance.

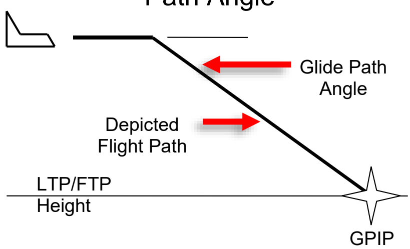
The VNAV paradigm scheme was used to create an easily understood, yet safe, method to meet certification requirements. Simplicity is the primary objective and this paradigm is biased towards keeping the aircraft at the highest altitude possible for the longest time. The climb paradigm automatically compensates for an aircraft's ability to climb more steeply than specified and also warns of being below a desired climb gradient when the aircraft is unable to meet the specified climb angle. Furthermore, this descent paradigm encourages flying stabilized, and continuous descent profiles.

Table 7-5: VNAV Paradigm

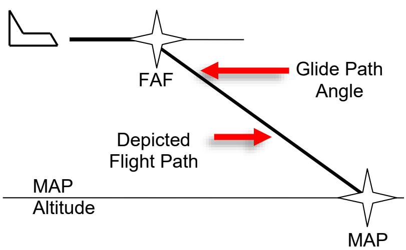
Normal Descent



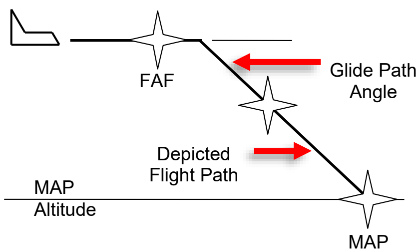
Final Approach Segment Descent with FAS DB and Non-Zero Glide Path Angle



Final Approach Segment Descent without FAS Data Block Glide Path Angle or Intermediate Waypoints



Final Approach Segment Descent without FAS Data Block Glide Path Angle and with Intermediate Waypoint



7.5.2. Waypoint Sequencing

When automatic waypoint sequencing is suspended due to reasons 4 or 5 in § 7.5, the EFIS switches from "TO" to "FROM" operation when appropriate. If not suspended, automatic waypoint sequencing occurs in following conditions:

1) Bearing to the transition point (turn bisector for fly-by waypoint, active waypoint for fly-over waypoint) is more than 90° from the current course (i.e., transition from “TO” to “FROM” operation);

2) Aircraft location is within two turn diameters (based upon current true airspeed and 15° angle of bank) of the active waypoint location; and

3) Aircraft is within 90° of the current course (i.e., generally pointed in the correct direction).

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left turning, and right turning leg segments designed to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBAS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. Each leg between waypoints is composed of up to nine segments. Otherwise radii for turning segments (other than DME arc or radius to a fix segments) are calculated with the parameter speed determined as follows:

1) If the waypoint is part of a DP and within 30NM of the departure runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

2) If the waypoint is part of a STAR and within 30NM of the arrival runway, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

3) If the waypoint is part of an IFR or VFR approach procedure, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

4) If the waypoint is part of a holding pattern, speed is the preprogrammed procedure speed.

5) Within a SAR pattern, speed is the lower of holding speed or procedure speed.

6) Where a Fixed-Radius Transition (FRT) is defined by the navigation database for a waypoint, that turn radius is used for the turning segment. FRT is used in enroute flight in order to save the number of waypoints and to provide a smoother transition. The RF leg can only be used in a SID or in a STAR. It is the flight plan leg stored in the navigation database, which is defined by constant radius turns around a given fix.

7) Otherwise, speed is the current true airspeed or procedure speed, whichever is higher.

In all cases, if NavData® derived speed limit is associated with the waypoint, speed is the lower of the NavData® derived speed limit or the speed determined above.

7.5.3. Fly-Over Waypoints

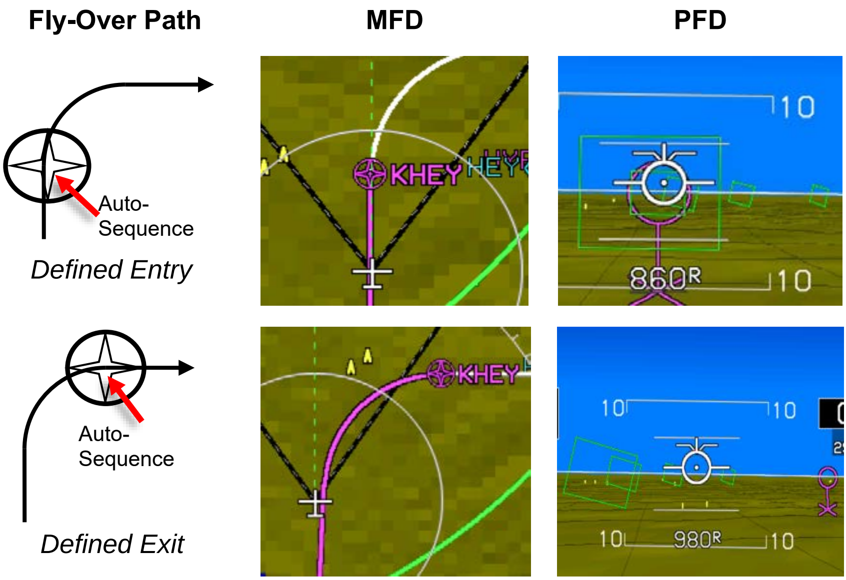


Figure 7-8: Fly-Over Waypoints

To create the desired flight path, each waypoint is designated as a fly-by or a fly-over waypoint. Waypoints are further subdivided into waypoints with a defined entry heading and waypoints with a defined exit heading. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-by waypoints occurs at the bisector of the turn. Waypoint auto-sequencing for fly-over waypoints occurs over the waypoint.

These waypoints are type fly-over with defined entry heading:

1) Waypoint leading into discontinuity;

2) Waypoints which are marked as overfly in the navigation database or menu system;

3) Exit from holding pattern;

4) Exit from a SAR pattern;

5) Exit from procedure turn;

6) Entry into holding pattern;

7) Missed approach point;

8) Phantom waypoint (created by inserting a waypoint into the active flight plan or performing Direct-To function within the active flight plan – avoids S-turns);

9) Last waypoint;

10) Reference (takeoff runway end) waypoint of a DP; and

11) Altitude, DME, or radial termination legs (ARINC-424 path types CA, FA, VA, CR, VR, CD, FD, and VD; see Table 7-6).

Table 7-6: RNAV Path Terminator Leg Type

Path	Designator		Terminator
Constant DME arc	A	A	Altitude
Course to	C	C	Distance
Direct Track	D	D	DME Distance
Course from a Fix to	F	F	Fix
Holding Pattern	H	I	Next Leg
Initial	I	M	Manual Termination
Constant Radius	R	R	Radial Termination
Track Between	T		
Heading To	V		
Examples: **CF**= Course to Fix, and **FM**= Course from a Fix to a Manual Termination, etc.			

7.5.4. Fly-By Waypoints

The following waypoints are fly-over with a defined exit heading:

1) Waypoint exiting a discontinuity with the exception of phantom waypoints or DP reference waypoints;

2) Entry into procedure turn; and

3) First waypoint with the exception of phantom or DP reference points.

4) Entry into SAR pattern.

NOTE:

Entry adjustments should be expected anytime a turn exceeds 120º. Turns greater than 120º should not be used in conjunction with RNP routes. (RNP standards specifically exclude such turns from RNP requirements.)

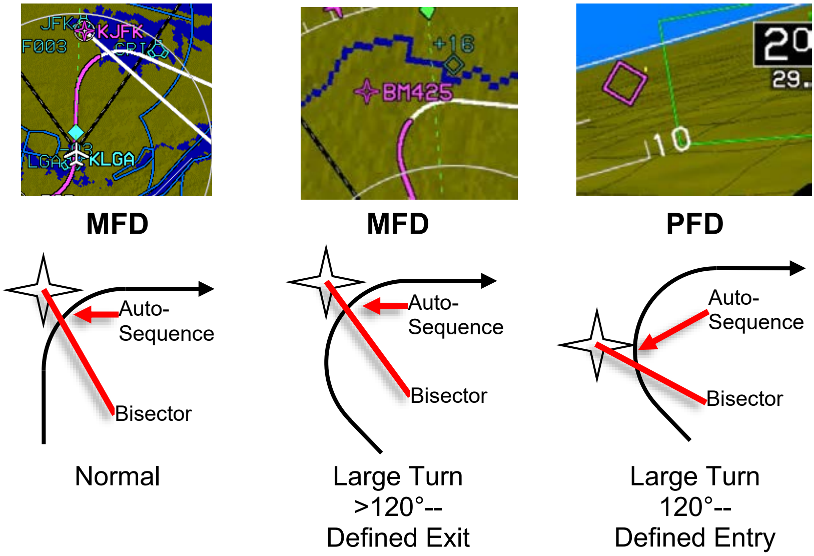


Figure 7-9: Fly-By Waypoints

Leg segments for paths are constructed by the EFIS as follows.

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint Entry	Waypoint Exit	# of Segments and Description
Straight Leg, DME Arc or Radius to a Fix	Fly-By	Fly-By	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.
	Fly-By	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.
	Fly-By	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	2nd half of fly-by turn at entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-By	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint		# of Segments and Description
	Entry	Exit	
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit turn. Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry waypoint to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-By	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. 1st half of fly-by turn at exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry to exit turns. Turn to exit heading prior to exit waypoint.
	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Turn from entry heading after entry waypoint. WGS-84 geodesic or arc path from entry turn to exit waypoint.
Procedure Turn	Fly-Over Defined Exit Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	WGS-84 geodesic path from entry waypoint on outbound heading for 30 seconds. Turn to procedure turn heading (45°). Outbound on procedure turn heading for 72 seconds. Turn to inbound heading (135°). WGS-84 geodesic path to exit waypoint. Entry waypoint and exit waypoint are same point.

Table 7-7: Leg Segments for Paths Constructed by EFIS

Path Type	Waypoint		# of Segments and Description
	Entry	Exit	
Holding Pattern	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Fly-Over Defined Entry Heading	Turn to proper entry procedure heading. This heading varies. For a parallel entry, it is 180° from the holding course. For direct and teardrop entries, it is the heading required to get to entry of inbound turn. WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of inbound turn. Inbound turn. Degree of turn varies depending upon entry procedure and heading. WGS-84 geodesic path to holding fix for direct and teardrop entries. WGS-84 geodesic path to entry of turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. Turn to holding pattern heading for parallel entries. This leg is not used for direct and teardrop entries. Turn to holding pattern outbound leg (180°). Holding pattern outbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database). Turn to holding pattern inbound leg (180°). Holding pattern inbound leg (length based upon either time or distance as specified by navigation database).

7.5.5. Direct-To

If the EFIS generates a WGS-84 geodesic path to a designated TO fix, the aircraft captures this path without "S-turning" or undue delay. Where the selected TO fix is in the active flight plan, the required transition is created as follows:

1) A phantom waypoint is created at the current aircraft location.

2) Leg prior to the phantom waypoint is designated a discontinuity.

3) Phantom waypoint is designated a fly-over defined entry heading waypoint where entry heading is current aircraft track.

7.5.5.1. Direct-To Unnamed Waypoints Inside Procedures

The following identifiers are implemented for unnamed waypoints inside a published procedure and are found on the ND or inside the active flight plan.

1) **-ALT-** altitude terminations
2) **-DIR-** waypoints that begin a Direct-To leg
3) **-DME-** distance or DME terminations
4) **-INT-** intercept terminations
5) **-RAD-** radial terminations
6) **-MAN-** manual terminations

Active Flight Plan

MFD Navigation Display

PFD Waypoint Information

Figure 7-10: Unnamed Waypoints

7.6. Discontinuities

When the EFIS is unable to construct a smooth flight path, as described above due to active flight plan waypoint spacing (i.e., spacing too close for turn radius), a discontinuity is placed between the waypoints. When a discontinuity exists, no path nor skyway is drawn between the waypoints. The user cannot activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity, as it is not possible to provide path guidance to this waypoint. Attempts to activate the waypoint exiting the discontinuity activates the next waypoint or, if there is no next waypoint (i.e., end of active flight plan), activation of the waypoint leading into the discontinuity.

7.6.1. Manual Termination Legs

Manual termination legs (ARINC 424 path types FM and VM) are a special case and are handled as follows:

1) The manual termination leg is rendered as a path on the database course/heading for 10NM beyond either:

a) the previous waypoint (manual leg not active); or

b) the nearest on-path point (manual leg active);

2) Rendering of the manual termination leg does not terminate with a waypoint symbol;

3) The manual termination leg is followed by a discontinuity;

4) Waypoint sequencing is suspended on the manual termination leg;

5) Once the CDI transitions to FROM operation, **RESUME (L2)** appears;

6) When ready to end manual navigation and resume a path to the waypoint following the manual termination leg, press **RESUME (L2)** to create and activate a Direct-To path to the waypoint.

> **NOTE:**
>
> If the manual termination leg is not followed by another waypoint (other than a suppressed waypoint), **RESUME (L2)** does not appear, because there is no waypoint-to-waypoint sequencing to resume.

7.7. Magnetic Course

The source of magnetic variation used for paths defined using magnetic course is in accordance with the following:

1) If the leg is part of a database terminal area procedure and the magnetic variation is specified by the State for that procedure, the magnetic variation to be used is the value specified.

2) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the active fix is a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is the published station declination for the VOR.

3) If the leg is not part of a procedure and the terminating fix is not a VOR, the magnetic variation to be used is defined by the system using an internal model.

The EFIS has the capability of computing magnetic variation at any location within the region where flight operations may be conducted using magnetic north reference. The assigned magnetic variation is calculated with the NIMA GEOMAG algorithm and World Magnetic Model appropriate to the five-year cycle.

7.7.1. AHRS Modes for Heading Source

AHRS Slaved—EFIS Magnetic North: Standard mode of operation. Everything displayed relative to magnetic north drift free.

AHRS Slaved—EFIS True North: Everything displayed relative to true north with drift free heading. The preferred way to operate in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. (See Section 9 Appendix for limitations on Earth's magnetic flux horizontal field.)

AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS Magnetic North: Use when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to magnetic north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a magnetic north value.

AHRS Free/"DG"—EFIS True North: Method of operation in high-latitude areas where navigation is accomplished relative to true north. Heading is not drift free and requires periodic correction. This mode may also be used when operating around significant magnetic disturbances in areas where navigation is done relative to true north. Ensure the compass rose is slewed to a true north value.

7.7.2. EFIS True North Mode

True north mode is selectable either through **OBS (L4)**, **TRUE NORTH (L1)** or an external switch if configured in EFIS limits. This mode is intended to address aircraft requirements during high or low latitude operations and should be used when the AHRS has been set to free-gyro mode. See Section 3 Display Symbology for symbology examples while in true north mode.

7.7.3. GPS Altitude

WGS-84 ellipsoid altitude received from the GPS/SBAS is converted to geodetic (MSL) altitude using the EGM 2008 geoidal database, which is revised on a twelve-year cycle.

7.7.4. Dead Reckoning

The EFIS has dead reckoning capability and is active whenever the GPS/SBAS sensor is not sending a valid position. The EFIS projects the last known GPS/SBAS position forward using TAS and heading, corrected for last known wind as it continues to navigate using this position and the active flight plan. The system provides the capability to determine bearing to an airport, based upon the dead reckoning position.

Figure 7-11: Dead Reckoning

7.7.5. Geodesic Path Computation Accuracy

The cross-track path deviation error between the computed path used to determine cross-track deviations and the true WGS-84 geodesic is less than 10% of the horizontal alert limit of the navigation mode applicable to the leg containing the path.

7.7.6. Parallel Offsets

The parallel offset is a route parallel to, but offset from, the original active route. The basis of the offset path is the original flight plan leg(s) and one or more offset reference points as computed by the EFIS. The computed offset reference points are located so they lie on the intersection of lines drawn parallel to the host route at the desired offset distance and the line that bisects the track change angle, except where the parallel offset ends. In this case, the offset reference point is located abeam of the original flight plan waypoint at the offset distance.

The parallel offset function does not propagate through route discontinuities, unreasonable path geometries as follows:

1) Legs that are parts of approach procedures (IFR and VFR); or

2) Legs with complex geometries or that begin or end with dynamically terminations. (ARINC 424 path types other than CF, DF, or TF or any leg where the starting waypoint is not a fixed position); or

3) Legs that begin at an aircraft starting position (reference waypoint in a DP or Start/Phantom waypoints created by the Direct-To function).

Parallel offset function does not propagate through the following:

1) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a route discontinuity; or

2) Any waypoint at the beginning or end of a prohibited leg type; or

3) A waypoint with an unreasonable path geometry (defined as a turn greater than 120°.

When the parallel offset function begins or ends within a flight plan due to the above constraints, parallel offset entry or exit waypoints are inserted into the flight plan. Discontinuities precede parallel offset entry waypoints and follow parallel offset exit waypoints. This allows the user to navigate to and from the parallel offset as required.

The EFIS provides guidance to parallel tracks at a selected offset distance. When executing a parallel offset, the navigation mode and all performance requirements of the original route in the active flight plan are applicable to the offset route. The EFIS provides for entry of offset distance in increments of 1 NM, left or right of course, and is capable of offsets of at least 20 NM. Offset mode is indicated with an advisory flag, e.g., PTK = L 20NM. When in offset mode, the EFIS provides reference parameters (e.g., cross-track deviation, distance-to-go, time-to-go) relative to the offset path and offset reference points.

Once a parallel offset is activated, the offset remains active for all flight plan route segments until removed automatically (transitioning through a parallel track exit waypoint), until the flight crew enters a "Direct-To" routing or activates a new flight plan route, or until (manual) cancellation.

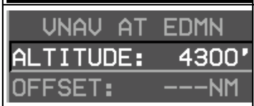
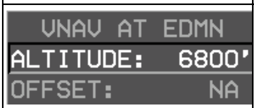
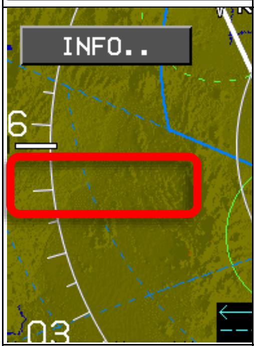
PTK+ **PTK-**

Figure 7-12: Parallel Offset Entry and Exit

NOTE:

If a parallel offset is entered in the active flight plan and then cancelled, that active flight plan is no longer eligible for configuring another parallel offset without deleting and reopening due to the creation of a discontinuity.

Table 7-8: Parallel Offsets Symbols and Description

Symbol	Description
	Parallel offset has been created and has a designated ending waypoint.
	Designated ending waypoint of parallel offset
	Parallel track advisory indicating offset track 3 NM to the right of host route.
	**PTK.. (L4)** appears when active route is eligible for a parallel offset.
	Approaching end of parallel offset waypoint
	VNAV altitude is possible with offset of distance before or after waypoint.
	VNAV altitude input is possible but not an offset of a distance before or after waypoint.
	The absence of **PTK (L4)** indicates a parallel offset is not allowed for reasons stated above.
	Indicates each waypoint is a part of the parallel offset.

7.8. Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

In the default GPS/SBAS mode, the EFIS has enroute, terminal, LNAV approach, LNAV/VNAV approach, LP approach, LPV approach, VFR approach, and departure navigation modes. Mode annunciation, alert limits (horizontal and vertical), and CDI FSD (horizontal and vertical) are determined by navigation mode.

Table 7-9: Default GPS/SBAS Navigation Modes

Navigation Mode	Annunciation
En route	None
Terminal	TERMINAL
LNAV Approach	LNAV APPR
LNAV/VNAV Approach	LNV/VNV APPR
LP Approach	LP APPR
LPV Approach	LPV APPR
VFR Approach	VFR APPR
Departure	TERMINAL

The system switches to default navigation modes based upon region of operation as in Table 7-10.

Table 7-10: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation

Default Navigation Mode	Definition of Region
Departure	Selected when active waypoint is first waypoint of a departure or missed approach procedure <u>and</u> active leg heading is aligned (±3°) with active runway heading. Also set when active waypoint is MAWP but a missed approach has been manually activated.
VTF Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP or LPV)	VTF IFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the active runway; <u>and</u> FAWP is active waypoint*; <u>and</u> bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> desired track to FAWP is within 90° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria).

Table 7-10: Default Navigation Modes Based Upon Region of Operation	
Default Navigation Mode	**Definition of Region**
Approach (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV)	IFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the active runway; <u>and</u> on the Final Approach Segment, the FAWP is the active waypoint or within 2NM of the FAWP; and if the FAWP is the active waypoint or within 2NM of the FAWP: The bearing to FAWP is within 45° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> the aircraft track to FAWP is within 90° of final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); <u>and</u> the aircraft track is within 90° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria)*; <u>and</u> either the segment leading into the FAWP is not a holding pattern or the user has elected to continue out of holding*.
VFR Approach	VFR approach has been selected; <u>and</u> within 30NM of the runway/user waypoint*; <u>and</u> active runway/user waypoint is the active waypoint; <u>and</u> the bearing to the active runway/user waypoint is within 45° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria); and the aircraft track is within 90° of the final approach segment track (treated as a mode entry criteria).
Terminal	Not in departure mode; <u>and</u> not in approach mode; <u>and</u> active waypoint is part of a departure <u>or</u> active waypoint and previous waypoint are parts of an arrival or approach <u>or</u> within 30NM of the departure airport, arrival airport, or runway.
En route	Not in departure, approach, nor terminal modes

NOTE:

During RNP 0.3 approach (manually or coded), scale remains in RNP 0.3.

7.9. GPS/SBAS CDI Scale

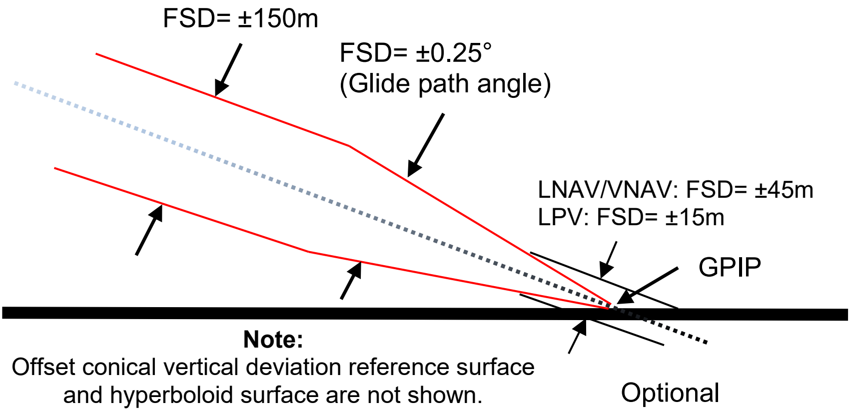
Table 7-11: Summary of Changes in Cross-Track FSD

	To En Route	**To Terminal**	**To Approach**
From En Route		Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode.	
From Terminal	Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering en route mode.		If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP.
From Approach		Change to ±1 NM.	
From Departure		If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at turn initiation point of first fix in departure procedure.	

NOTE:

For RNP 0.3 routes, time to alert (TTA) is the same as for the approach. For RNP 0.3, the EFIS uses a 10-second TTA when using GPS-only, and a 2-second TTA when using EGNOS.

7.9.1. Alerting Scheme for LNAV/VNAV Procedures



Ref: DO-229D Figure 2-16

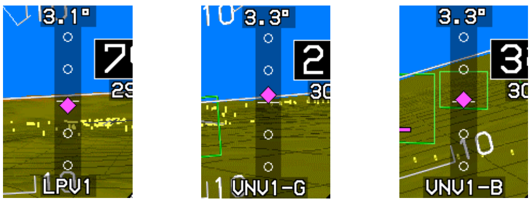


Figure 7-13: Vertical Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation

During normal operation with FMS source of navigation guidance, when an LNAV/VNAV procedure has been entered into the active flight plan and the EFIS is in LNAV/VNAV, the vertical and lateral integrity flags are out of view, and guidance displays show the deviations from track in vertical and lateral dimensions. The linear vertical scale limits of the VDI for LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches are shown in Figure 7-13.

7.9.2. Alerting Scheme for LPV/LP Procedures

During normal operation in with FMS source of navigation guidance, when an LPV or LP procedure has been entered into the active flight plan and the EFIS is in LPV or LP, the vertical and lateral integrity flags are out of view (only lateral integrity flag for LP). Additionally, the guidance displays show the deviations from track in vertical and lateral dimensions (only lateral for LP.)

> **NOTE:**
>
> The sensitivity change from ±0.3NM to ±1NM can take as long as 30 seconds to provide a smooth transition for autopilots.

The linear lateral scale limits of the CDI for LNAV approach procedure.

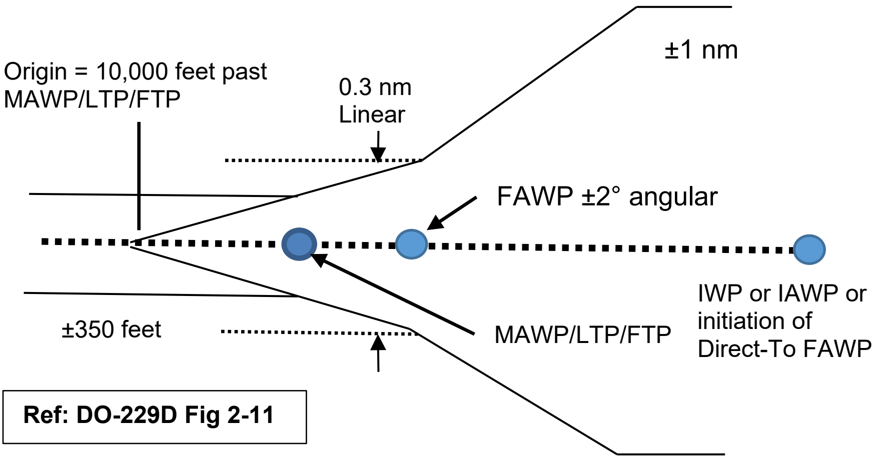


Figure 7-14: FSD Lateral Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation (not VTF Approach)

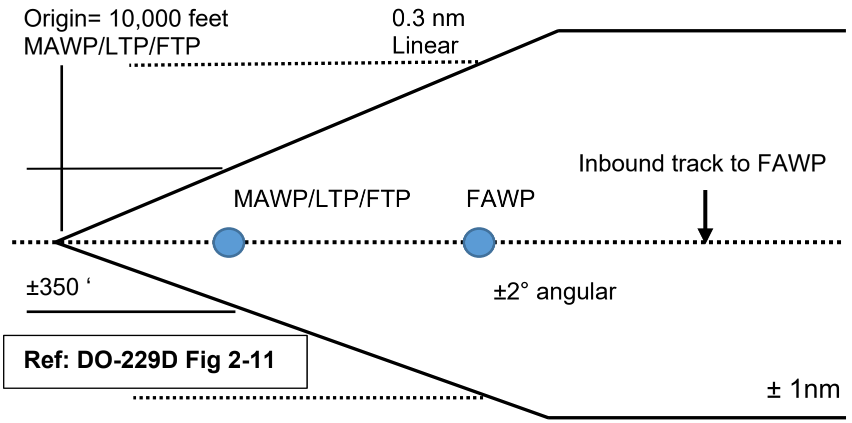


Figure 7-15: FSD Lateral Deviation Indicator Linear Deviation VTF Approach

NOTE:

Non-Numeric Cross-Track Deviation

The full-scale deflection for LNAV is either identical to LNAV/VNAV or one of the following:

Angular deviations

1) If a VTF approach has not been selected:

   a) Prior to 2NM from the FAWP, the FSD is ±1NM

   b) Between 2NM from the FAWP and the FAWP, the FSD is gradually changed to the FSD specified in c) below at the FAWP;

   c) At and beyond the FAWP, but before initiating a missed approach, the FDS is the minimum of; constant FSD of ±0.3 NM; or angular FSD defined by a ±2.0° wedge with origin located 10,000 feet past the MAWP. The FSD continues to decrease or reach a minimum of ±350 feet.

2) If a VTF has been selected:

   a) The FSD is the minimum of; constant FSD of ± 1NM; or angular FSD defined by a ±2.0° wedge with origin located 10,000 feet past the MAWP. The FSD continues to decrease or reach a minimum of ±350 feet.

7.9.3. Approach Type Selection

The EFIS selects the approach type (LNAV, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV) when entering approach mode with the following order of precedence and prerequisites:

1) **LPV**:

   a) ARINC-424 "Level of Service" indicates LPV minimums are published;

   b) Valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;

   c) Final approach segment data block exists and passes the built-in-test; and

   d) Horizontal and vertical alert limits from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.

2) **LP**: (Same precedence and prerequisites as **LPV** (except ARINC-424 "Level of Service" indicates LP minimums are published.)

3) **LNAV/VNAV**:

   a) ARINC-424 "Level of Service" indicates LNAV/VNAV minimums are published;

   b) If a final approach segment data block exists, it passes built-in-test; and

   c) Horizontal alert limit of 556m (.3NM) is predicted to be supported.

NOTE:

Because the EFIS inherently supports barometric VNAV, it is not a prerequisite for the vertical alert limit to be predicted or supported, nor is it a prerequisite for valid long-term, fast, and ionospheric SBAS corrections to be available and applied to at least four GPS satellites. Rather, the vertical alert limit (50m) and SBAS correction tests are used to determine whether to present guidance based upon GPS altitude or barometric altitude.

4) **LNAV**: Default approach type selected when none of the above selections are made. There are no prerequisites for selecting LNAV.

The EFIS continuously displays the approach type (mode indication) after selection. The EFIS does not degrade the approach type after selection unless the approach procedure is reselected or changed.

NOTE:

These are GPS/SBAS modes and still appear during a ground based approach such as an ILS approach.

Some instrument procedures include notes saying the following: “RNP 0.3 required” and are coded as an RNAV procedure. In these cases, select manual RNP to see the RNP and ANP values on the PFD.

7.9.4. Approach Path Definition (GPS Procedures)

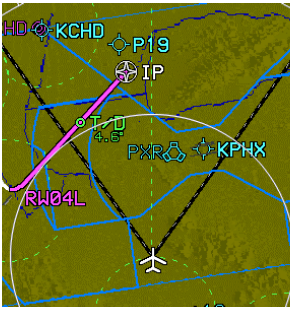
Normal IAP path definitions are as specified in the procedure contained in the navigation database and FAS data block. Deviations are provided with respect to the active leg of the approach procedure.

NOTE:

The threshold location is referred to as the LTP if it is co-located with the runway and FTP if it is displaced from the runway. The glide path angle is defined relative to the local tangent plane of the WGS-84 ellipsoid. This path definition is designed to mimic ILS glide slope characteristics, where the virtual glide path antenna location is offset from the runway by less than 500 feet.

7.9.5. VTF IFR Approach

In addition, the user may select a VTF IFR approach, indicating the user does not intend to fly the entire procedure. When a VTF IFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an initial point (IP) waypoint on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated a discontinuity. Until the FAWP is sequenced, the EFIS indicates a VTF IFR approach has been selected. VECTORS indicates guidance is not relative to a published approach path, and TERPS clearances are not assured.



The user may select a VFR approach to a runway or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. When a VFR approach is selected, the EFIS creates an “IP” waypoint approximately 12 NM on the extended final approach course to provide deviations relative to the extended final approach course. The IP is designated a fly-over defined exit heading waypoint, and the leg prior to the IP is designated a discontinuity.

Figure 7-16: VTF VFR Approach

As depicted in Figure 7-16, during the VTF VFR approach, the aircraft proceeds towards the IP. Since the IP is designated as a discontinuity, proceeding direct is not possible. When attempting to proceed direct to the IP, only the active leg between the IP and RW04L is activated.

7.10. Required Navigation Performance

The EFIS supports required navigation performance by means of:

1) Manually entered RNP values; or

2) RNP values automatically retrieved from the navigation database that are associated airway or procedures (DPs, STARs, or IAPs).

Table 7-12: RNP Order of Precedence

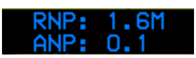
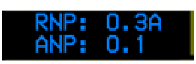
Navigation Mode	Annunciations	Conditions
Manual RNP (Manually set between 0.1NM and 15NM)		Navigation mode is RNP and manually entered RNP is used to determine CDI FSD, LON and LOI alerting. Manual RNP overrides all other modes.
Manual RNP on the Final Approach Segment		System conforms to the mode in the associated ARINC-424 “Level of Service” navigation database record. The level of service tracks the minima lines on the published approach plate.
Automatic RNP (Retrieved from Navigation Database)		When outside the approach region of operation, if a manually entered RNP

Table 7-12: RNP Order of Precedence		
Navigation Mode	**Annunciations**	**Conditions**
Automatic RNP on the Final Approach Segment		value does not exist but an automatic RNP value retrieved from the database does exist.

NOTE:

When outside the approach region of operation and neither a manually entered nor automatic RNP value exists, then the system operation defaults to GPS/SBS operations.

7.11. Missed Approach and Departure Path Definition

Once on the final approach segment, the user may initiate an immediate missed approach or arm the system to execute the missed approach at the MAWP. If armed before crossing the MAWP, the equipment arms the missed approach for automatic initiation at the MAWP. If a missed approach is not initiated prior to crossing the MAWP, the EFIS switches to FROM mode at the MAWP and continues on the same course.

If the user initiates the missed approach, the EFIS provides guidance relative to the procedure. If a missed approach is armed prior to crossing the MAWP, the desired path to and after the MAWP is defined by the procedure. If the first leg in the missed approach procedure is not a straight path aligned within 3° of the final approach course, the FSD changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) when the missed approach is initiated. Otherwise, the FSD changes to ±0.3 NM when the missed approach is initiated (departure mode) and changes to terminal mode FSD (±1 NM) at the turn initiation point of the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure.

NOTE:

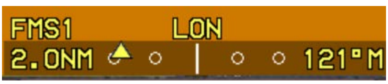
In the event a published DP is loaded, the same CDI behavior can be expected as the Missed Approach Procedure.

Figure 7-17: Missed Approach and Departure Path

7.11.1. Loss of Navigation Monitoring

The EFIS continuously monitors for loss of navigation capability. In manual or automatic RNP mode prior to sequencing the FAWP, the LON caution is displayed with a 10-second time to alert the RNP value is less than 2NM and a 30-second time to alert otherwise. RNP is also a statement of navigation performance necessary for operation within a defined airspace.

7.11.2. Automatic RNP Mode



In manual RNP mode or automatic RNP mode prior to sequencing the FAWP, the LON caution appears using a 10 second time to alert if the RNP value is less than 2NM and a 30 second time to alert otherwise.

In automatic RNP mode, after sequencing the FAWP, the EFIS indicates when the navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach by displaying the LON condition inside the CDI on the transmit-enabled display. The flag is latched until no longer in an approach mode.

Figure 7-18: Automatic RNP Mode

NOTE:

The EFIS is capable for the following individual levels of RNP but may not be capable due to limited satellite coverage. Manual RNP is selectable between 0.10NM and 15NM as follows:

1) 0.01 NM increments between RNP 0.10 and RNP 0.3

2) 0.1 NM increments between RNP 0.3 and RNP 2

3) 1 NM increments between RNP 2 and RNP 15

7.11.3. Faults Menu

Use the faults menu to distinguish the cause of a LON caution. Table 7-13 explains conditions and caution termination for each mode of flight.

Table 7-13: Summary of Faults Menu

Mode of Flight	Conditions	Caution Termination
Manual RNP RNP: 0.10M RNP: 15.0M	LON displayed with a 10-second time to alert if RNP value is less than 2NM and a 30-second time to alert.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition
Automatic RNP RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A	After sequencing the FAWP, LON displayed when navigation system is no longer is adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	Latched until equipment no longer in an approach mode.
En route and Terminal TERMINAL	LON displayed when navigation system is no longer is adequate to conduct or continue the navigation.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition
LNAV Approach mode LNAV APPR	Upon passing the FAWP, flag is latched until EFIS is no longer in an approach mode.	Returns to normal state immediately upon termination of responsible condition

Table 7-13: Summary of Faults Menu

Mode of Flight	Conditions	Caution Termination
LNAV/VNAV Approach mode LNV/VNV APPR	LON displayed when navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	After sequencing the FAWP, LON/VERT LON flags are latched until the equipment is no longer in an approach mode. As defined above with the exception that when the LNAV/VNAV approach mode is predicated upon Barometric VNAV. (See Note1)
LP or LPV Approach mode LP APPR LPV APPR	LON or VERT LON displayed when navigation system is no longer adequate to conduct or continue the approach.	Prior to sequencing the FAWP, flags return to normal state immediately upon termination of the responsible condition.
Note: A supplemental test is added for lateral and vertical flagging. A supplemental test is added for vertical flagging when barometric altitude information is in a failed state.		

7.11.4. Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

The EFIS provides a caution, independent of any operator action, when the equipment has a loss of integrity monitoring. When HPL (Horizontal Protection Level) exceeds the applicable HAL (Horizontal Alert Limit) for the longer than applicable time to alert and HPL_{SBAS} exceeds the HAL for the current navigation mode for longer than 2 seconds.

Table 7-14: Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring

Mode of Flight	HAL	Time to Alert
RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A (See Note 1)	As manually set or automatically retrieved	10 Seconds (RNP<2NM) 30 Seconds (otherwise)
En route	2 NM	30 Seconds
TERMINAL	1 NM	10 Seconds
LNAV APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds

Table 7-14: Loss of Integrity Caution Monitoring		
Mode of Flight	**HAL**	**Time to Alert**
LNV/VNV APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
LP APPR LPV APPR	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
Departure	0.3 NM	10 Seconds
Note 1: Only applicable prior to sequencing FAWP. Meeting loss of integrity criteria after sequencing the FAWP is defined as LON.		

7.11.5. Manual Holding Patterns

Most waypoints within an active flight plan can have a manual holding pattern created with the following parameters:

1) Inbound course to the holding fix with 1° increments relative to magnetic or true north.

2) A left or right turn direction.

3) A turn distance, settable in either time (increments of 0.1 minutes from 0.5 minutes to 5.0 minutes) or distance (increments of 1 nautical mile from 1 nautical mile to 25 nautical miles). When a time setting is used, the speed used to calculate distance is the holding speed set in EFIS limits.

7.12. Selection of an Instrument Procedure

When an instrument procedure is selected and active, the receiver notifies the user of the most accurate level of service supported by the combination of the GPS/SBAS signal, receiver, and selected approach using naming conventions on the minima lines of the selected approach procedure. Once the level of service has been given, the EFIS operates in this mode for the duration of the procedure, unless the level of service is unavailable. The EFIS cannot change back to a more accurate level of service until the next time an approach is activated.

The following are samples of step-by-step procedures:

1) VFR Approach to User Waypoint
2) Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)
3) ILS Instrument Approach
4) ILS Instrument Approach with Manual Termination Leg
5) Standard Instrument Departure (DP)
6) LOC Back Course Instrument Approach
7) RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima
8) RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima
9) RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.30 DA
10) NRST ILS Instrument Approach
11) VOR/DME Instrument Approach
12) ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate Fix

7.12.1. VFR Approach to User Waypoint (Step-By-Step)

To create a VFR approach procedure for any of the possible 998 user waypoints stored in the system, it is assumed that user waypoints have been uncluttered on the MAP page and user waypoints are visible. In this scenario, a new user waypoint is created at the present location.

Not all menu steps are depicted in the EFIS views since these have been previously described in Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures. All steps are covered in the instructions in the right column.

PFD and MFD EXAMPLES

1) While maneuvering 18NM northeast of Luke AFB, an abandoned runway appears ahead of the aircraft. Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **DESIG (L3)**.

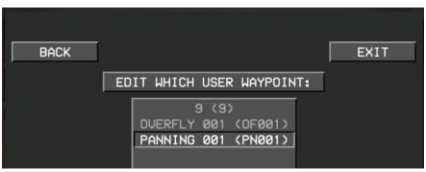
2) A new user waypoint is created and automatically named **PN001**.

3) If a VFR approach is to be created for this waypoint, it must be edited on the MFD.

4) Press **FPL (L1)**, rotate ❶ to **CREATE-EDIT..**, and then push to enter.

5) Rotate ❶ to **EDIT USER WPT** and then push to enter.

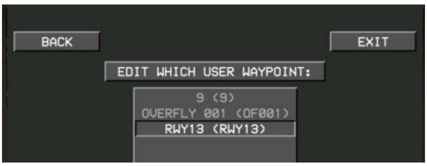
6) Rotate ❶ to desired user waypoint **(PN001)** and then push to enter.



NOTE:

EFIS is capable of storing 998 user waypoints and duplicate user waypoint names are not accepted.

7) Push ❶ to step through each space if no name changes are desired or rotate to create new name during the editing process.



8) For example, the user waypoint was renamed to RWY13.

9) Since wind is from 135° @ 15, APPR BRG was changed from "**OFF**" to **130°**.

10) Either press **SAVE (R3)** to save the changes or press  **(R4)** to begin navigation guidance to user waypoint **(LZ 01)** and return to **EDIT WHICH USER WAYPOINT** menu.

11) In the previous step on the MFD,  **(R4)** was pressed followed by **EXIT (R1)** to exit **EDIT WHICH USER WAYPOINT** menu.

12) On the PFD press **ACTV (L2)** and then push ❶ to see options, rotate to **VFR APPR..**, and then push to enter.

13) Rotate ❶ to **VFR APPR..** and then push to enter.

14) User waypoint RWY13 is now suppressed with brackets. 〈RWY13〉

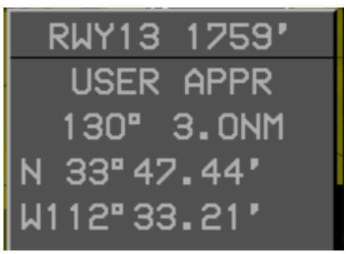
15) With VFR RWY13 1809' as the active waypoint, an IP is established approximately 13 NM from the approach end of the runway. The aircraft is maneuvering towards the IP.

NOTE:

If crossfill is inhibited, operation can only be accomplished on the side with VFR RWY13 1809' in the active flight plan.

16) The aircraft is on a 3NM final with a glide path of 4.5°.

17) Press **INFO (L3)** to reveal the active waypoint name and then push ❶ to show the following information VFR RWY13 1809'.



7.12.2. Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR) (Step-By-Step)

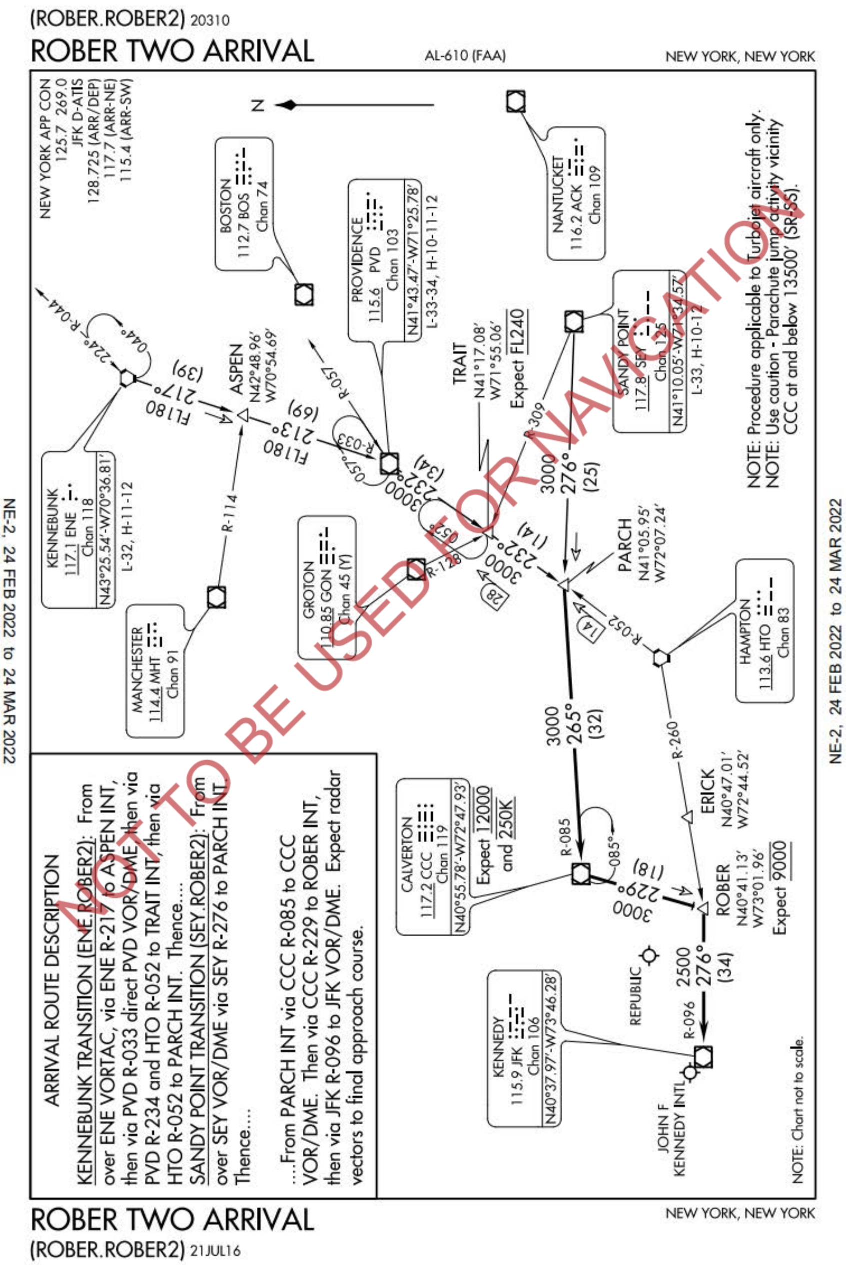


Figure 7-19: Standard Terminal Arrival Route (STAR)

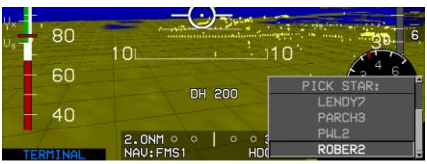
If the selected waypoint is an airport with a published STAR, this option is available from a selection list of available STARs, transitions, and runways. After selection, the appropriate STAR is created and displayed on the MAP page. Activating a STAR deletes any pre-existing STAR, and it is inserted prior to any approach waypoints if previously entered.

STARs normally terminate at a fix near the airport, so a radar vector or feeder route is used for transition to the approach phase of the arrival. If an Instrument approach is activated during the STAR, the approach waypoints are inserted after the STAR.

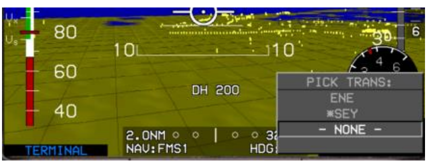
1) Press **ACTV (L2)** arrival airport must be entered as a waypoint.

2) Push ❶ with desired airport (KFRG) highlighted.

3) Rotate ❶ to **STAR..** and then push to enter.



4) **PICK STAR:** Rotate ❶ to desired STAR ROBER2. Push to enter.



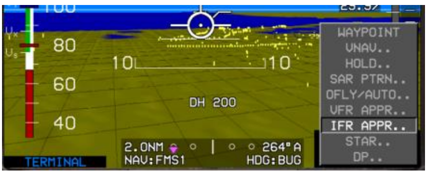
5) **PICK TRANS:** If no transition is desired, rotate ❶ to – NONE –. Push to enter.

6) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to expected runway KFRG RW32 and then push to enter.

7) ATC clears direct CCC and to expect ILS RWY 14.

8) Push ❶ to accept overflying CCC as a waypoint.

9) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ❶ to KFRG and then push to enter.



10) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.

11) **PICK APPR:** Push ❶ to select ILS14 push to enter.

12) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to *FRIKK and then push to enter.

13) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to KFRG RW32 and then push to enter.

7.12.3. ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

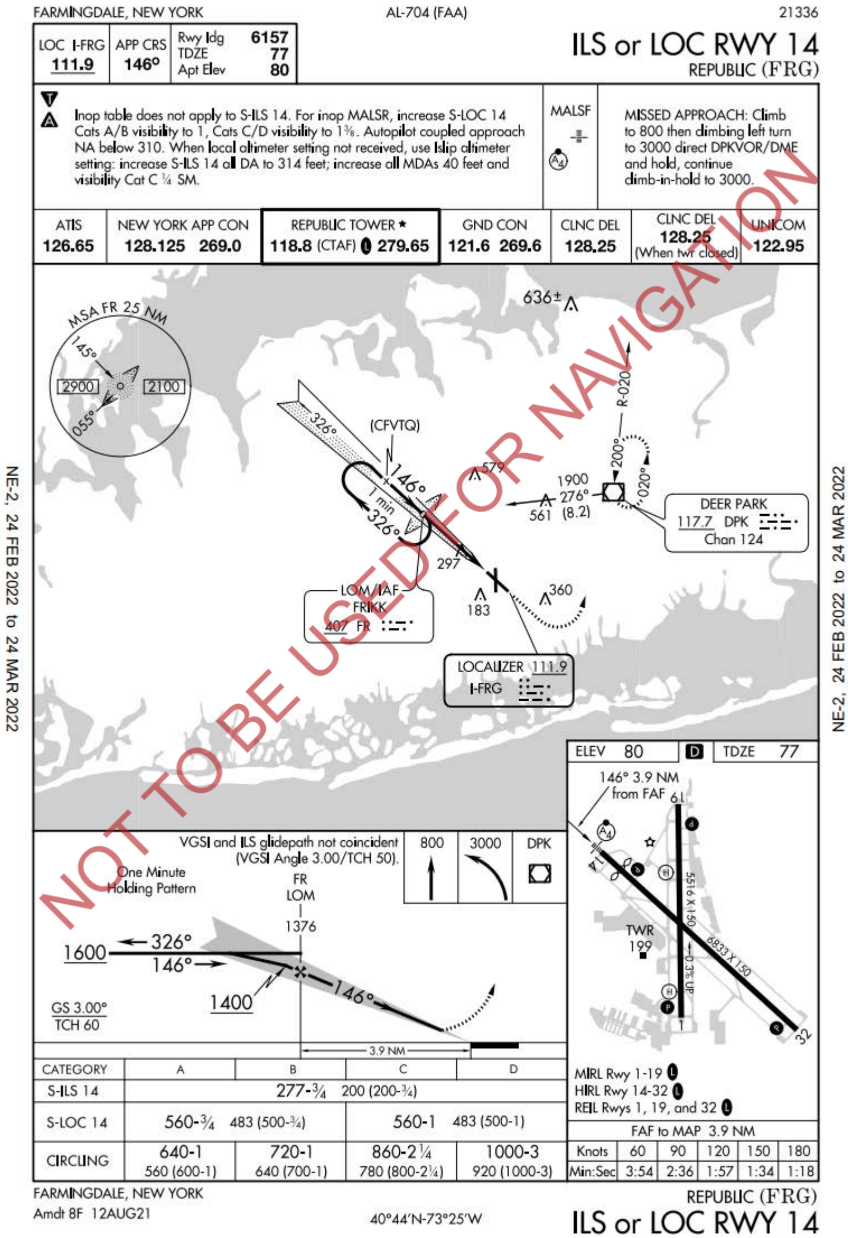


Figure 7-20: ILS Instrument Approach (KFRG)

1) In the STAR step-by-step procedure above, the ILS RWY 14 was created.

2) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ❶ to **FRINK**, press **(R4)**, and then push ❶ to enter.

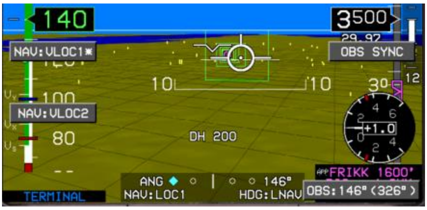
3) Push ❶ to select **FRINK** as a waypoint for overflying with no further action.

4) The aircraft is turning toward **FRINK** with the HDG sub-mode LNAV and 3500' VNAV altitude.

5) Descending to 1600' VNAV altitude. Press **OBS (L4).**

6) Press **NAV: VLOC1 (L3)** rotate ❶ to **146°** and then push to enter.

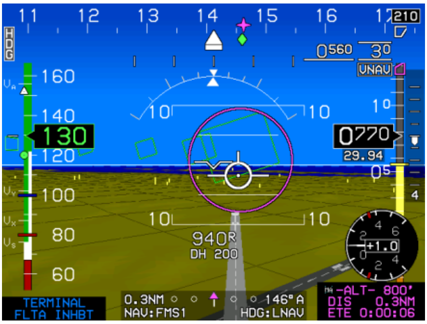
7) The active navigation source is VLOC1 with OBS set to 146°.



8) Established in holding press **CONT (L2)** for to exit holding and resume automatic waypoint sequencing.

9) After setting DH and MIN ALT, and past the FAF **(FRINK)** press **ARM (L2)** to resume automatic waypoint sequencing and arm the missed approach procedure upon passing the MAWP.

10) Below 560’ with minimums flashing, runway insight with gear down.

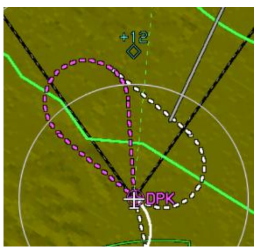


11) Past the MAWP with automatic navigation source switched to FMS1 and FSD automatically set to 0.3NM.

12) 

dynamic waypoint appears ahead as a fly-over waypoint.

13) Established in holding with **CONT (L2)** present for one touch exiting from the holding pattern. This action results in automatic waypoint sequencing to the next waypoint in the active flight plan.



7.12.4. ILS Approach with Manual Termination Leg in MAP (Step-By-Step)

This example selects RAF Cranwell United Kingdom (EGYD) with -ALT- termination leg followed by an immediate manual termination leg requiring user action to resume automatic waypoint sequencing.

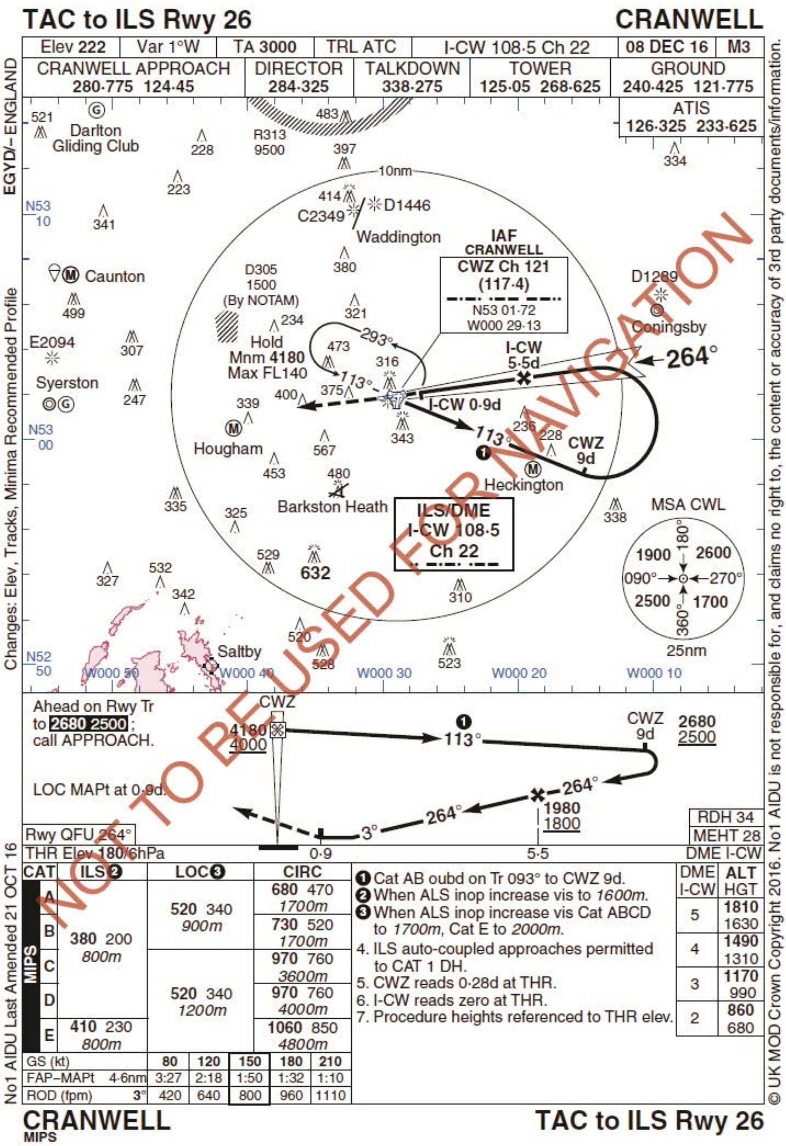
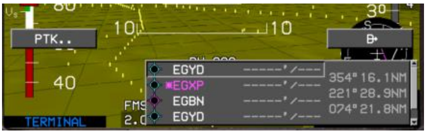
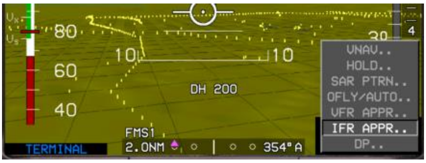


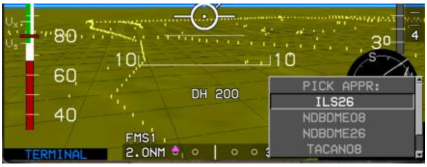
Figure 7-21: ILS Approach (EGYD)



1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to the destination airport and then push to enter.

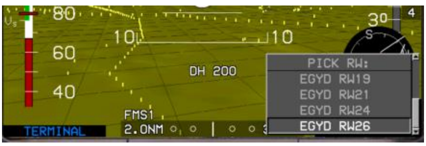


2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.



3) **PICK APPR:** Rotate ❶ to desired approach and then push to enter.

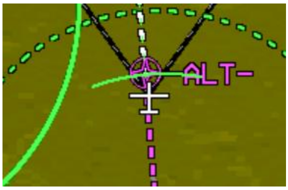
4) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to desired Transition and then push to enter. (* = most logical from present position.)



5) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to desired runway (colors the active runway light gray), push to enter.

6) The navigation source was manually switched to VLOC1, with FAC set to 264° and inside the FAF, **ARM (L2)** was pressed.

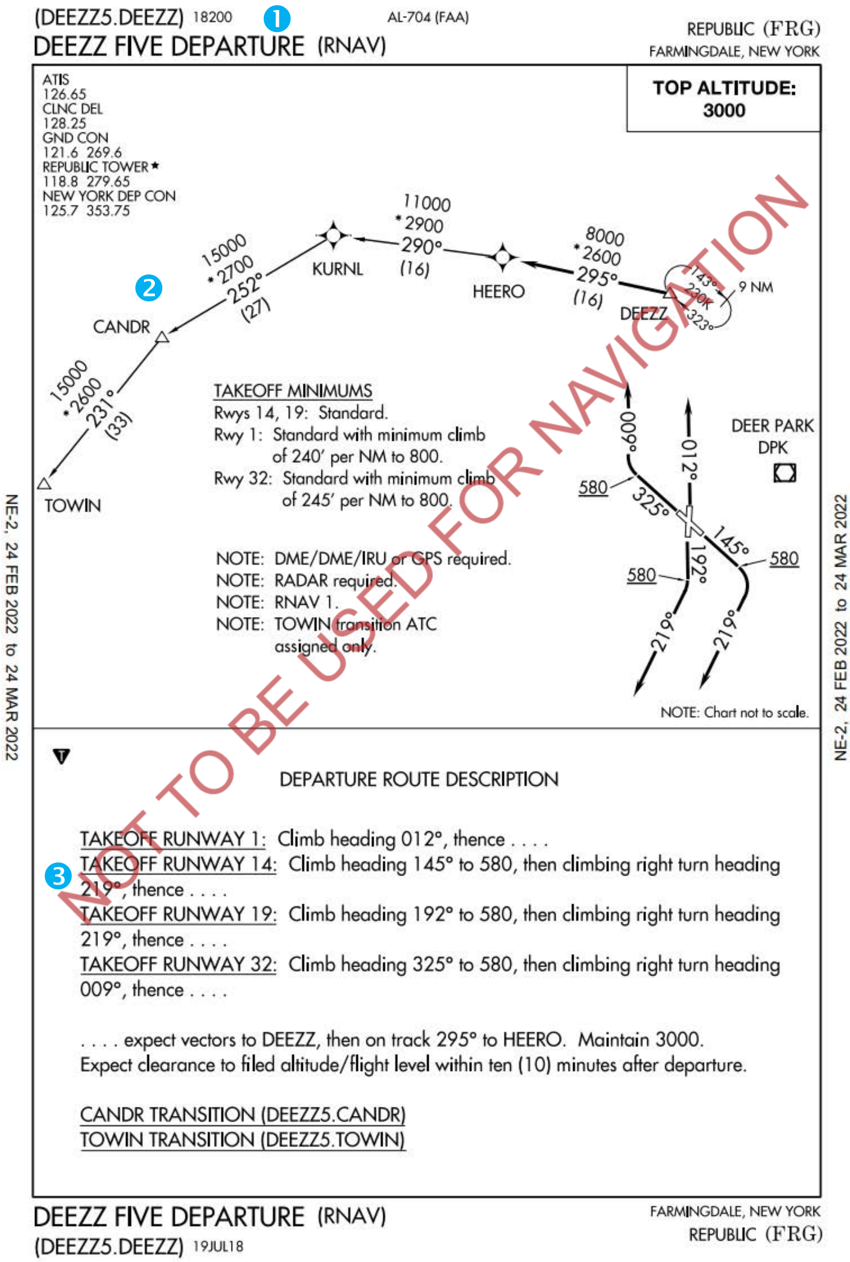
7) Past the MAWP, auto nav source switched to FMS-1 to -ALT- leg climbing to 2680’ with green altitude predictor arc indicating climb performance achieves leg requirement.



8) Past the –ALT– termination leg and ready for user action to press **RESUME (L2)** to resume normal automatic waypoint sequencing.

9) After **RESUME (L2)** is pressed, normal waypoint sequencing resumes, course to the next active waypoint appears with HITS guidance, and updated active waypoint information.

7.12.5. Standard Instrument Departure Procedure (Step-By-Step)



(DEEZZ5.DEEZZ) 18200 AL-704 (FAA)

DEEZZ FIVE DEPARTURE (RNAV)

REPUBLIC (FRG)
FARMINGDALE, NEW YORK

TAKEOFF MINIMUMS
Rwys 14, 19: Standard.
Rwy 1: Standard with minimum climb of 240' per NM to 800.
Rwy 32: Standard with minimum climb of 245' per NM to 800.

NOTE: DME/DME/IRU or GPS required.
NOTE: RADAR required.
NOTE: RNAV 1.
NOTE: TOWIN transition ATC assigned only.

DEPARTURE ROUTE DESCRIPTION

TAKEOFF RUNWAY 1: Climb heading 012°, thence . . . .
TAKEOFF RUNWAY 14: Climb heading 145° to 580, then climbing right turn heading 219°, thence . . . .
TAKEOFF RUNWAY 19: Climb heading 192° to 580, then climbing right turn heading 219°, thence . . . .
TAKEOFF RUNWAY 32: Climb heading 325° to 580, then climbing right turn heading 009°, thence . . . .

. . . . expect vectors to DEEZZ, then on track 295° to HEERO. Maintain 3000. Expect clearance to filed altitude/flight level within ten (10) minutes after departure.

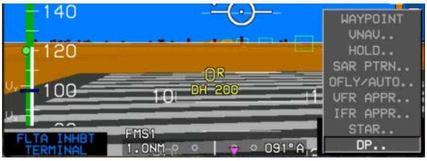
CANDR TRANSITION (DEEZZ5.CANDR)
TOWIN TRANSITION (DEEZZ5.TOWIN)

DEEZZ FIVE DEPARTURE (RNAV)
(DEEZZ5.DEEZZ) 19JUL18

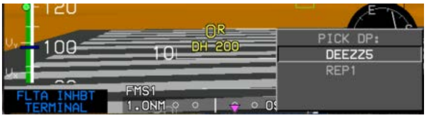
FARMINGDALE, NEW YORK
REPUBLIC (FRG)

Figure 7-22: DEEZZ FIVE Departure (DP) (KFRG)

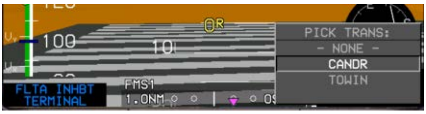
1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to the departure airport and then push to enter.



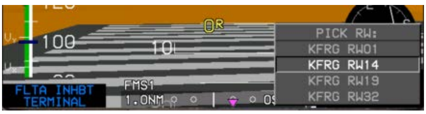
2) Rotate ❶ to DP.. and then push to enter.



3) ❶ **PICK DP..** Rotate ❶ to DEEZZ5 and then push to enter.



4) ❷ **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to CANDR and then push to enter.



5) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to KFRG RW14 and then push to enter. ❸

6) On the MFD, press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, press **PAGE (R3)**. Rotate ❶ to NAV LOG and then push to enter. View NAV LOG to see sequence of waypoints following (KFRG) and all DP waypoints.

7.12.6. LOC Back Course Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example includes a LOC/DME Back Course approach at Santa Maria CA USA (KSMX) with attention drawn to OBS settings and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

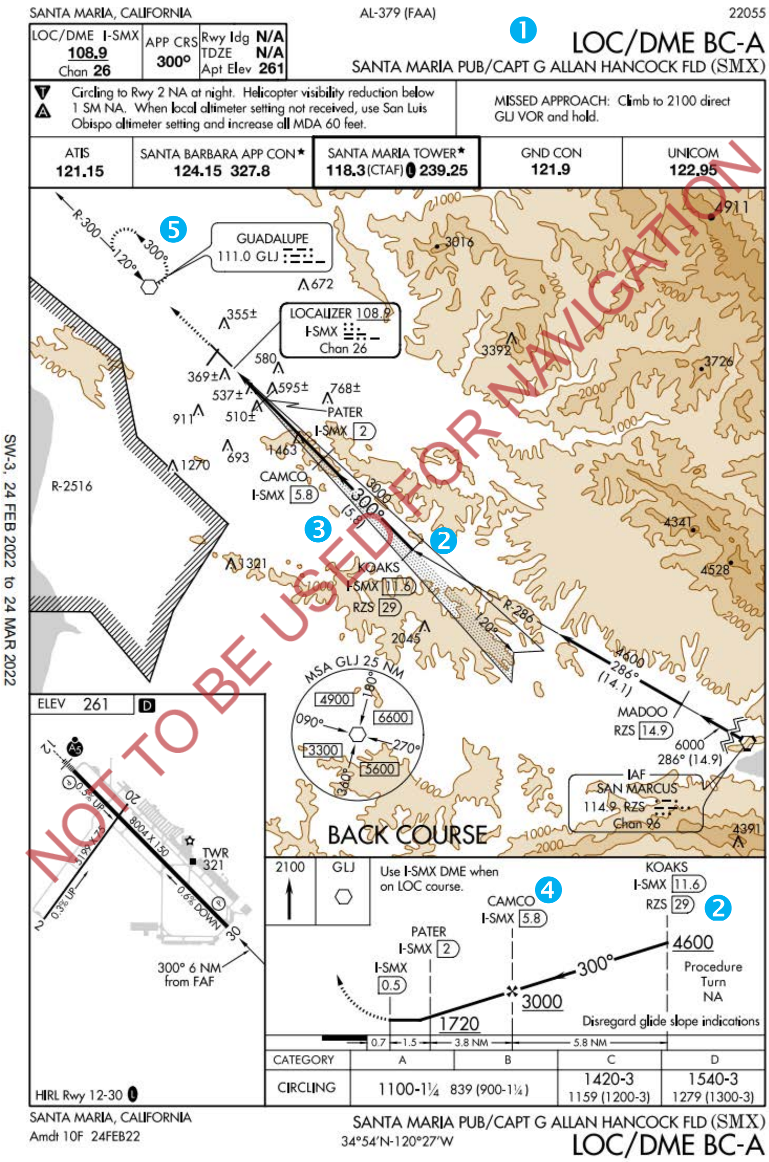


Figure 7-23: LOC Back Course Approach

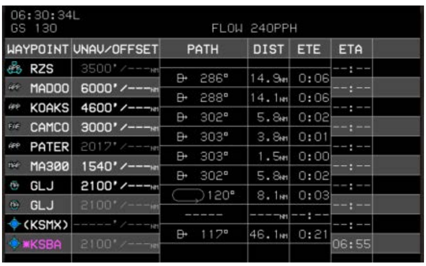
1) ❶ Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.

2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.

3) Rotate ❶ to **LBCA** and then push to enter.

4) Rotate ❶ to transition (*indicates most logical from current position). Push to enter.

5) Rotate ❶ to desired runway. Push to enter.



6) Follow ATC clearance and determine where to proceed. To view NAV LOG, press **MENU (R1)**, press **PAGE.. (R3)**, rotate ❶ to **NAV LOG**, and then push to enter.

7) ❷ Assume ATC issued clearance to fly heading 154° for radar vectors to KOAKS, **ACTV (L2)** and  **(R4)** were pressed when KOAKS was highlighted.

8) To set minimum altitude, press **MENU (R1)**, **BUGS.. (R2)**, **MINS.. (R3)**, rotate ❶ to **MIN ALT..**, and then push to enter. Rotate ❶ to **1100** and then push to enter.

9) ❸ Press **OBS (L4)** and then rotate ❶ to approach course setting of **300°** to avoid reverse sensing indications of CDI.

10) ❹ After passing the FAF (**CAMCO**), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear but in this case, there is no **SUSPEND** advisory due to the stepdown fix of PATER 2.2NM ahead.

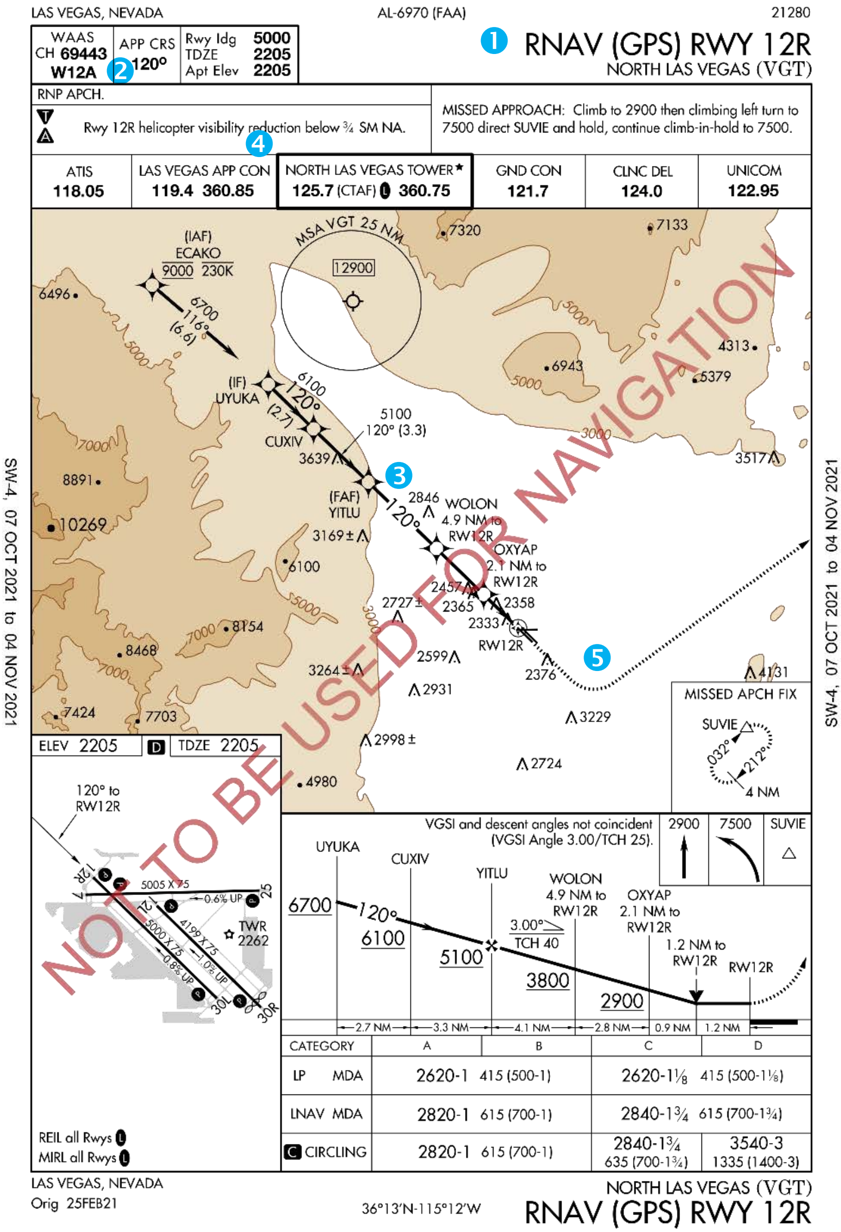
11) Approaching PATER (fly-by waypoint symbol) stepdown fix with the missed approach procedure armed and speed stabilized at 130 KIAS.

12) Passing the MAWP, nav source automatically switches to the FMS1 and CDI changes cyan to magenta.

13) ❺ Entering HOLD at **GLG** and navigating on FMS1

14) **CONT (L2)** appears as a reminder to press when ready to leave the HOLD and continue to the destination **KSBA.**

7.12.7. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima (Step-By-Step)

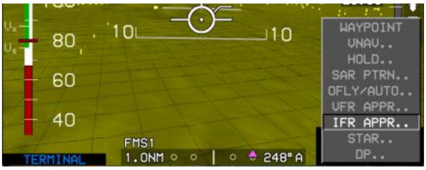


CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
LP MDA	2620-1 415 (500-1)		2620-1⅛ 415 (500-1⅛)	
LNAV MDA	2820-1 615 (700-1)		2840-1¾ 615 (700-1¾)	
CIRCLING	2820-1 615 (700-1)		2840-1¾ 635 (700-1¾)	3540-3 1335 (1400-3)

Figure 7-24: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LP Minima

The following procedure is demonstrated on the pilot-side PFD with the flight plan already loaded with KVGT as the last waypoint in the active flight plan. For brevity, all steps are described but not necessarily accompanied with an image and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

1) Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to airport active waypoint. Push to enter.



2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.

3) ❶ **PICK APPR:** rotate ❶ to desired instrument approach with *RNAV12R (69443) from instrument approach chart and then push to enter.

4) **PICK TRANS:** rotate ❶ to *ECAKO and then push to enter. (* = transition following likely avenue of actual arrival direction.)

5) ❷ **PICK RW:** rotate ❶ to KVGT RW12R for landing and then push to enter. (Colors RW12R light gray.)

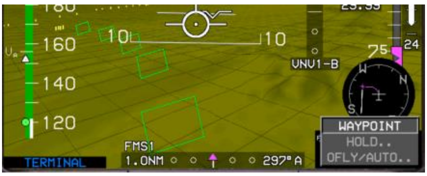
6) ATC issues radar vector to fly direct to APP *ECAKO and maintain 8,000'.

7) ❸ Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ❶ to APP ✱ECAKO.

Press -D- **(R4)** and then push ❶ to enter.

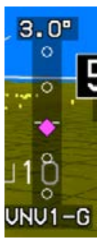
8) ATC now issues a clearance to proceed direct **YITLU** cleared for the **RNAV (GPS) RWY12R** North Las Vegas approach.

9) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ❶ to FAF YITLU and then push to enter.



10) Push ❶ to enter since it is only desired to pass the FAF as a waypoint and continue waypoint sequencing throughout the approach. This leg is descending on VNV1-B source information to **YITLU.**

11) Approaching **YITLU** with the VDI source now VNV1-G.



12) ❹ Past FAF **VITLU**, and GPS mode is LP APPR.

13) Press **ARM (L2)** for one touch arming of the missed approach leg.

14) The following conditions are met:

a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LP minimums are published;

b) Valid long-term fast and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;

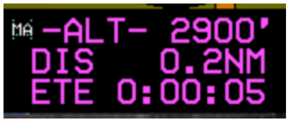
c) Final approach segment data block exists and passes the BIT; AND

d) Horizontal alert limit from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.

15) ❺ Minimums are set to 2620’ MDA.

16) NAV source remains FMS1, but scaling automatically switched to 0.3NM.

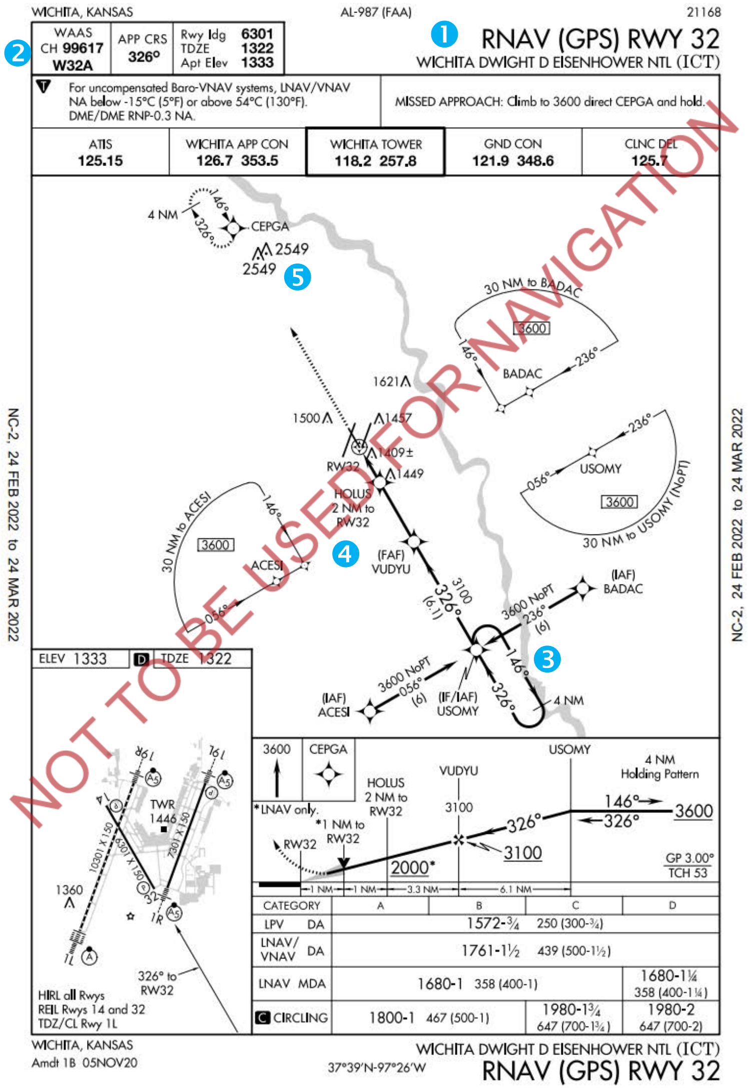
17) Active waypoint information describes the altitude termination leg ahead.



18) Established in holding at **SUVIE**. Press **CONT (L2)** to exit the HOLD and resume automatic waypoint sequencing to next leg in active flight plan.

7.12.8. RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima (Step-By-Step)

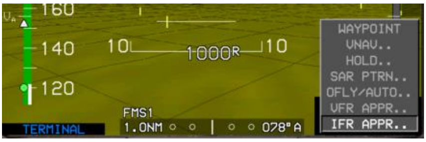
This example includes an RNAV (GPS) RWY 32 approach to Wichita, Kansas, USA (KICT) and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.



CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
LPV DA	1572-¾ 250 (300-¾)			
LNAV/VNAV DA	1761-1½ 439 (500-1½)			
LNAV MDA	1680-1 358 (400-1)			1680-1¼ 358 (400-1¼)
CIRCLING	1800-1 467 (500-1)		1980-1¾ 647 (700-1¾)	1980-2 647 (700-2)

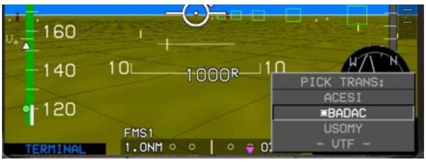
Figure 7-25: RNAV (GPS) Instrument Approach to LPV Minima

1) To select airport from active flight plan, press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate ❶ to desired airport ❶, and then push to enter.

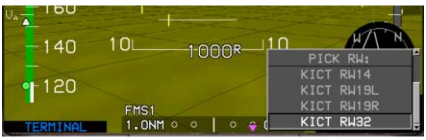


2) Rotate to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.

3) **PICK APPR:** Rotate to desired approach and verify WAAS channel number ❷ matches instrument approach chart and then push to enter.



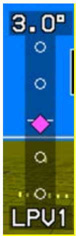
4) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to the desired transition and then push to enter. (* = transition following likely avenue of actual arrival direction.)



5) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to assigned landing runway. (Active runway colored light gray for identification purposes.)

6) During this leg enroute to BADAC, the TOD was passed and descent begun based upon VNAV-B as shown below VDI.

7) ❸ On final approach course and approaching the FAF, LPV APPR appears along with the VDI.



8) The following conditions are met:

a) ARINC-424 “Level of Service” indicates LPV minimums are published;

b) Valid long-term fast and ionospheric SBAS corrections are available and being applied to at least 4 GPS satellites;

c) Final approach segment data block exists and passes the BIT; AND

d) Horizontal and vertical alert limits from final approach segment data block are predicted to be supported.

9) ❹ Upon passing HOLUS, press **ARM (L2)** to continue auto waypoint sequencing. (This is the latest point on the approach to press ARM)

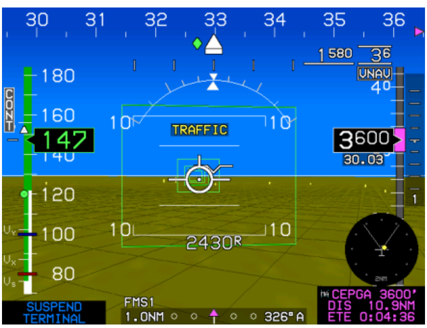
10) VDI displays vertical guidance for the LPV vertical profile based on GPS/SBAS.

11) Obstructions appear on PFD and ND.

12) Press **MENU (R1),** within 10 seconds then **ZOOM (R3)** for wide-angle view of PFD.

13) FPM lined up on the active runway on glide path approaching minimums with CDI centered and on glide path approaching minimums of 1580’ MSL.

14) Past the MAWP, NAV source remains FMS1 and scale automatically changed to 0.3NM.



15) ❺ Established in hold at CEPGA. Press **CONT (L2)** to continue waypoint sequencing to next leg in active flight plan.

7.12.9. RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA (Step-By-Step)

This example includes an RNAV (RNP) RWY 19 approach to Ronald Reagan Washington National (KDCA) via radar vectors to (IAF) FERGI intersection and includes blue numbers to associate places of reference on the chart and the EFIS.

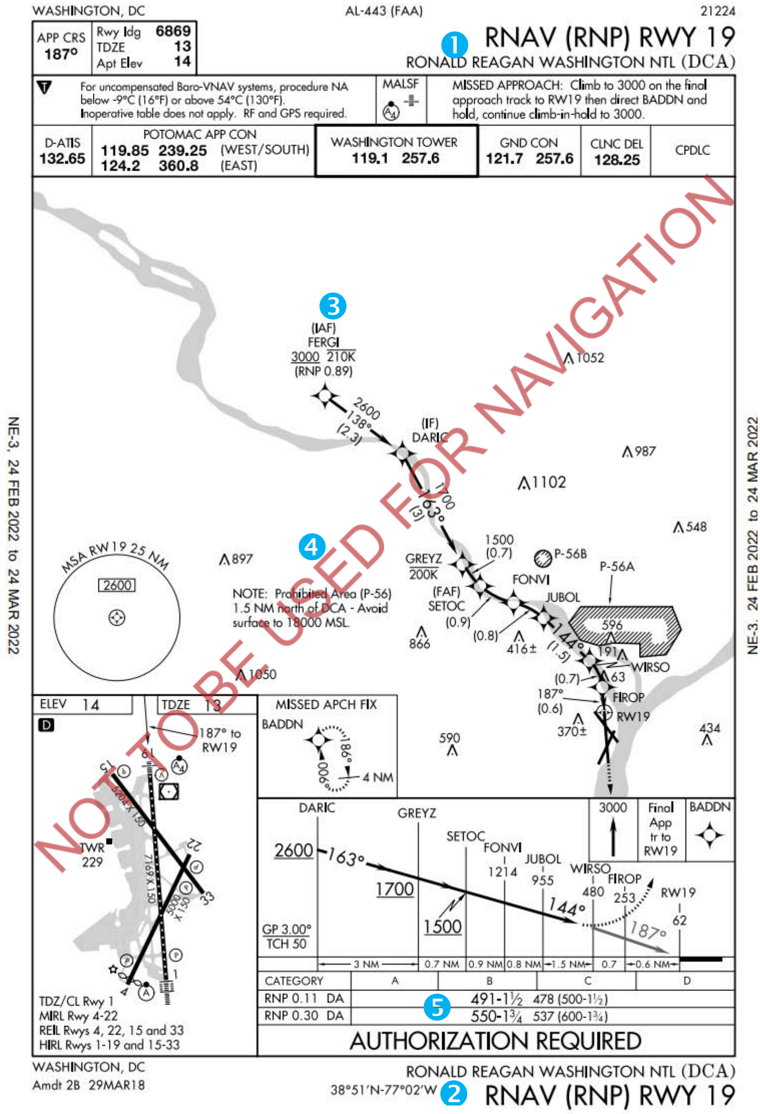
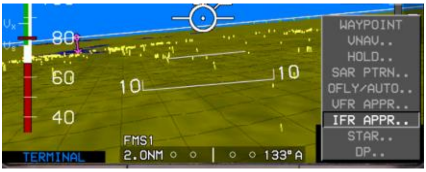
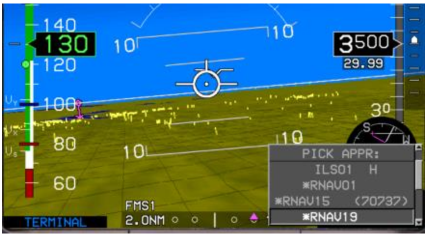


Figure 7-26: RNAV (RNP) Instrument Approach to RNP 0.3 DA

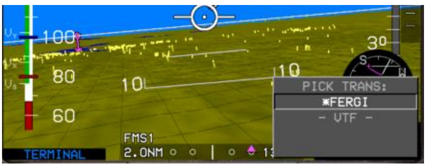
1) To select airport from active flight plan, press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate ❶ to desired airport ①, and then push to enter.



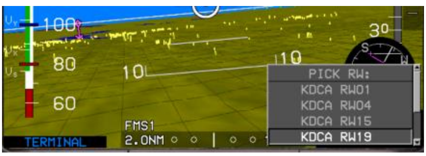
2) Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR..** and then push to enter.



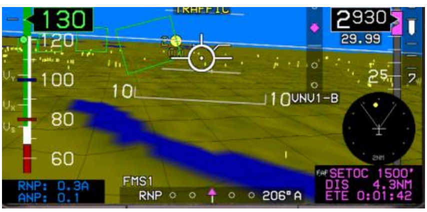
3) **PICK APPR:** Rotate ❶ to desired approach ② matches instrument approach chart and then push to enter.
*RNAV19
(* indicates this approved procedure is fully GPS sourced. No ground navaids are necessary.)



4) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to *FERGI ③ and then push to enter. (* indicates most logical from current position)

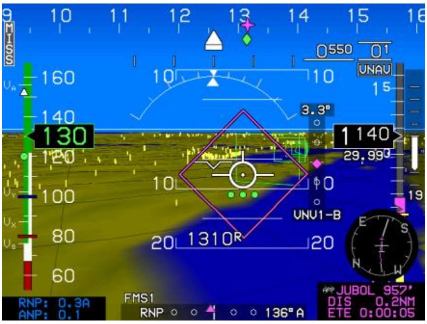


5) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to desired runway KDCA RW19 and then push to enter.



6) ⑤ DA minima set to 550’ as aircraft approaches SETOC.

7) Past **SETOC (FAF)**, press **ARM (L2)** as glide path is maintained as per VDI.

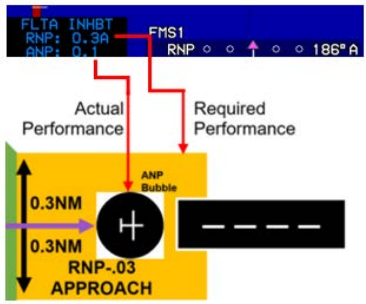


8) Approaching JUBOL on glide path. Approaching DA 550’.

9) ❹ Avoidance of overflying any portion of prohibited area (P56) is assured.

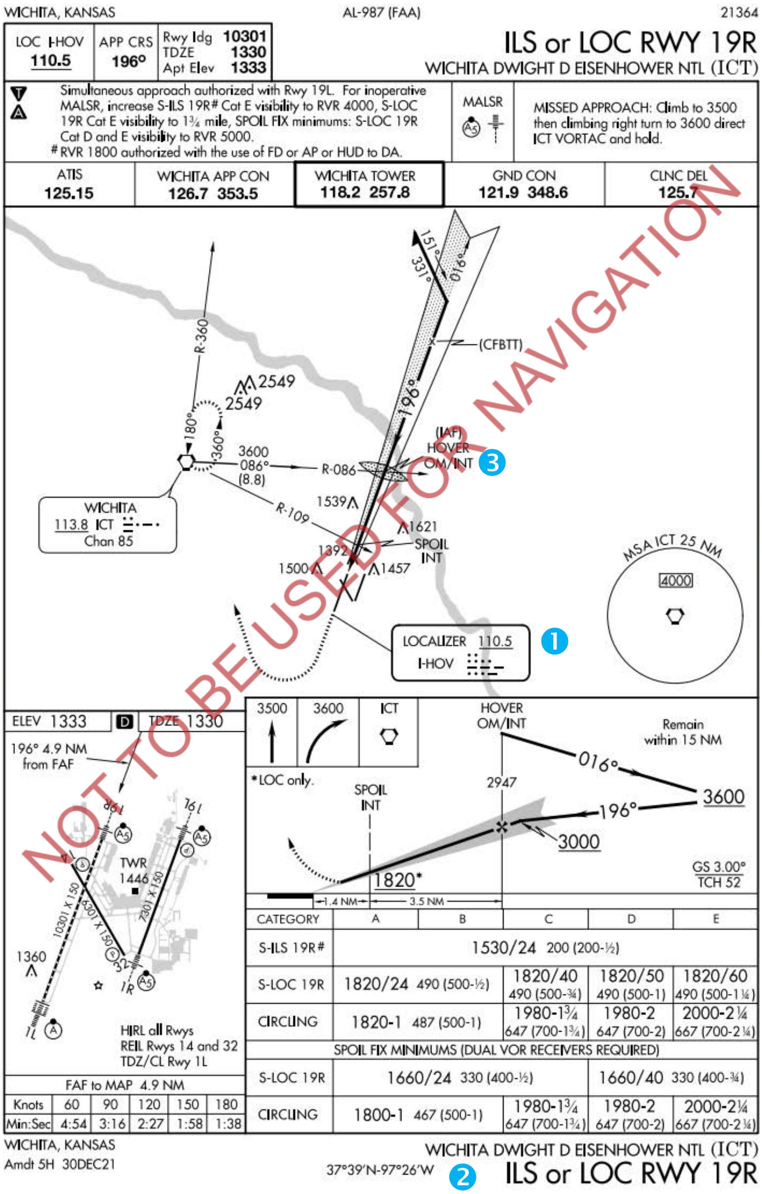
10) Below minima, runway insight and continue to land.

11) ❺ This procedure required RNP 0.3 and ANP was 0.1.



7.12.10. NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This method does not require the airport to be in the active flight plan. This example selects ILS RWY 19R (KICT).

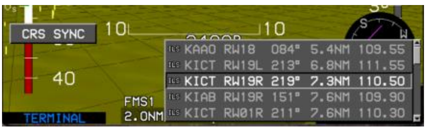


FAF to MAP 4.9 NM					
Knots	60	90	120	150	180
Min:Sec	4:54	3:16	2:27	1:58	1:38

CATEGORY	A	B	C	D	E
S-ILS 19R#	1530/24 200 (200-½)				
S-LOC 19R	1820/24 490 (500-½)		1820/40 490 (500-¾)	1820/50 490 (500-1)	1820/60 490 (500-1¼)
CIRCLING	1820-1 487 (500-1)		1980-1¾ 647 (700-1¾)	1980-2 647 (700-2)	2000-2¼ 667 (700-2¼)
SPOIL FIX MINIMUMS (DUAL VOR RECEIVERS REQUIRED)					
S-LOC 19R	1660/24 330 (400-½)			1660/40 330 (400-¾)	
CIRCLING	1800-1 467 (500-1)		1980-1¾ 647 (700-1¾)	1980-2 647 (700-2)	2000-2¼ 667 (700-2¼)

Figure 7-27: NRST ILS Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **NRST (R3)** then rotate ❶ to **ILS...** Push to enter.



2) ❶ Rotate ❶ to desired airport ILS KICT RW19R 219° 7.3NM 110.50 then push to enter.

3) ❷ Once confirmed, push ❶ to CONFIRM ACTIVATE ILS

4) Following actions occur:

    a) Previous active flight plan is deleted.

    b) Direct flight plan to the ILS airport is created.

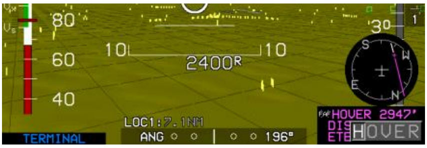
    c) A vectors-to-final ILS approach is activated.

    d) If heading bug was off (no autopilot installed) it is activated to the current heading.

    e) VLOC 1 and VLOC 2 OBS are set to the associated localizer course.

f) ILS frequency is automatically transmitted to NAV#1 in standby position when system enabled.

g) EFIS changes to LOC1, and VDI indicates source of glide slope GS1 when signal is received.



5) ❸ **HOVER** is the active waypoint. Press **(R4)** and then push ❶ to enter a direct route with navigation guidance to FAF.

6) Passing the FAF (HOVER), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. Press **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure and continue automatic waypoint sequencing.

7) HITS indicates guidance to follow GPS overlay of the localizer and glide slope. However, the localizer source for CDI and glide slope receiver VDI are the primary sources for navigation guidance on this ILS approach.

8) ❸ Passing the FAF (**COCAS**), **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appear. Press **ARM (L2** to arm the missed approach procedure and continue automatic waypoint sequencing.

9) Inside 2.0 NM final with FLTA INHBT LNAV APPR indicating no TAWS alerts are triggered and the default GPS mode of LNAV APPR is active.

7.12.11. VOR/DME Instrument Approach (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Lamar, Colorado USA VOR/DME RWY 36 approach and is flown via the east arc followed by a missed approach. Blue numbers associate locations on chart and EFIS.

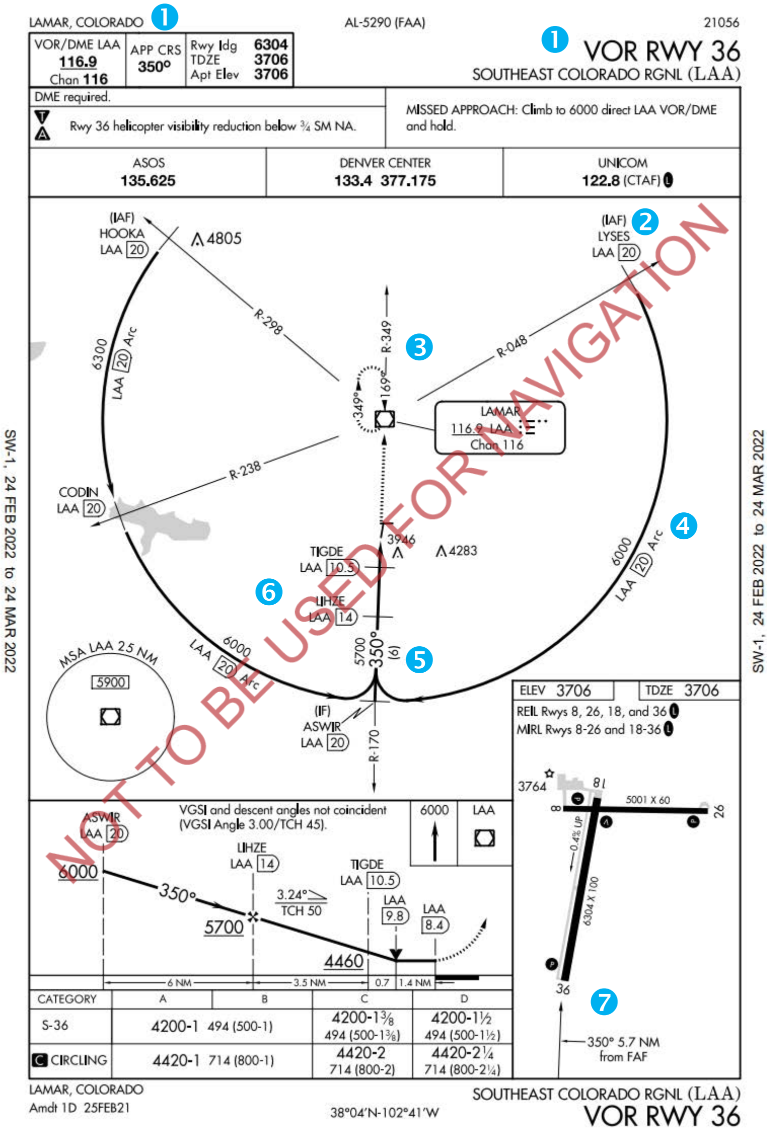
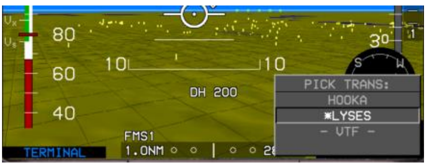


Figure 7-28: VOR/DME Instrument Approach

1) With destination airport highlighted as the waypoint, press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to **IFR APPR...** Push to enter.

2) ❶ **PICK APPR:** Rotate ❶ to select desired approach VORDME36 and then push to enter.



3) **PICK TRANS:** Rotate ❶ to desired transition of *LYSES (* = most likely transition from this avenue of arrival). Push to enter.

4) **PICK RW:** Rotate ❶ to KLAA RW36. Push to enter.

5) Push ❶ to accept waypoint with no changes to attributes.

6) A magenta line leads from the -DIR- current position to ❸ **LYSES**, which is now the active waypoint. 9000’ is the VNAV altitude. Aircraft is descending to the HITS boxes with green arc altitude predictor showing where this altitude is reached along the route.

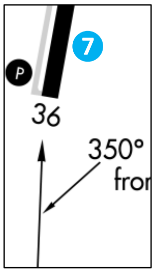
7) Established on the 20 DME ARC ❹ with NAV1 and NAV2 set on 116.9 MHz for LAA VOR and inbound FAC set at 350° on both VORs with DME indicating on both nav sources.

8) Established inbound on the final approach course to the FAF ✱LIHZE ❺ crossing top of descent symbol ahead indicating when descent can be commenced to cross the FAF at 5700’. Nav source is VOR1 and HITS source is GPS. The primary lateral source is the VOR and DME for this Instrument approach.

9) After passing the FAF **MISS (L1)** and **ARM (L2)** appears. Press **MISS (L1)** to immediately execute the missed approach procedure or **ARM (L2)** to arm the missed approach procedure upon crossing the MAWPT.

10) Approaching the ⑥ stepdown fix APP TIGDE as shown in the waypoint information box.

11) Press **MENU (R1)** and then **ZOOM ON (R3)**. Established at 110 KIAS on short final with the runway in sight .6 NM ahead at the same angle as shown on the instrument approach chart.



12) After passing the MAWPT and the missed approach procedure was automatically sequenced, aircraft begins following the dashed magenta missed approach course lines on the MAP. Nav source automatically switched to FMS1 and 0.4NM increasing to 1.0NM.

references to still being in the terminal area and TAWS terrain alerts being inhibited.

7.12.12. ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

This example loads the Akron-Canton ILS or LOC RWY 1 approach with the missed approach flown to the alternate missed approach fix (KEATN)

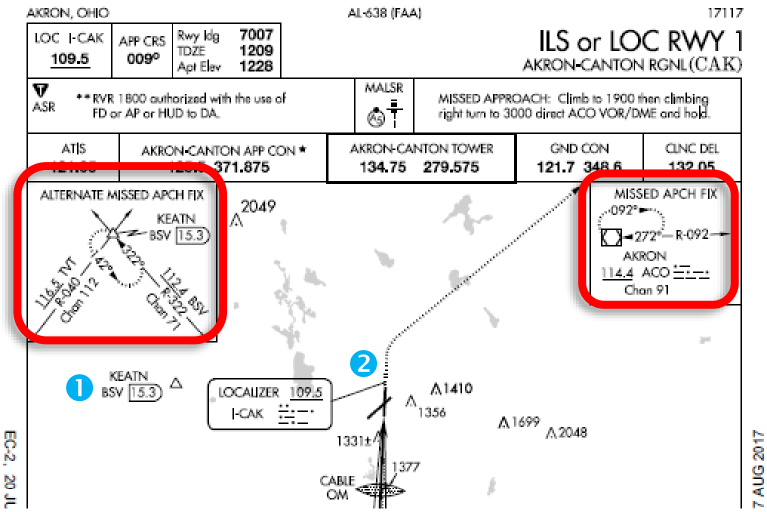
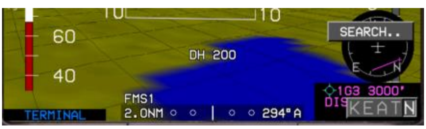


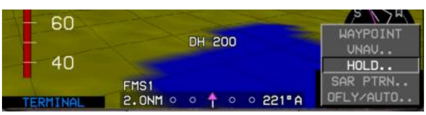
Figure 7-29: ILS or LOC RWY 1 Instrument Approach with Missed Approach Flown to Alternate fix (Step-By-Step)

During the instrument approach clearance, ATC advised that in the event of a missed approach, plan on flying the alternate missed approach instructions to ❶ KEATN intersection and hold as published. The ILS RWY 1 instrument approach is loaded and the active flight plan is opened and ❶ is scrolled to one position past (KCAK) and **INSERT (R2)** is pressed and entered KEATN with ❶ and then pushed to enter.

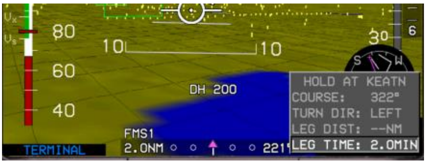


1) ❶ Create KEATN waypoint in active flight plan and then push ❶ to enter.

2) Rotate ❶ to  and then push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to **HOLD..** and then push to enter.



4) Create published holding pattern at KEATN and then rotate/push ❶ through the process then push to enter. Observe KEATN is in correct position in active flight plan after (KCAK.)

5) ❷ Upon executing the missed approach, press **ACTV (L2)**, rotate ❶ to KEATN, press  **(R4)**, and then push ❶ to enter a direct routing to **KEATN**.

6) Verify the active flight plan has the holding pattern entered as published and is depicted on the MFD correctly.

7) Established in the holding pattern at KEATN. When cleared to continue to next waypoint on active flight plan, press **CONT (L2)** to resume waypoint sequencing.

8) If an instrument approach is necessary at the destination KPHD, the approach can be loaded without losing the holding pattern at HOLD KEATN since it was not part of the KCAK ILS 01 Instrument approach procedure.

NOTE:

When a procedure is deleted from the flight plan, the original flight plan is correctly restored since the duplicate waypoint is only skipped and not deleted.

PFD BUGs menu VNAV descent angles are not applicable for inside the FAF during a published instrument procedure.

IFR en route, terminal, and instrument approach navigation predicted upon EFIS is prohibited unless the user verifies the currency of the navigation database or verifies each selected waypoint for accuracy by reference to current approved data.

Instrument approach navigation must be accomplished in accordance with the approved instrument procedures. These procedures are retrieved from the EFIS navigation database. Before conducting an instrument procedure, the procedure should be verified by reference to current approved data.

NOTE:

Navigation databases should be current for the duration of the flight. If the Aeronautical Information Regulation and Control (AIRAC) cycle is due to change during the flight, operators and users should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. Once acceptable means to compare aeronautical charts (new and old) to verify navigation fixes prior to departure, electronic data have traditionally been verified against paper products. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, do not use the database to conduct the operation.

There may be a slight difference between the navigation information portrayed on the chart and the primary navigation display heading. Differences of three degrees or less may result from equipment manufacturer's application of magnetic variation and are operationally acceptable.

GPS receivers do not "fail down" to lower levels of service once the approach has been activated.

If only 

appears, use the LNAV minima if the rules under which the flight is operating allow changing the type of approach being flown after commencing the procedure. If the lateral integrity limit is exceeded on an LP approach, a missed approach is necessary, since the lateral alarm limit may not be reset while the approach is active.

Section 8 Terrain Awareness Warning System

8.1. TAWS Functions

The IDU provides TSO-C151b TAWS functionality. The following description is for a TAWS Class A, B, and C depending on aircraft configuration and external sensors/switches. Warning functions provided by TAWS are as follows. See Section 2 System Overview for additional information on system warning, caution, and advisory alerts.

Table 8-1: TAWS Functions Provided by the EFIS

Aircraft Type	Airplane				Airplane
	RG + F	RG	FG + F	FG	
TAWS Class	**A**	**A**	**A**	**A**	**B or C**
Terrain Display	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
FLTA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PDA	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
GPWS Mode 1	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
GPWS Mode 2	✓	✓	✓	✓	
GPWS Mode 3	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
GPWS Mode 4	✓	✓	✓		
GPWS Mode 5	✓	✓	✓	✓	
500’ Call	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Notes:
RG + F = Retractable Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position
RG = Retractable Gear
FG + F = Fixed Gear with Defined Landing Flaps Position
FG = Fixed Gear

1) **Terrain Display**: Terrain and obstacles on PFD and MFD (ND).

2) **Forward Looking Terrain Awareness** (**FLTA**): Alerts to hazardous terrain or obstructions in front of the aircraft.

3) **Premature Descent Alert** (**PDA**): Alerts when descending well below a normal approach glide path on the final approach segment of an instrument approach procedure.

4) **Excessive Rate of Descent** (**GPWS Mode 1**): Alerts when high rate of descent above terrain (i.e., descending into terrain).

5) **Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain** (**GPWS Mode 2**): Alerts when hazardously high rate of change over rising terrain.

6) **Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach** (**GPWS Mode 3**): Alerts when loss of altitude is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach.

7) **Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration** (**GPWS Mode 4**): Alerts when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing.

8) **Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glide Slope** (**GPWS Mode 5**): Alerts when deviating below glide slope on the ILS final approach segment.

9) **500 foot Wake-up Call**: Single audible callout when descending through 500 feet AGL.

8.2. Terrain Display

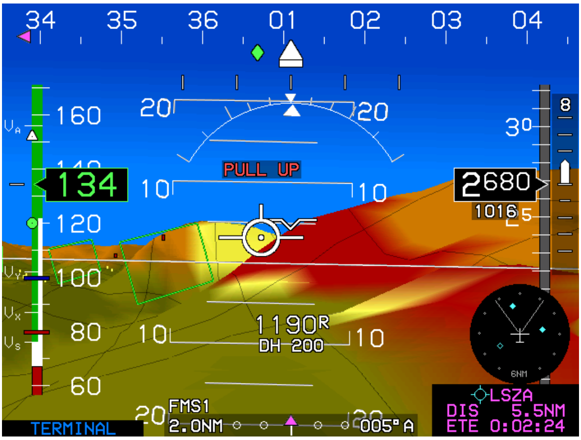


Figure 8-1: PFD Terrain Display

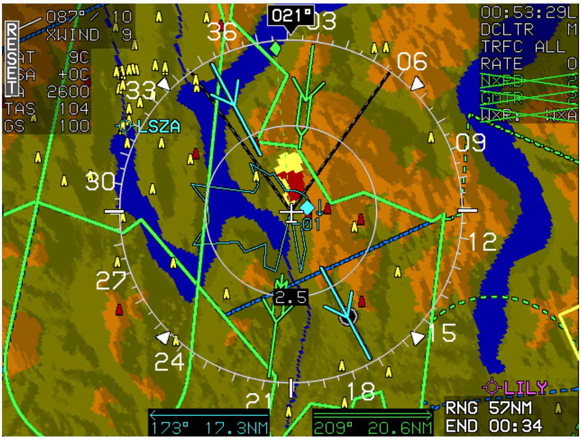


Figure 8-2: MFD Terrain Display

Display of terrain on the PFD and ND are described in Sections 3 Display Symbology and 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures where applicable.

8.3. Forward Looking Terrain Alert Function

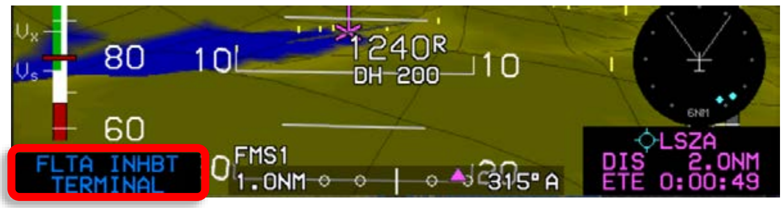


Figure 8-3: FLTA INHBT

FLTA function uses the following to alert to hazardous terrain or obstructions within a search envelope in front of the aircraft:

1) Terrain database
2) Obstruction database
3) Airport and runway database
4) Aircraft position
5) Aircraft track
6) Aircraft ground speed
7) Aircraft bank angle
8) Aircraft altitude
9) Aircraft vertical speed

8.3.1. FLTA Modes

FLTA mode is either slaved to the GPS/SBAS navigation mode or set automatically based upon default mode logic.

8.3.2. GPS/SBAS Navigation Mode Slaving

The EFIS performs TSO-C146c GPS/SBAS functions in addition to the TAWS functions. As a result, GPS/SBAS navigation mode is available as an input to the TAWS. The user may select an IFR procedure (approach, DP, or STAR), which automatically changes the GPS/SBAS navigation mode to enroute, terminal, departure, or IFR approach as appropriate. In addition, the user may select a VFR approach to any runway or user waypoint with a defined approach path. Selection of a VFR approach causes automatic GPS/SBAS navigation mode changes to enroute, terminal, or VFR approach as appropriate.

When slaved, the GPS/SBAS active runway threshold or user waypoint is the reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting. The advantage is the GPS/SBAS navigation modes are a direct indication to the FLTA function of pilot intent.

8.3.3. Default FLTA Mode

If the default FLTA navigation mode is higher in precedence than the GPS/SBAS navigation mode, FLTA mode is slaved to the default FLTA navigation mode. These modes and order of precedence are:

1) **Departure Mode**: Enabled when in ground mode. Reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope definition is the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (near the liftoff point). Departure mode ends upon climbing through 1500 feet above or traveling more than 6NM from the reference point.

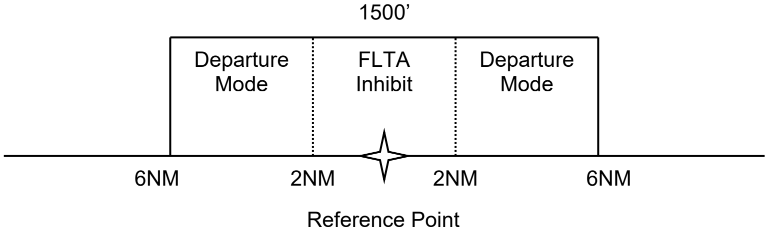


Figure 8-4: Default FLTA INHBT

2) **Other Modes**: For other default FLTA modes, reference point for automatic FLTA inhibiting and mode envelope is the nearest runway

threshold or user waypoint with a defined approach bearing. TAWS continuously searches all runway thresholds at the nearest three airports to determine the nearest runway threshold. TAWS performs a search for the nearest three airports and nearest user waypoints with a defined approach bearing every 3NM of distance traveled. Modes are as follows:

a) **Approach Mode**: When within 1900 feet and 5NM of the reference point.

b) **Terminal Mode**: From 5NM to 15NM from the reference point when below an altitude that varies from 1900 feet (at 5NM) to 3500 feet (at 15NM) above the reference point.

c) **Enroute Mode**: When not in any other mode.

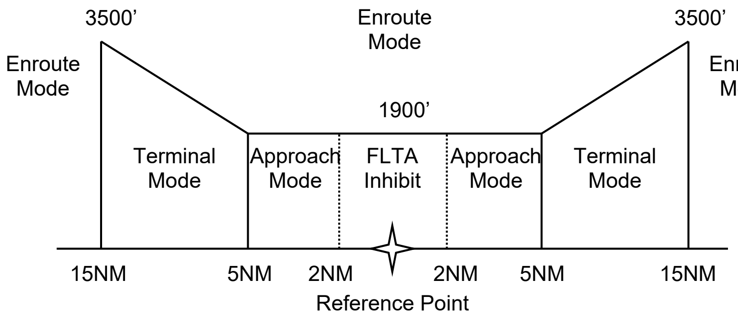


Figure 8-5: FLTA INHBT Mode Areas

8.3.4. FLTA Search Envelope

The FLTA search envelope is an area in front of and below the aircraft. If terrain or obstructions are found within the FLTA search envelope, a caution or warning is given. Dimensions of the search envelope depend upon TAWS type, FLTA mode, and aircraft track, ground speed, bank angle, and vertical speed. Basic envelope parameters are as follows:

1) **TAWS Type**: Determines value of several parameters used to calculate the search envelope.

Table 8-2: FLTA Search Envelope

Envelope	Parameter
Level-Off Rule	Class A & B: 20% of vertical speed Class C: 10% of vertical speed Used for level-off leading.

Table 8-2: FLTA Search Envelope

Envelope	Parameter
Range	60 seconds forward range search envelope. After calculations, GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to range.
Enroute Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC	Class A & B: 700 feet Class C: 250 feet
Terminal Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC	Class A & B: 350 feet Class C: 250 feet
Approach Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC	150 feet
Departure Mode Level or Climbing Flight RTC	100 feet
Enroute Mode Descending RTC	Class A & B: 500 feet Class C: 200 feet
Terminal Mode Descending RTC	Class A & B: 300 feet Class C: 200 feet
Approach Mode Descending RTC	100 feet
Departure Mode Descending RTC	100 feet

2) **Aircraft Track**: Terrain search envelope is aligned with aircraft track.

3) **Aircraft Ground Speed**: Used in conjunction with range parameter to determine the look-ahead distance and used with FLTA mode to determine search volume width as follows:

   a) **Enroute Mode**: Based on a 30° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

   b) **Terminal Mode**: Based on a 15° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.5NM either side of track.

   c) **Approach Mode**: Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

   d) **Departure Mode**: Based on a 10° change in track followed by 30 seconds of flight at aircraft ground speed. Maximum width is 0.3NM either side of track.

   After calculating search volume width as described above, the GPS/SBAS HFOM is added to search volume width.

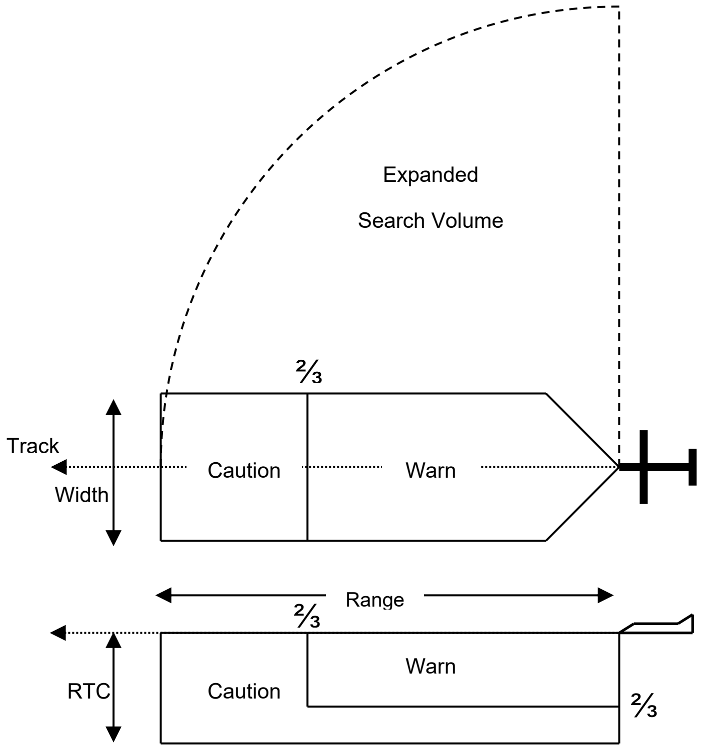


Figure 8-6: FLTA Search Volume

4) **Aircraft Bank Angle**: Used to expand the search volume in the direction of a turn and requires at least 10° of bank. In addition, search volume expansion is delayed, so at 10° of bank, the bank angle must be continuously held for 3.25 seconds. The amount of delay is reduced linearly with increased bank angle so at 30° of bank there is no delay time. Delaying is intended to reduce nuisance-search volume expansions when experiencing bank angle excursions due to turbulence.

5) **Aircraft Vertical Speed**: Used to determine which RTC values should be used. At vertical speeds above -500 fpm, level and climbing flight RTC values are used. At vertical speeds less than or equal to -500 fpm, descending flight RTC values are used. In addition, vertical speed is used to increase the descending flight RTC value used by the system. The increase in descending flight RTC is based upon a three-second pilot reaction time is used and applied to the level-off rule parameters.

8.3.5. FLTA Alerts and Automatic Popup

When terrain or obstructions fall within the FLTA search envelope, an FLTA warning is generated. Terrain rendering is enabled when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded as follows:

1) On PFD, if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled.

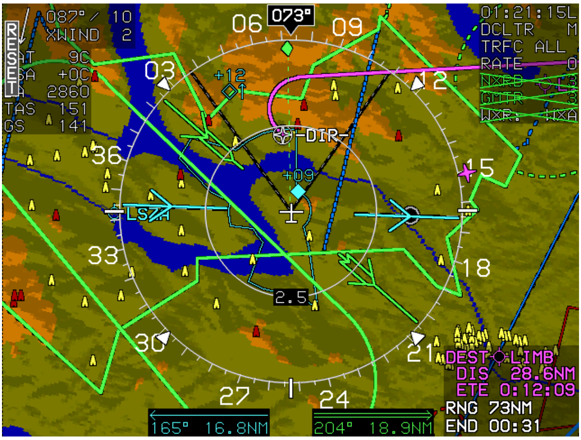


Figure 8-7: ND in Popup Mode

In addition, when an FLTA warning is initiated or upgraded, an automatic popup mode is engaged and:

1) Switches to navigation display. terrain rendering is enabled only if TAWS Inhibit is not enabled (i.e., TAWS Inhibit prevents terrain from being automatically enabled on the navigation display).

2) Switches to aircraft centered and heading up.

3) Panning disabled.

4) Scale set to:

   a) 10 NM (ground speed > 200 knots);

   b) 5 NM (ground speed <= 200 knots and ground speed > 100 knots); or

   c) 2 NM (ground speed <= 100 knots).

After the popup mode is engaged, the pilot may change any setting automatically changed by the popup mode. In addition, **RESET (L1)** appears for 20 seconds to reset the previous screen configuration with one button press. Popups only occur on IDU #0 or #2 with all TAWS classes configured and does not occur: if TAWS inhibit is enabled.

8.4. Premature Descent Alert (PDA) Function

PDA function alerts when descending well below a normal approach glide path on the final approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. PDA function uses the following:

1) GPS/SBAS navigation database

2) GPS/SBAS navigation mode

3) Aircraft position

4) Aircraft altitude

PDA function is armed when on the final approach segment of an IFR approach procedure and below the FAF crossing altitude. The alerting threshold for the PDA function is 0.5º less than the lower of:

1) a straight line from the FAF to approach runway threshold; or

2) 3º emanating from the “approach runway threshold.” The 3-dimentional location of the “approach runway threshold” is based upon the missed approach point location and the active runway elevation.

When the aircraft descends below the threshold, a PDA warning is generated (Figure 8-8).

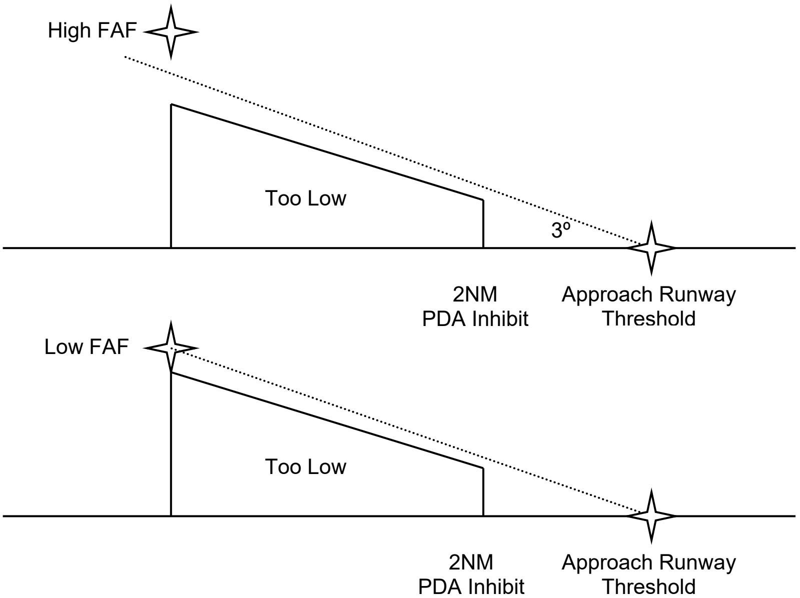


Figure 8-8: PDA Alert Threshold

8.5. Excessive Rate of Descent (GPWS Mode 1)

GPWS Mode 1 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when high rate of descent above terrain. GPWS Mode 1 has a caution and a warning threshold. When below the thresholds, a GPWS Mode 1 caution or warning is generated.

Table 8-3: GPWS Mode 1 Envelope

Sink Rate (fpm)	**AGL Altitude (ft.)**	
	Caution Threshold	**Warning Threshold**
	SINK RATE SINK RATE	PULL UP PULL UP
< 2360	$125\% \times (\text{Sink Rate} - 1416)$	$66\% \times \left(\text{Caution Threshold}\right)$
2360 to 4900	Lesser of: 2450, or, $50\% \times (\text{Sink Rate})$	

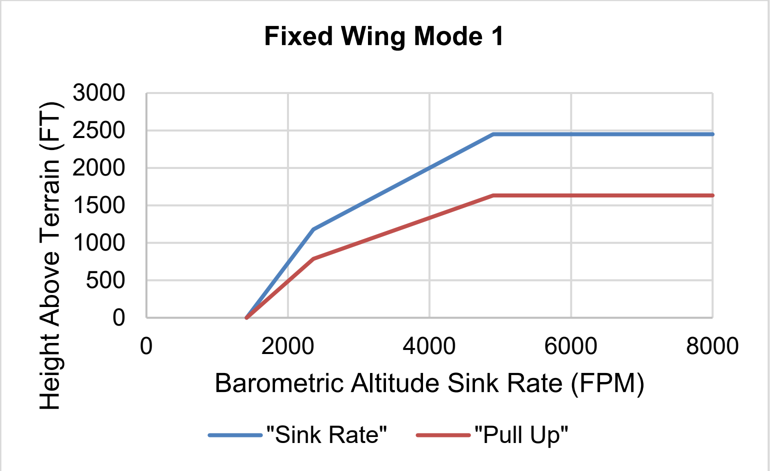


Figure 8-9: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 1

8.6. Excessive Closure Rate to Terrain (GPWS Mode 2)

GPWS Mode 2 function is present in Class A TAWS and uses filtered AGL rate and AGL altitude to alert when hazardously high rate of change over rising terrain. AGL rate filtering is based upon a 10-second sampling time.

There are two Mode 2 envelopes: Mode 2A which is active when not in landing configuration, and Mode 2B which is active when in landing configuration. Envelope selection is determined as follows.

Table 8-4: GPWS Mode 2 Envelopes

Configuration	Mode 2A	Mode 2B
Retractable gear with defined landing flaps position	Flaps NOT in landing configuration	Flaps in landing configuration
Retractable gear	Landing gear UP	Landing gear DOWN
Fixed gear with defined landing flaps position	Flaps NOT in landing configuration	Flaps in landing configuration
Fixed gear	AGL Altitude > 500 ft or Airspeed > $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$	AGL Altitude ≤ 500 ft or Airspeed ≤ $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$

When GPWS Mode 2 envelope is pierced, a GPWS Mode 2 caution or warning is generated.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Table 8-5: GPWS Mode 2A Envelopes (NOT in Landing Configuration)</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="3">AGL Rate (fpm)</th><th colspan="2">AGL Altitude (ft.)</th></tr>
<tr><th>Caution Threshold</th><th>Warning Threshold</th></tr>
<tr><th>TERRAIN TERRAIN</th><th>PULL UP PULL UP</th></tr>
<tr><td>< 3900</td><td>$80\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 2000)$</td><td rowspan="2">$66\% \times \left(\text{Caution Threshold}\right)$</td></tr>
<tr><td>> 3900</td><td>1520 + 15% of the lesser of:
<table><tr><th>Airspeed (KIAS)</th><th>AGL Rate (fpm)</th></tr><tr><td>< 220</td><td>6000</td></tr><tr><td>220 to 300</td><td>$6000 + 50 \times (\text{Airspeed} - 220)$</td></tr><tr><td>> 300</td><td>10,000</td></tr></table>
Or AGL Rate</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table 8-6: GPWS Mode 2B Envelopes (Landing Configuration)</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">AGL Altitude (ft.)</th></tr>
<tr><th>Caution Threshold</th><th>Warning Threshold</th></tr>
<tr><th>TERRAIN TERRAIN</th><th>PULL UP PULL UP</th></tr>
<tr><td>Lesser of:
800 or
$80\% \times (\text{AGL Rate} - 2000)$</td><td>$66\% \times (\text{Caution Threshold})$</td></tr>
</table>

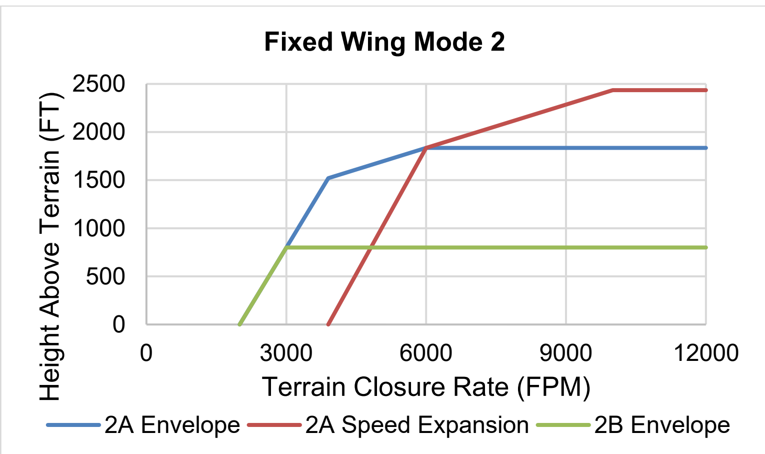


Figure 8-10: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 2

8.7. Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach (GPWS Mode 3)

GPWS Mode 3 function uses aircraft vertical speed information and AGL altitude to alert when sink rate is detected immediately after takeoff or initiation of a missed approach. GPWS Mode 3 is armed by either being in ground mode or on the first leg of a missed approach procedure (as determined by the GPS/SBAS) with distance to the active runway threshold increasing. GPWS Mode 3 is disarmed upon climbing through 700 feet AGL traveling more than 6 NM from the last point at which the ground definition was satisfied (this is near the liftoff point), or transitioning to the second leg of a missed approach procedure. GPWS Mode 3 has a caution threshold based upon height above terrain and vertical speed. When below the caution threshold (AGL threshold = 1.4 x sink rate), a GPWS Mode 3 caution is generated.

Figure 8-11: GPWS Mode 3 Caution (Sink Rate after Takeoff or Missed Approach)

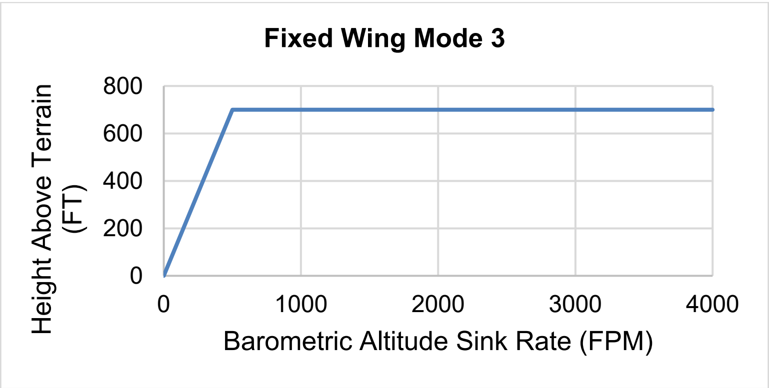


Figure 8-12: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 3

8.8. Flight into Terrain when not in Landing Configuration (GPWS Mode 4)

GPWS Mode 4 function is present in Class A TAWS and uses aircraft speed information and AGL altitude to alert when descending into terrain without properly configuring the aircraft for landing. There are two Mode 4 envelopes: Mode 4A which gives cautions when landing gear is in other than landing configuration, and Mode 4B which gives cautions when landing gear or flaps are in other than landing configuration. Applicability of Mode 4 envelopes to aircraft types are as follows.

Table 8-7: Mode 4 Envelopes		
Configuration	**Mode 4A**	**Mode 4B**
Retractable gear with defined landing flaps position	Landing gear up	Landing gear up or flaps not in landing configuration
Retractable gear	Landing gear up	Landing gear up
Fixed gear with defined landing flaps position	Not Applicable	Flaps not in landing configuration
Fixed gear	Not Applicable	Not Applicable

Mode 4 alerting criteria requires the Mode 4 envelope be entered from above, so changing aircraft configuration while within a Mode 4 envelope does not generate an alert. Mode 4 envelopes consists of low-speed and high-speed regions.

Table 8-8: GPWS Mode 4 Alerting Criteria			
Mode	**Region**	**Caution Flag**	**Single Audible Alert**
4A	Low-Speed	TOO LOW	"Too Low Gear"
	High-Speed		"Too Low Terrain"
4B	Low-Speed	TOO LOW	Landing gear up: "Too Low Gear" Landing gear down: "Too Low Flaps"
	High-Speed		"Too Low Terrain"

Table 8-9: GPWS Mode 4 Parameters			
Mode	**Region**	**Speed (KIAS)**	**AGL Altitude (ft.)**
4A	Low-Speed	< 182.5	500
	High-Speed	≥182.5	Lesser of: 800 or $8 \times (\text{KIAS} - 120)$
4B	Low-Speed	< 138.75	150
	High-Speed	≥ 138.75	Lesser of: 800 or $8 \times (\text{KIAS} - 120)$

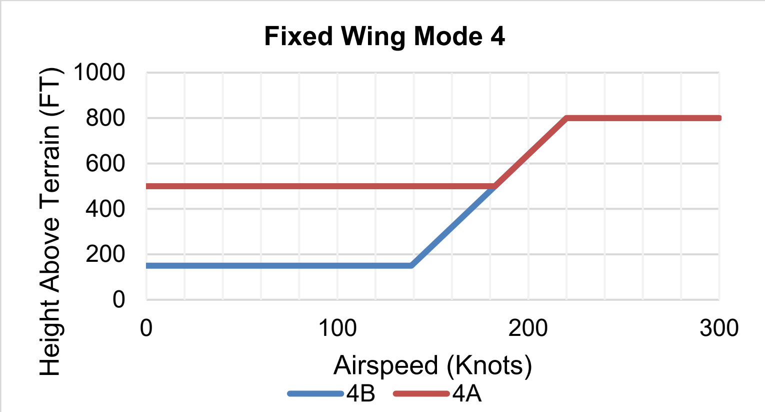


Figure 8-13: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 4

8.9. Excessive Downward Deviation from an ILS Glide Slope (GPWS Mode 5)

GPWS Mode 5 function uses ILS glide slope deviation information and AGL altitude to alert when excessive downward glide slope deviation is detected on the final approach segment of an ILS approach. GPWS Mode 5 is armed when a valid glide slope signal is being received, AND the aircraft is below 1000’ AGL.

GPWS Mode 5 has a caution and a warning threshold. When below a threshold, a GPWS Mode 5 warning is generated. The curve compares glide slope deviation to AGL altitude as follows.

Table 8-10: GPWS Mode 5 Envelopes	
Caution Threshold	**Warning Threshold**
Greater of: $\left[\begin{matrix} 1.3 + 1.4\% \times \\ (150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \end{matrix}\right]$ Dots or 1.3 Dots	Greater of: $\left[\begin{matrix} 2 + 1\% \times \\ (150 - \text{AGL Altitude}) \end{matrix}\right]$ Dots or 2 Dots
GLIDESLOPE GLIDESLOPE	GLIDESLOPE GLIDESLOPE

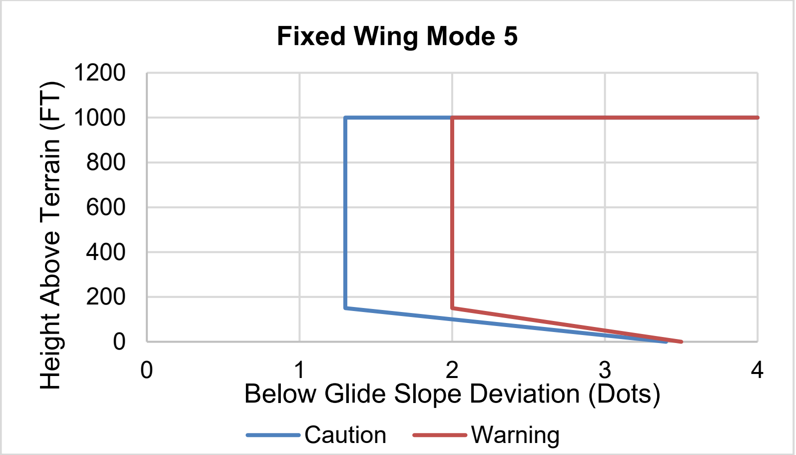


Figure 8-14: Fixed Wing GPWS Mode 5

8.10. 500-Foot Wake-Up Call

This function is present in all TAWS classes. The **500-foot** function includes an arming deadband of **500 feet** to prevent nuisance warnings during low altitude operations. Thus, the aircraft must climb above **1000 feet** AGL to arm the **500-foot** function and generate a **500-foot** annunciation.

8.11. External Sensors and Switches

TAWS requires a variety of inputs from external sensors and switches to perform its functions as follows:

1) **GPS/SBAS Receiver**. Source of aircraft position, geodetic height, horizontal figure of merit (HFOM), vertical figure of merit (VFOM), loss of integrity (LOI), and loss of navigation (LON). Connects directly to the EFIS IDU.

2) **Air Data Computer (ADC)**. Source of barometric altitude, outside air temperature, and vertical speed. Connects directly to the IDU.

3) **ILS Receiver**. Glide slope receiver is the source of glide slope deviation.

4) **Radar Altimeter (RA)**. Source for radar altitude.

5) **Gear Position Sensors**. As configured in the system limits, landing gear position as set in EFIS limits.

6) **Flap Position Sensor**. As configured in the system limits, flap position as set in EFIS limits.

7) **TAWS Inhibit Switch**. As configured in the system limits, used for manual inhibiting of TAWS alerting functions. Gives an indication of actuation (e.g., toggle/rocker or pushbutton with indicator light and TAWS INHBT in lower left corner of the PFD).

8) **Audio Mute Switch**. Momentarily activated to silence active audible alerts. It is connected directly to the IDU.

9) **Glide Slope Deactivate Switch**. As configured in the system limits, momentarily activated to inhibit GPWS Mode 5 function.

Table 8-11: TAWS External Sensors and Switches

TAWS Class	A				B or C
Configuration	**RG+F**	**RG**	**FG+F**	**FG**	
GPS/SBAS	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ADC	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Gear Position Sensor	✓	✓			
TAWS Inhibit Switch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Audio Cancel Switch	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
ILS	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Radar Altimeter	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Flap Position Sensor	✓		✓		
Glide Slope Deactivate Switch	✓	✓	✓	✓	

8.12. TAWS Basic Parameter Determination

Fundamental parameters used for TAWS functions are as follows.

Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination

Parameter	Source	Notes
Aircraft position, ground speed, and track	GPS/SBAS	HFOM must be less than or equal to the greater of 0.3 NM or the Horizontal alert limit (HAL) for the mode of flight.
MSL Altitude	GPS/SBAS	Geodetic Height converted to MSL with the current EGM database. To be considered valid for use as MSL altitude, VFOM must be less than or equal to 106 feet.

Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination		
Parameter	**Source**	**Notes**
		Secondary source of MSL altitude is barometric altitude from an air data computer. Barometric altitude is based upon a barometric setting in the following order of preference: 1) If either the pilot or co-pilot system is operating in QNH mode, the QNH barometric setting is used (on-side barometric setting preferred); or 2) If GPS/SBAS geodetic height has been valid within the last 30 minutes, a barometric setting derived from the GPS/SBAS geodetic height is used. If neither of the above conditions are met, MSL altitude is marked as invalid. When a reporting station elevation is determined and outside air temperature is valid, a temperature correction is applied. TAWS uses the lower of the barometric altitude or the temperature-corrected altitude. In the case of QNH-mode barometric setting, reporting station elevation is derived from waypoint or active runway elevations in the active flight plan using the following logic: 1) If the aircraft is in **TERMINAL**, **DEPARTURE**, **IFR APPROACH**, or **VFR APPROACH** mode and an active runway exists, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the active runway threshold.

Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination		
Parameter	**Source**	**Notes**
		2) Otherwise, if the aircraft is in **TERMINAL** mode, reporting station elevation is the elevation of the airport causing **TERMINAL** mode. 3) In **ENROUTE** mode, no reporting station elevation is determined. In the case of GPS/SBAS geodetic height-based barometric setting, reporting station elevation is the GPS MSL altitude reported at the time the barometric setting was determined (see Section 3 Display Symbology).
Terrain Data	Terrain Database	To be considered valid, the following must apply: 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the terrain database; and 3) Terrain database is not corrupt as determined by built-in test at system initialization and during runtime.
Obstacle Data	Obstacle Database	To be considered valid, the following must apply: 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the obstacle database; and 3) Obstacle database is not corrupt as determined by built-in test at system initialization.
AGL Altitude	Radar Altitude	Secondary source is MSL altitude less terrain altitude.
Vertical Speed	Instantaneous vertical speed	IVSI values come from barometric vertical speed from an ADC “quickened” with vertical acceleration from an AHRS.

Table 8-12: Airplane TAWS Basic Parameters Determination

Parameter	Source	Notes
		Secondary source for vertical speed is barometric vertical speed from an ADC. The tertiary source for vertical speed is GPS/SBAS vertical speed providing the VFOM is less than or equal to 106 feet.
Terrain Closure Rate	Smoothed first derivative of AGL Altitude	Due to multiple sources for altitude, there are multiple sources for terrain closure rate.
Runway/ Reference point location	EFIS navigation database	To be considered valid, the following must apply: 1) Aircraft position is valid; 2) Aircraft position is within the boundaries of the navigation database; and 3) Navigation database is not determined corrupt by built-in test at system initialization.

8.13. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Normal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during normal TAWS operation to prevent nuisance warnings:

1) FLTA function is automatically inhibited when in terminal, departure, IFR approach, or VFR approach modes and within 2NM and 1900’ of the reference point.

2) PDA function is automatically inhibited when within 2NM and 1900’ of the approach runway threshold.

3) GPWS Modes 1 through 4 are automatically inhibited when below 50 feet AGL (radar altimeter AGL altitude) or below 100 feet AGL (terrain database AGL altitude).

4) GPWS Mode 4 is inhibited while Mode 3 is armed.

5) GPWS Mode 5 is inhibited below 200’ AGL. This form of automatic inhibit remains active until the aircraft climbs above 1000’ AGL and prevents nuisance alarms on missed approach when the glide slope receiver detects glide slope sidelobes.

8.13.1. TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions (Abnormal Operation)

The following automatic inhibit functions occur during the specified abnormal operations. System sensor failures, non-installation of optional sensors, database failures, and combinations thereof affect TAWS as follows.

Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions

Sensor	Parameters Lost	Terrain Displaced	FLTA	PDA	GPWS Mode					500' Wake-Up
					1	2	3	4	5	
GPS/SBAS (H)	AC Position	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit						
TD	Terrain Elev.	Inhibit	Inhibit							
ILS	Glide Slope Dev.								Inhibit	
MSL	MSL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit						
GPS/SBAS (H) + RADLT	AC Position, AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit
GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC	MSL Altitude, VSI	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit		Inhibit			
TD + RADLT	Terrain Elev. AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit		Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit

Table 8-13: TAWS Automatic Inhibit Functions

Sensor	Parameters Lost	Terrain Displaced	FLTA	PDA	GPWS Mode 1	GPWS Mode 2	GPWS Mode 3	GPWS Mode 4	GPWS Mode 5	500' Wake-Up
MSL + RADLT	MSL Altitude, AGL Altitude	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit
GPS/SBAS (V) + ADC + RADLT	MSL Altitude, VSI, AGL ALT	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit	Inhibit

Notes:

1) Combinations listed give the minimum combinations with the worst consequences. Many other combinations are possible, but their effects are subsumed within the combinations listed.

2) GPS/SBAS (H) = HFOM > max (0.3NM, HAL). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.

3) GPS/SBAS (V) = VFOM > 106'.

4) GPS/SBAS = GPS/SBAS (H) + GPS/SBAS (V). Indication is loss of terrain display on PFD and ND.

5) TD = Terrain Data invalid. This is due to being beyond the database boundaries or database corruption.

6) ADC = Air Data Computer. Indication is ADC1 FAIL or ADC2 FAIL, or ADC1/2 FAIL flag, or red Xs indicating a single ADC failure.

7) RADALT = Radar Altimeter. Indication is lack of radar altimeter source indication on radar altimeter display. RALT FAIL, 1 RALT FAIL, 2 RALT FAIL, 1-2 RALT FAIL

8) ILS = ILS glide slope deviation. Indication is lack of glide slope pointers.

9) MSL = MSL altitude invalid. Indication is PLT1 TAWS / PLT2 TAWS / PLT3 TAWS / PLT4 TAWS or CPLT1 TAWS / CPLT2 TAWS / CPLT3 TAWS / CPLT4 TAWS in the absence of other failures.

8.13.2. TAWS Manual Inhibit Functions

The pilot may select the following manual inhibit functions:

1) Terrain display function may be inhibited using EFIS soft menu declutter control.

2) All TAWS alerting functions (including popup functionality) are inhibited with the external TAWS inhibit switch, which does not affect the terrain display function, including display of FLTA warning (red) and caution (amber [yellow]) flags on the ND.

3) GPWS Mode 5 is manually inhibited with the glide slope cancel switch when below 1000’ AGL. GPWS Mode 5 manual inhibit automatically resets by ascending above 1000’AGL.

8.14. TAWS Selections on PFD

PFD Declutter menu includes three option possibilities for TAWS:

1) SVS TAWS

2) SVS BASIC

3) None

The following figures show all possible scenarios including “None” where the aircraft pierces the TAWS FLTA terrain envelope, and SVS TAWS is enabled for the safest possible warning alert condition.

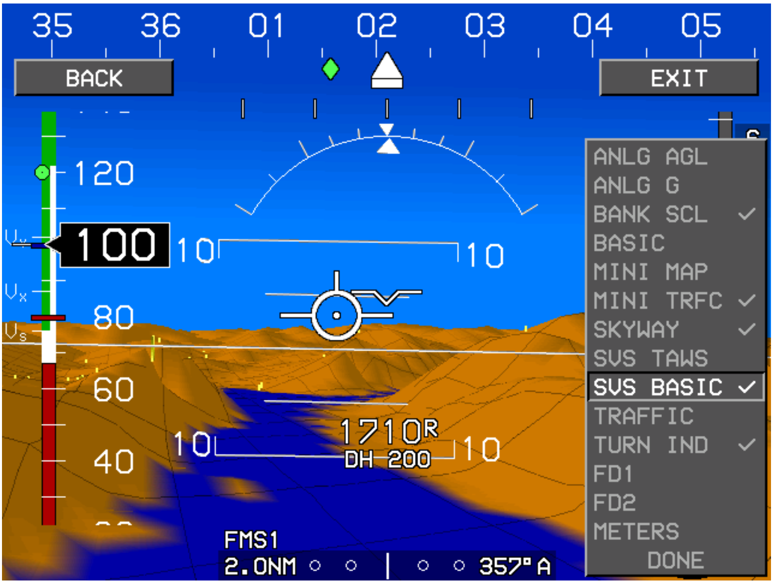
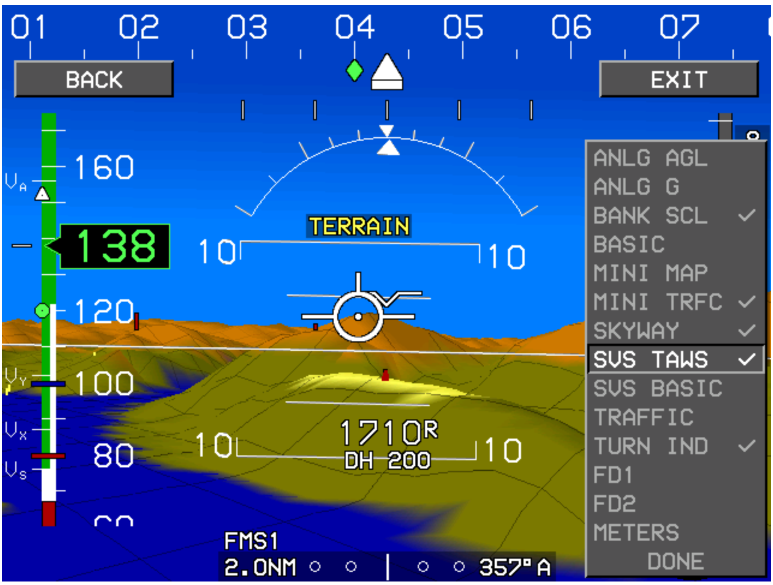


Figure 8-15: PFD SVS BASIC Option



TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain: Amber (Yellow)
TAWS FLTA Caution Warning: Red

Figure 8-16: PFD SVS TAWS Option

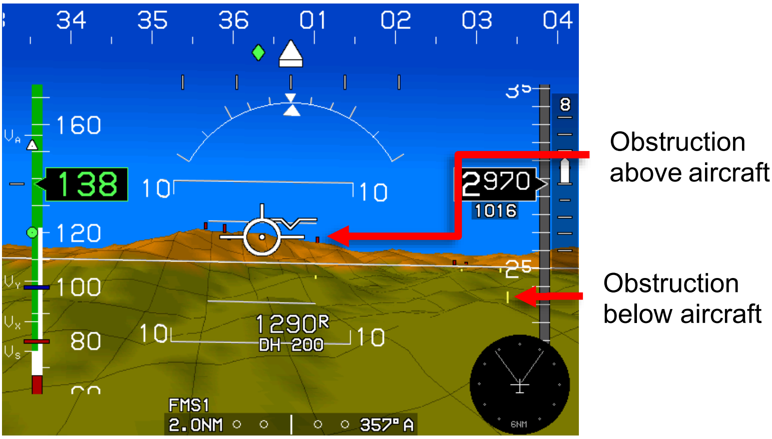
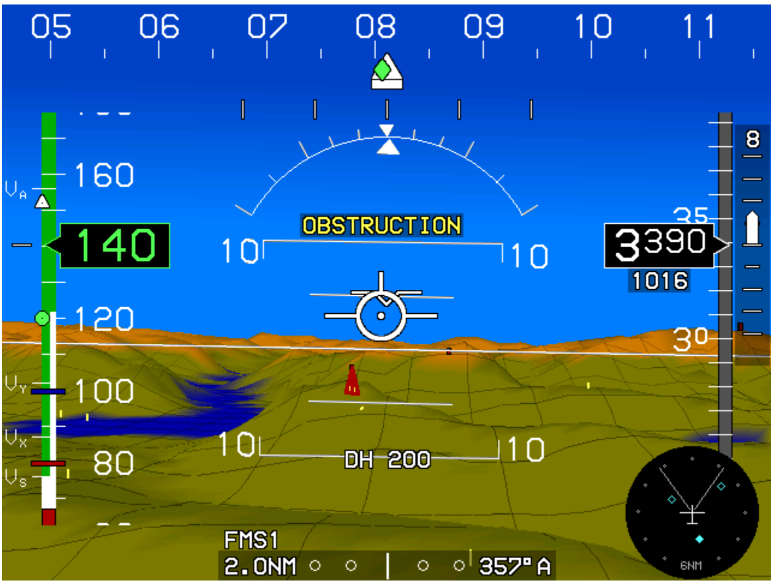
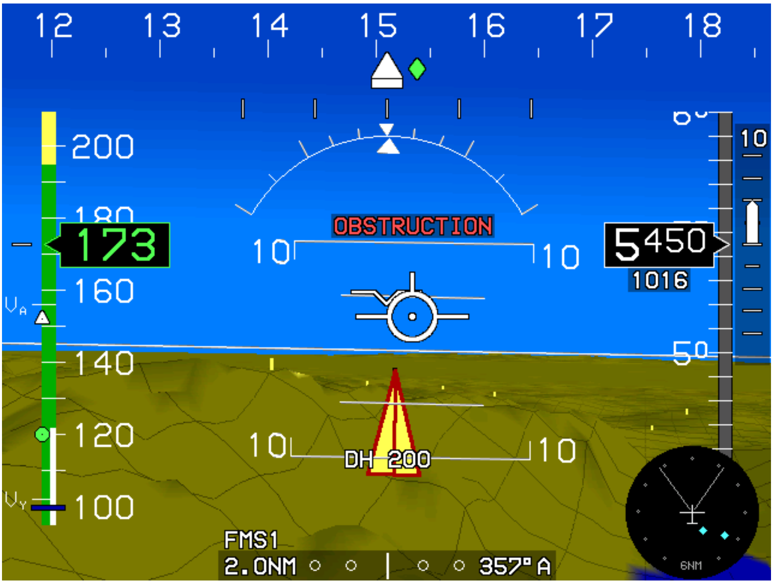


Figure 8-17: PFD SVS TAWS Option and Obstructions



Obstruction within TAWS FLTA Caution envelope with voice alert "Caution Obstruction, Caution Obstruction." Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-18: PFD Obstruction Caution



Obstruction within TAWS FLTA warning envelope with voice alert “Warning Obstruction, Warning Obstruction.” Obstruction symbols flash.

Figure 8-19: PFD Obstruction Warning

Section 9 Appendix

9.1. Appendix

This section contains a variety of useful information not found elsewhere in the document and includes operating tips, system specifications, feedback forms, and environmental requirements.

9.2. Operating Tips

With the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS installed and certified in all categories of certified aircraft, numerous tips and suggestions are available for obtaining the maximum performance and benefit from this system. Additional operating tips are available with future releases of this publication.

9.3. Domestic or International Flight Planning

Due to the differences in every aircraft avionics suite installation, the pilot must determine what equipment code is applicable for domestic or international flight plans. The aircraft operator must determine which certifications pertain to them. Visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, for flight plan guidance for both domestic and international filers, as well as, information and documentation regarding FAA, ICAO, and Flight Services agreements and procedures.

9.4. Descent Planning

Instead of performing conventional time/speed/distance/descent-rate calculations, use the waypoint symbol for descent planning. Simply maintain the cruise altitude until the “X” at the bottom of the waypoint symbol is 2-3 degrees below the horizon (as indicated by the pitch scale) then begin a 2-3 degree descent. Maintain the correct descent angle by keeping the flight path marker positioned on the waypoint “X” symbol. Following the skyway boxes assures the VNAV descent angle is maintained.

9.5. Terrain Clearance

Use the flight path marker to evaluate climb performance for terrain clearance. If climbing at the best climb speed to clear terrain and the flight path marker is overlaying the terrain, the climb rate is insufficient. Either the course or climb rate must be altered to adequately clear the terrain. If the flight path marker is well clear of the terrain (overlaying blue sky), the climb is sufficient for the present time, and no further action is necessary until level off.

9.6. Departure Airport Information

On startup, all information for the departure airport is readily available. The altimeter is automatically set to the nearest IFR runway touchdown zone elevation (if Baro Autosetting on Startup is enabled in EFIS limits). Press **NRST (R3)** to reveal the nearest airports when highlighted where all important data such as elevation, frequencies, and runway lengths are displayed.

9.7. Unique Names for Flight Plans

Multiple routes between the same airport pairs are numbered automatically (KCEW-KDHN) [0], (KCEW-KDHN) [1], etc.). The work-around is to apply this easily remembered differentiation. If a route is routinely flown from one airport to another but different routing is necessary due to weather, hot MOA areas, etc., up to 10 different flight plans may be created for the same destination.

As an example for departing Sikes on a northern routing (KCEWN) or a southern routing (KCEWS), create two different user waypoints at the departure airport named KCEWN and KCEWS followed by different routing to clear whatever creates the necessity for specific routing, e.g. a MOA.

9.8. Altimeter Settings

Use caution when setting the altimeter and inadvertently changing the transition level. If this is reset to a lower than normal altitude, CHK BARO may appear due to the altimeter setting not on 29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar.

9.9. Warnings, Cautions, and Advisories

Review Section 2 System Overview for the conditions precisely defining scenarios for various time-critical warning alerts, warning alerts, master visual and audio alerts, time-critical caution alerts and advisory alerts, as they appear including the conditions and time delay when applicable.

9.10. Magnetic vs. True North Modes of Operation

There are two modes for the AHRS:

1) Slaved mode (i.e., compass rose stabilized by Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field) is the normal mode. It works well over most of the surface of the earth (i.e., areas with a horizontal field of 5000nT or above, which includes about 2/3^{rds} of Canadian NDA). ADAHRS senses magnetic flux with a 3D magnetometer. Performance in small

horizontal fields is installation dependent as variable magnetic disturbances from the aircraft may begin to predominate.

2) Free or “DG” mode (i.e., compass rose not stabilized by the Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field and subject to drift) is used in areas of magnetic disturbances (oilrigs, MRI machines, etc.) or in areas where the horizontal field is too weak. In Free/”DG” mode, heading no longer corrects towards Earth’s magnetic flux horizontal field, and the user may “slew” the heading solution.

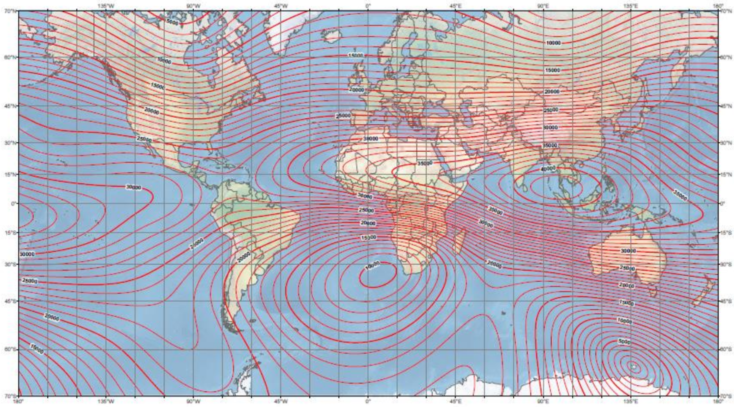


Figure 9-1: US/UK World Magnetic Model

There are two modes for the EFIS:

1) Magnetic North mode: Heading from AHRS (whether slaved or Free/”DG”) is used as-is and is expected to reflect magnetic north. GPS track is converted from true north-referenced to magnetic north-referenced with a magnetic variation database. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with magnetic north. Wind is displayed referenced to magnetic north.

2) True North mode: GPS track is used as-is and reflects true north. When AHRS is in slaved mode, heading from AHRS is converted from magnetic north-referenced to true north-referenced using a magnetic variation database. When AHRS is in Free/”DG” mode, heading from the AHRS is used as-is and is expected to reflect true north. PFD scenes and compass rose symbols are aligned with true north. Wind is displayed referenced to true north.

NOTE:

Designating magnetic north vs. true north mode is critical since it determines how the inputs are used, i.e., the relationship between GPS track and ADAHRS heading. Mixing things up in Free/"DG" mode (i.e., slewing the compass rose to match magnetic north when in true north mode and vice-versa) may result in large errors in wind calculations and GPS track/flight path marker displays.

9.11. Altitude Miscompare Threshold

The altitude miscompare threshold is based upon allowable altitude error. There are two components to allowable altitude error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 1 as follows.

Table 9-1: Allowable Instrument Error

Altitude	Allowed Error
Sea Level	25’
1,000’	25’
2,000’	25’
3,000’	25’
4,000’	25’
5,000’	25’
8,000’	30’
11,000’	35’
14,000’	40’
17,000’	45’
20,000’	50’
30,000’	75’
40,000’	100’
50,000’	125’

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.

Table 9-2: Regulatory Reference

Regulation	Allowed Error
14 CFR § 23.1325	At sea level, the greater of 30’ or 30% of the calibrated airspeed in knots. This increases proportionally to SAE AS8002A Table 1 at higher altitudes.
14 CFR § 25.1325	

An allowable altitude error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the altitude miscompare threshold. This accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

Worked example for a calibrated airspeed of 100 knots and comparing a first altitude of 3,490’ with a second altitude of 3,510’:

1) Calculate allowable instrument error based upon altitudes:
Allowable Instrument Error #1 = 50’
Allowable Instrument Error #2 = 50’

2) Calculate allowable installed system error based upon altitudes and calibrated airspeed:
Allowable Installed System Error #1 = 30’
Allowable Installed System Error #2 = 30’

3) Calculate altitude miscompare threshold based upon sum of above allowable errors:
Altitude Miscompare Threshold = 160’

9.12. Airspeed Miscompare Threshold

Airspeed miscompare threshold is based upon allowable airspeed error. There are two components to allowable airspeed error, instrument error and installed system error. Allowable instrument error is based upon the values of SAE AS8002A Table 3 as follows.

Table 9-3: Airspeed Error

Calibrated Airspeed	Allowed Error
50 knots	5 knots
80 knots	3 knots
100 knots	2 knots
120 knots	2 knots
150 knots	2 knots
200 knots	2 knots
250 knots	2.4 knots
300 knots	2.8 knots
350 knots	3.2 knots
400 knots	3.6 knots
450 knots	4 knots

Allowable installed system error is added on top of instrument. Error and these values are derived from the regulations as follows.

Table 9-4: Airspeed Regulatory Reference

Regulation	Allowed Error
14 CFR § 23.1323	Starting from (1.3 x $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$): Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (1.3 x $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$).
14 CFR § 25.1323	Starting from (1.23 x $\mathbf{V_{SR1}}$): Greater of 5 knots or 3%. Do not perform a comparison if either value is below (1.23 x $\mathbf{V_{SR1}}$). System uses $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ as a substitute for $\mathbf{V_{SR1}}$.

An allowable airspeed error is computed for each compared value and added together to create the airspeed miscompare threshold and accommodates for the values deviating in different directions.

9.13. Jeppesen Sanderson NavData® Chart Compatibility

As GPS navigation, flight management systems, computer flight maps, and computer flight planning systems have gained acceptance, avionics companies and software developers have added more features. Even with the many systems available today, paper enroute, departure, arrival, and approach charts are still required and necessary for flight. Avionics systems, flight planning, computer mapping systems, and associated databases *do not* provide all of the navigation information needed to conduct a legal and safe flight. They are not a substitute for current aeronautical charts.

See www.Jeppesen.com for the latest information on coding instrument procedures, naming conventions, altitudes within the database, and aeronautical information compatibility.

9.14. ARINC 424 Path-Terminator Leg Types

For information, definitions, and examples, visit the FAA website, www.faa.gov, to view the Instrument Procedures Handbook (FAA-H-8083-16A).

9.15. Data Logging and Retrieval

The EFIS logs all data associated with a flight, including all flight instrument and navigation data, which may be downloaded for review after flight. Data from the last 5 flights or 20 hours are logged at a one-second interval.

Data logging files contain recordings of flight and engine parameters of up to five hours each from the previous five system operations. During system operation, flight and engine parameters are recorded every one second.

Each time the parameters are recorded, a Zulu time stamp followed by three lines of comma delimited ASCII text data are written where the first line contains flight parameters and, the second line contains engine parameters.

With IDU powered off, open USB door, and insert USB flash drive. Power up and select `Download LOG Files` to create a "\log" directory on the USB flash drive and copy the data logging files into the directory.

CAUTION:

Always install a valid USB flash drive in the IDU prior to activating any ground maintenance function to avoid erroneous failure indications or corruption of the IDU.

9.15.1. Delete Log Files

1) If there are problems updating a navigation database or application software due to an excessively large log file, select "Delete Log Files" to delete all log files in the log directory.

   Files named "LOG00.dat" thru "LOG04.DAT" and "MSGLOG.DAT" are deleted. This does not affect operations of the EFIS, as the EFIS generates new "LOG00.DAT" and "MSGLOG.DAT" files once a flight has started.

2) Press any button on the IDU or push ❶ to return to the ground maintenance menu.

9.15.2. Logged Flags and Custom CAS Messages

Flags and custom CAS messages are logged in memory to a file named "caslog00.csv" (*.csv files may be opened in Microsoft Excel or similar spreadsheet software). In addition, data from the previous four flights are saved in files "caslog01.csv" through "caslog04.csv." Upon system start, the existing "caslog00.csv" through "caslog03.csv" files are renamed "caslog01.csv" through "caslog04.csv," and "caslog00.csv" is opened for active logging.

The first line of the log files contains column headings related to the flag's text (for standard warning functions) or the "CAS Log File Text" parameter (for custom CAS messages). All standard warning functions are logged. Only custom CAS messages with valid "CAS Log File Text" parameters (i.e., not an empty string) are logged. Within the data fields of the log file, values are written as follows.

Table 9-5: Log File Values	
Category	**Value**
NORMAL	0
ADVISORY	1
CAUTION	2
WARNING	3

9.16. Routes and Waypoints

9.16.1. VFR Flight Planning

The navigation database includes VFR waypoints, which consist of five digits beginning with "VP." These may be found on VFR charts and should be loaded in the FMS prior to flight to ensure they are available in the database, and info checked for proper location.

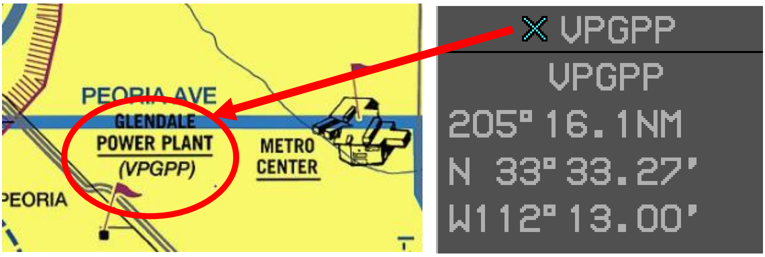


Figure 9-2: VFR Waypoint

9.16.2. Download Routes and User Waypoints

1) Select `Download Routes and User Waypoints` from the GMF page to download all routes and user waypoints stored in the IDU to the USB flash drive. This option is useful for fleet operations where multiple aircraft fly the same routes.

2) Routes are stored on USB flash drive as NAME1-NAME2.RTE where NAME1 is the 1- to 5-character designation of the origin waypoint and NAME2 is the 1 to 5-character designation of the destination waypoint. User waypoints are stored on the USB flash drive as "USER.DAT."

9.16.3. Upload Routes and User Waypoints

To copy all routes and user waypoints from a USB flash drive to the IDU, select `Upload Routes and User Waypoints` from GMF page. Use this option in conjunction with the "Download Routes and User Waypoints" option to upload the same routes and user waypoints in multiple aircraft.

9.16.4. Delete Routes and User Waypoints

When corrupted routes cause the IDU to continually reboot, select “Delete Routes” on the Ground Maintenance page to remove all routes and the user waypoint file (USER.DAT) from the IDU.

9.16.5. EFIS Training Tool (ETT)

See the Installation and User Guide distributed with the ETT install files for directions to install and use the EFIS Training Tool.

Use the ETT to create routes and user waypoints to save and upload into the aircraft mounted IDUs. When uploading a saved flight plan (route) into an aircraft mounted IDU, the following rules apply:

1) Either upload flight plan (route) into each IDU to ensure flight plan (route) is saved in the route directory (all other displays); or

2) Upload flight plan (route) into one display while in the ground mode. When in flight mode, activate that flight plan, and on any other display, view active flight plan and press **SAVE (L1)** to save flight plan in the route directory. This action saves the new uploaded flight plan (route) in all other displays.

NOTE:

In a two-sided system, crossfill must be enabled to save flight plan to all other displays on each side of the system.

The ETT has a bezel with simulated buttons and knobs responsive to mouse and keyboard messages. Bezel graphics are derived from actual bezel design data, and the ETT presents an active display with 1:1 pixel correspondence to an actual IDU display. The audio output capability for the ETT matches the audio functionality in the actual IDU. This training tool simulates the functionalities of the IDU, which begins flight in Reno, Nevada at approximately 8000’ MSL. If different ETT startup conditions are required, they may be edited.

Flight plans may be created (on the PFD or MFD), stored, and activated in the same manner as on the EFIS displays installed in the aircraft. This allows for moving the start point to anywhere in the world where loaded NavData® is present for practicing published procedures. As with the demonstrator program, the aircraft begins flying at approximately 8000’ MSL (unless the simulate.ini program is loaded) intercepting the first leg at a 45° angle.

9.17. USB Flash Drive Memory Limitations

When powering up the IDU with a USB flash drive inserted and “Error: No updater files found on USB drive” displays, the USB flash drive is likely not acceptable for loading or transferring data.

1) Ensure the USB flash drive with required files is properly connected.
2) Try again after reboot.
3) Press any button to continue.
4) Try a different USB flash drive.

NOTE:

USB flash drive must be formatted as FAT16 or FAT32.

If the flash drive is not recognized, try another source.

9.18. Pilot Guide Printing Guidelines

Printed pilot guides are encouraged and available from Genesys Aerosystems. To print copies from the provided PDF, please consider the following guidelines for the best quality.

9.18.1. Pilot Guides

1) Binder
    a) Size: 2" Angle D 3-ring to fit 5.5 x 8.5" sheets
    b) White suede vinyl reinforced outside view, with clear sleeves front, spine, and back
2) Front Cover, Back Cover, Spine
    a) Paper: 28# Opaque
    b) Ink: 4/0
3) Master Tabs
    a) Size: 6x8.5"
    b) Paper: 111# Gloss Cover
    c) Ink: black 2-sided

d) Bindery: Trim, die cut, lamination 5 mil 2-sided non-sealed tab and spine reinforcing, 3-hole 0.310" holes

4) Text Pages

a) Paper: 28# opaque, double-sided

b) Ink: 4/4

c) Bindery: 3-hole 0.310" holes

9.18.2. Quick Reference Guides

1) Text Pages

a) Size: 5.5x8.5” double-sided

b) Paper: 100# text, no lamination

c) Ink: 4/4

2) Front Cover/Back Cover

a) Size, 5.5x8.5"

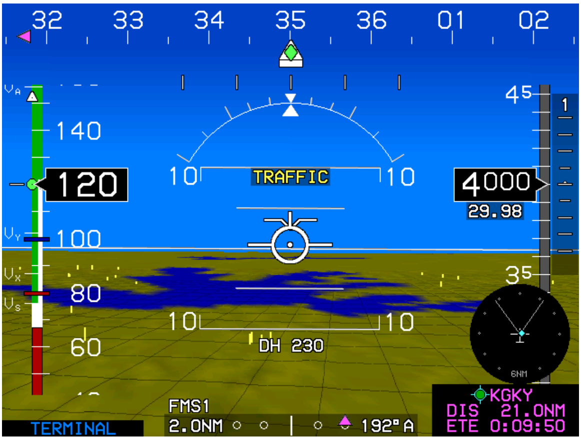
b) Paper: 100# gloss cover

c) Ink: 4/4

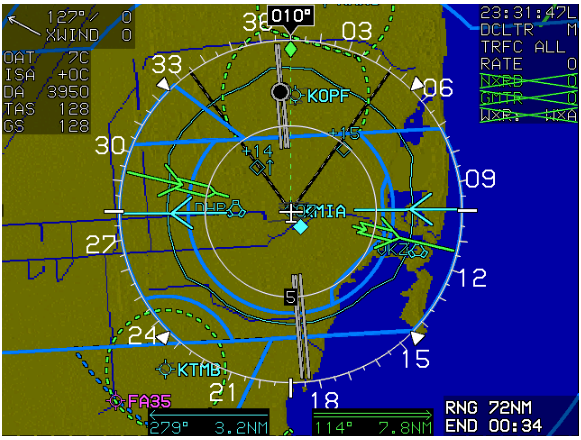
d) Bindery: Lamination 5 mil 2-sided non-sealed edge, trim black, Wire-O bind on 8.5” side

Traffic

T 1. Traffic Symbology



PFD



MFD

Figure T-1: Traffic Symbology

T 1.1. Traffic Display Definitions

1) Resolution Advisory (**RA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach and generates climb or descent commands as defined by internal TCAS-II sensor logic.

2) Traffic Advisory (**TA**): Traffic with a dangerous closest point of approach as defined by internal traffic sensor logic.

3) Proximate Advisory (**PA**): Traffic within 6 NM and ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

4) Other Traffic (**OT**): Traffic beyond 6 NM or ±1200 feet from ownship that is not a RA or TA.

T 1.2. Traffic Rendering Rules

Table T-1: Traffic Rendering Rules

Type Traffic	Distance	Results
OT and PA Traffic	Beyond 6 NM	Not displayed
TCAS-I, TCAS-II, TAS or TIS-A Sensor	Within 200’ of ground	

Table T-2: Traffic Symbology

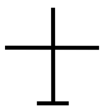
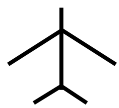
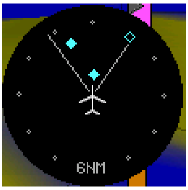
Type Traffic	Symbology			
TCAS-I, TCAS-II, and TIS-A				
	Other Traffic	Proximate Advisory	Traffic Advisory (Flashing)	Resolution Advisory (Flashing)
Ownship Symbol	**Airplane w/o M_{MO}** 		**Airplane with M_{MO}** 	

Table T-3: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude-Filter

Mode	Parameter
AUTO	If aircraft VSI is less than -500 fpm, traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. If aircraft VSI is more than +500 fpm, traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed. Otherwise, traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
ABOVE	Traffic within -2,700 and +9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
BELOW	Traffic within +2,700 and -9,900 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.

Table T-3: Pilot Selected OT and PA Traffic Altitude-Filter	
Mode	**Parameter**
NORMAL	Traffic within -2,700 and +2,700 feet of aircraft altitude displayed.
ALL	All received traffic displayed, no altitude filtering.

T 1.3. Traffic Thumbnail



When selected from declutter options, the traffic thumbnail is displayed in the lower right corner of the PFD above the active waypoint identifier and has clock face markings fixed at the 6 NM scale.

Figure T-2: Traffic Thumbnail

The traffic thumbnail is automatically enabled while there is an active traffic warning (TA or RA) and the aircraft is above 500' AGL. During a traffic warning, the traffic thumbnail scale automatically adjusts in multiple multiples of 2 NM (2 NM, 4NM, or 6NM) to optimally display the traffic. While the traffic thumbnail is mutually exclusive with the MINI MAP, ANLG AGL, and ANLG G so it too disappears in the unusual attitude mode.

T 2. TCAS-II Traffic RA indicator

Figure T-3: TCAS-II RA Indication

When TCAS-II is enabled, the background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red colored regions for resolution advisory guidance.

T 3. Dedicated Traffic Page

When selected, a traffic page is available based roughly on the appearance of a TCAS display and has the following elements.

T 3.1. MFD Page Menu

TRAFFIC: Shows the Traffic page.

T 3.2. Traffic Display Format

The traffic display uses a centered display format with the ownship symbol (Table T-2) centered in the traffic page with data displayed out to an equal distance in all directions. When the AHRS is in DG Mode, "DG" appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

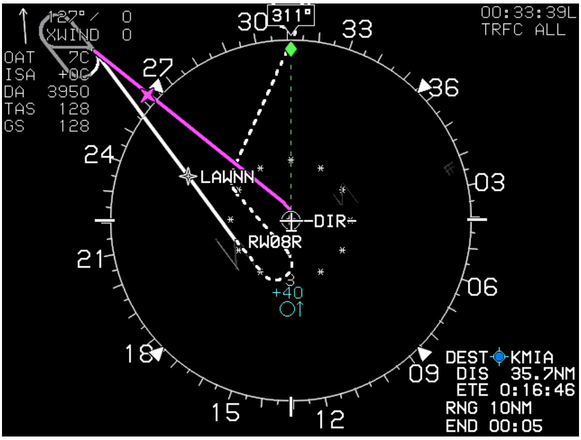


Figure T-4: Traffic Display Format

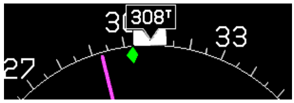
T 3.3. Traffic Page Screen Range

Screen ranges are available (all distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the compass rose): 5NM, 10NM, and 20NM. A TCAS range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols with a 3NM radius in 5NM and 10NM ranges, has a radius of half the range in 20NM, 50NM, and 100NM ranges, and is presented on the TCAS range ring (e.g., 3NM, 10NM, 25NM, or 50NM).

T 3.4. Compass Rose Symbols

The compass rose is aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. A digital heading readout and pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the compass rose boundary circle. Compass rose symbols are as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

Normal Mode



True North Mode

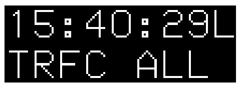
Figure T-5: Traffic Page Compass Rose Symbols

If a target altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). A top of descent symbol is shown at the point where a VNAV descent is predicted to commence. The track pointer, lubber line, altitude capture predictor arc, and top of descent symbol are not displayed when ground speed is less than 30 knots. A pilot-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the compass rose. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer is displayed on the heading scale at a point corresponding with the active waypoint and turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution.

T 3.5. Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of traffic page.

Zulu Time



Local Time

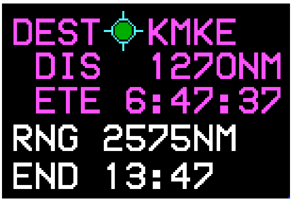
Figure T-6: Clock and Options

Table T-4: Clock and Options

Feature	Options	Notes
Zulu Time or Local Offset	**hh:mm:ssZ** **hh:mm:ssL**	Synchronized with GPS/SBAS constellation
Traffic Status	Enabled or Disabled	If traffic is disabled, overlying red “X”. When enabled, traffic altitude filtering is as follows (see Table T-3). AUTO = **TRFC AUTO** ABOVE = **TRFC ABV** BELOW = **TRFC BLW** NORMAL = **TRFC NORM** ALL = **TRFC ALL**

Table T-4: Clock and Options		
Feature	**Options**	**Notes**
ADS-B Traffic Vector Length		Length of traffic vector annunciated as VECT## (traffic vector length in minutes)

T 3.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions



As defined in Section 3 Display Symbology.

Figure T-7: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

T 3.7. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/ SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta and turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The traffic page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

When traffic source is ADS-B, traffic vectors and aircraft identification data are shown. The traffic vector is a line connecting the traffic's current position with the predicted position based on its current track and ground speed. The prediction time, in minutes, is pilot-selectable. Aircraft identification (e.g. aircraft registration number or scheduled airline flight number) is text located near the traffic symbol in the same color as the traffic symbol.

Table T-5: ADS-B and TIS-B Traffic Symbols			
	Other Traffic	**Proximate Advisory**	**Traffic Advisory (Flashing)**
High-Integrity Traffic with Track Information			
High-Integrity Traffic without Track Information			
Degraded Position Traffic with Track Information			
Degraded Position Traffic without Track Information			

T 4. OASIS Traffic Page Overlays

Up to eight symbology OASIS traffic overlays are possible to appear on top of all other traffic symbology but below CAS warnings.

T 5. MFD Fault Display (FAULTS) (L1) Menu

If traffic enabled, loss of communications with traffic sensor (TRFC) is annunciated with TRAFFIC with an overlying red "X."

T 6. MFD Traffic Format

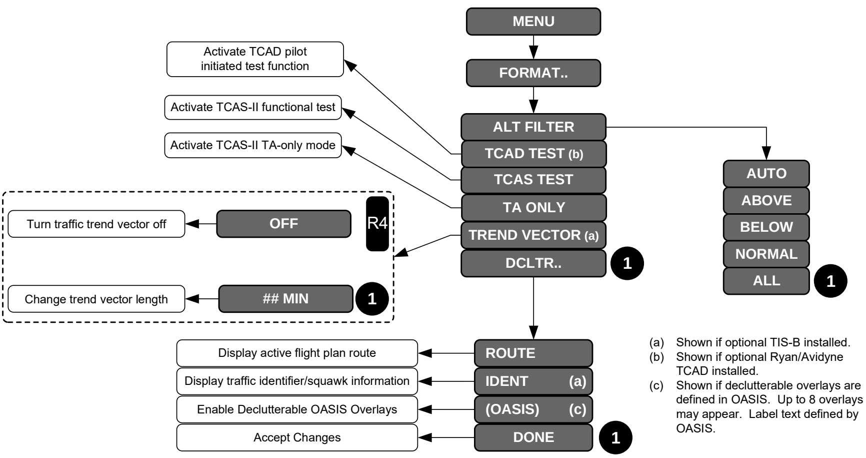


Figure T-8: MFD Traffic Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu, **FORMAT.. (R4)**, a list appears with the following options:

1) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.
2) **IDENT OFF/IDENT ON**: When EFIS is configured for TIS-B, toggles traffic identifier/squawk information.
3) **ALT FILTER**: Sets traffic altitude filter to **AUTO**, **ABOVE**, **BELOW**, **NORMAL**, or **ALL**.
4) **TCAD TEST**: Activates test function when Ryan/Avidyne TCAD.
5) **TREND VECTOR**: When TCAS flag is TIS-B, sets traffic trend vector length in minutes. **OFF (R4)** turns off traffic trend vector.
6) **DCLTR**: Activates an option list allowing the user to individually toggle display of:
   a) Active flight plan route; and
   b) Traffic target identifiers/squawk information

T 7. PFD Declutter (DCLTR) (R4) Menu

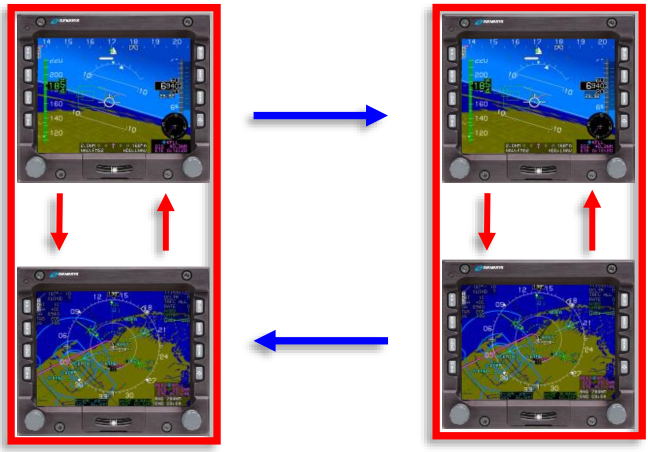
Upon activating the PFD declutter menu, an option list of declutter items is shown.

Table T-6: PFD Declutter Options and Features

Declutter Options	Configuration	
	Tapes	Basic
PFD Traffic Thumbnail	✓	✓
Perspective Traffic Depiction	✓	

T 8. Menu Synchronization

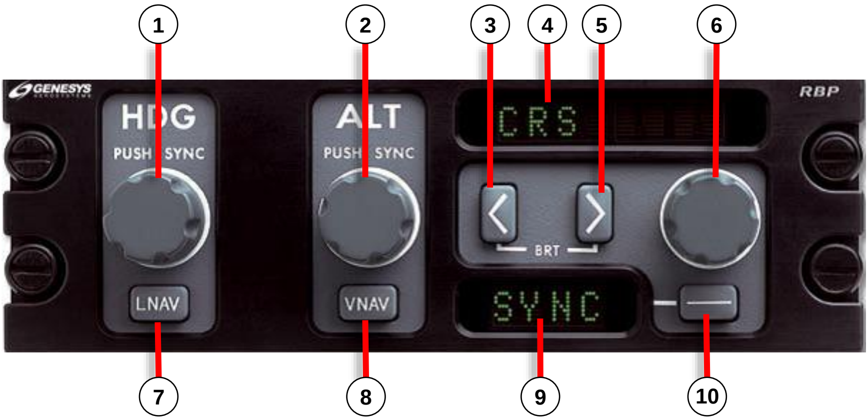
Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

Table T-7: Menu Synchronization	
Menu Parameter	**Notes**
The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence. ***Intra-System*** *or* ***Inter-System*** *communications.* 	
Traffic Filter Setting	
The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference. ***Intra-System*** *communications.* 	
PFD Traffic Thumbnail	

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table T-7: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td>PFD Traffic</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.
 </td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Traffic Page Settings</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

RBP 1. Remote Bugs Panel



1) Increase/decrease HDG bug – Push to synchronize to current heading	2) Increase/decrease target altitude – Push to synchronize to current altitude
3) Moves through "Set" options – press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode	4) Main display – Indicates course, bug, angle, height, and minimums to be set with multifunction knob
5) Moves through "Set" options – Press both arrows simultaneously to place into brightness dimming mode	6) Multifunction Knob – Increase/decrease value indicated in main display
7) LNAV – Switches autopilot roll steering between LNAV and HDG sub-modes	8) VNAV – Switches autopilot pitch steering between VNAV and target altitude sub-modes
9) Option display – Toggles function value in main display	10) Option button – Toggles function displayed in option display (also exits brightness dimming mode)

Figure RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel

The Remote Bugs Panel (RBP) promotes ease of operation while minimizing workload complexity by providing dedicated controls for frequently used bugs and controls for setting IDU parameters as defined in Table RBP-1.

The heading (HDG) and altitude (ALT) knobs behave similarly as the knobs on the IDU (see Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-By-Step Procedures for HDG and ALT knob description).

During initialization, the RBP begins with "GENESYS RBP" on the main and option display screens. To access the internal light sensor control for brightness, press the two arrow buttons simultaneously and rotate the multifunction knob to adjust. Press the Option button to exit the brightness control program and return the RBP to normal operation.

Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)

Button/Knob	Function	Rotate	Push Knob or Press Button
HDG Knob	Heading Bug	Increase or decrease	Synchronize to current heading
LNAV Button (With autopilot enabled)	LNAV	N/A	Toggle between HDG sub-mode and LNAV sub-mode. (Only active when "HDG" or "LNAV" soft tile appears on EFIS.) This function is not applicable to installations without an autopilot or installations with a fully-integrated digital autopilot (Genesys/S-TEC DFCS) because there are no HDG or LNAV sub-modes in those integrations.
ALT Knob	Altitude Bug	Increase or decrease target altitude	Synchronize to current altitude
VNAV Button (With autopilot enabled)	VNAV	N/A	S-TEC DFCS: Turn OFF any preselected target altitude bug EFIS with VNAV Sub-Mode: Turn OFF target altitude bug to allow for entering VNAV sub-mode. (Only active when "VNAV" tile appears on EFIS.) This function is not applicable to installations without an autopilot or installations with a fully-integrated digital autopilot (Genesys/S-TEC

Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)			
Button/Knob	**Function**	**Rotate**	**Push Knob or Press Button**
			DFCS) because there are no VNAV sub-modes with those integrations.
Function Active Nav Course			
Multifunction Knob	GPS Course	Increase or decrease	If a manual GPS exists: (not in automatic OBS) Synchronize to current bearing to active waypoint.
Multifunction Knob	VLOC1 VLOC2	Increase or decrease	Synchronize nav source course to the current bearing to the station if NAV1 or NAV2 receiver is coupled to VOR; or synchronize the VLOC1 or 2 course to current aircraft heading if NAV receiver is coupled to LOC.
Multifunction Knob	TAC1 TAC2	Increase or decrease	Synchronize the TAC1 or TAC2 course to the current bearing to the station.
Multifunction Knob	ADF1 ADF2	Increase or decrease	Synchronize ADF1 or ADF2 course to the current bearing to the station
Preview NAV Course			
Multifunction Knob	VLOC1 VLOC2	Increase or decrease	Synchronize nav source course to the current bearing to the station if NAV1 or NAV2 receiver is coupled to VOR; or synchronize the VLOC1 or VLOC2 course to current aircraft heading if NAV receiver is coupled to LOC.
Multifunction Knob	TAC1 TAC2	Increase or decrease	Synchronize the TAC1 or TAC2 course to the current bearing to the station.
Multifunction Knob	ADF1 ADF2	NA	Synchronize ADF1 or ADF2 course to the current bearing to the station

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)</th></tr>
<tr><th>Button/Knob</th><th>Function</th><th>Rotate</th><th>Push Knob or Press Button</th></tr>
<tr><td>Multifunction Knob</td><td>VLOC1
VLOC2</td><td>NA</td><td>Synchronize the VLOC1 or VLOC2 course to the current bearing to the station if Nav receiver is coupled to VOR; or Synchronize the VLOC1 or VLOC2 course to the current aircraft heading if NAV receiver is coupled to LOC.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multifunction Knob</td><td>Airspeed Bug</td><td rowspan="7">Increase or decrease</td><td>Synchronize to current airspeed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multifunction Knob</td><td>Vertical Speed Bug</td><td>Synchronize to current VSI</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Multifunction Knob</td><td>Climb Angle Set</td><td rowspan="2">Set to 3°</td></tr>
<tr><td>Descent Angle Set</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multifunction Knob</td><td>Decision Height Bug</td><td>Set to 200’ AGL</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multifunction Knob</td><td>Minimum Altitude Bug</td><td>Synchronize to current altitude</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>GPS Course</td><td rowspan="9">N/A</td><td>When selected NAV source is GPS, changes OBS mode (Manual or Automatic)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Active NAV Course</td><td rowspan="4">No function</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Preview Nav Course</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>VOR 1 Course</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>VOR 2 Course</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Airspeed Bug</td><td rowspan="2">Toggle on or off</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Vertical Speed Bug</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Climb Angle Setting</td><td rowspan="2">No function</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Option “---“ Button</td><td>Descent Angle Setting</td></tr>
</table>

Table RBP-1: Remote Bugs Panel (RBP)			
Button/Knob	**Function**	**Rotate**	**Push Knob or Press Button**
Set Option “---“ Button	Decision Height Bug		Toggle on or off
Set Option “---“ Button	Minimum Altitude Bug		
Arrow Buttons	Function Scroll	N/A	Move through “Set” options. Press both arrow buttons simultaneously to place into dimming mode.

Main Message

Option Message

Figure RBP-2: Main and Option Messages

Table RBP-2: Main and Option Messages - Active NAV Course Function		
Selected Active Nav Source	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
GPS	**NAV FMS**	**AUTO** (If EFIS in manual OBS mode) **MAN** (If EFIS in automatic OBS mode)

Table RBP-2: Main and Option Messages - Active NAV Course Function		
Selected Active Nav Source	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
VLOC1	**NAV VOR1** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **NAV LOC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **NAV BC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC1 Course setting (degrees)
VLOC2	**NAV VOR2** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **NAV LOC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **NAV BC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC2 Course setting (degrees)
TAC1	**NAV TAC1**	Current TAC1 Course setting (degrees)
TAC2	**NAV TAC2**	Current TAC2 Course setting (degrees)
ADF1	**NAV ADF1**	Current ADF1 Course setting (degrees)
ADF2	**NAV ADF2**	Current ADF2 Course setting (degrees)

Table RBP-3: Main and Option Messages - Preview NAV Course Function		
Selected Preview Nav Source	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
VLOC1	**PRV VOR1** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **PRV LOC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **PRV BC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC1 Course setting (degrees)
VLOC2	**PRV VOR2** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **PRV LOC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **PRV BC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC2 Course setting (degrees)
TAC1	**PRV TAC1**	Current TAC1 Course setting (degrees)
TAC2	**PRV TAC2**	Current TAC2 Course setting (degrees)
ADF1	**PRV ADF1**	Current ADF1 Course setting (degrees)
ADF2	**PRV ADF2**	Current ADF2 Course setting (degrees)

Table RBP-4: Main and Option Messages - Other Functions		
Function	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
GPS Course (EFIS in manual OBS mode)	**CRS FMS**	**AUTO** (If EFIS in manual OBS mode)

Table RBP-4: Main and Option Messages - Other Functions		
Function	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
VLOC1 Course	**CRS VOR1** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **CRS LOC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **CRS BC1** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC1 Course setting (degrees)
VLOC2 Course	**CRS VOR2** (If Nav receiver coupled to VOR) **CRS LOC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC) **CRS BC2** (If NAV receiver coupled to LOC BC)	Current VLOC2 Course setting (degrees)
Airspeed Bug	**SPD BUG**	**ON** (If airspeed bug is OFF) **OFF** (If airspeed bug is ON)
Vertical Speed Bug	**VSI BUG**	**ON** (If vertical speed bug is OFF) **OFF** (If vertical speed bug is ON)
Climb Angle Setting	**CLIMB ANG**	Current climb angle setting (tenths of a degree)
Descent Angle Setting	**DCND ANG**	Current descent angle setting (tenths of a degree)
Decision Height Bug	**DEC HT**	**ON** (If decision height bug is OFF) **OFF** (If decision height bug is ON)

Table RBP-4: Main and Option Messages - Other Functions		
Function	**Main Message**	**Option Message**
Minimum Altitude Bug	**MIN ALT**	**ON** (If minimum altitude bug is OFF) **OFF** (If minimum altitude bug is ON)

NOTE:

If NAV PREVIEW is enabled in EFIS limits, the following RBP functions are available:

1) Active Nav Course

2) Preview NAV Course (If preview source is not set to OFF)

If NAV PREVIEW is not enabled in EFIS limits, the following RBP functions are available:

1) GPS Course

2) VLOC1 Course

3) VLOC2 Course

The above two groups of RBP functions are mutually exclusive as determined by the EFIS limits settings.

WX-500 Lightning Strikes

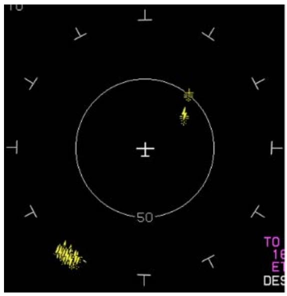
S 1. WX-500 Data

When selected, the MFD displays cell mode or strike mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the limits in Table S-1.

Table S-1: Lightning Strikes

Time or Distance Limit	View
Display scale less than 25 NM	Strikes not shown
More than 3 minutes old	
Strikes less than 20 seconds old	Lightning symbol
Strikes between 20 seconds and 2 minutes old	Large cross symbol
Strikes between 2 and 3 minutes old	Small cross symbol

ND Lightning Display



Strikes Page Display

Figure S-1: Lightning Symbols

The pilot may select either an arced or centered display format.

Arced: Ownship displaced toward the bottom of the screen. Strike data are displayed in a larger scale while displaying all data within range ahead of the aircraft.

Centered: Ownship symbol is in the center of the ND with navigation data is displayed out to an equal distance in all directions.

The strikes page has Strikefinder markings aligned with either magnetic north or true north depending upon the status of the true north discrete input. When the AHRS is in DG mode, “DG” appears to the right of the ownship symbol.

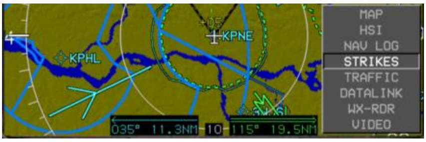
S 2. Dedicated Strikes Page

S 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

STRIKES: Shows the strikes page.

S 2.1.1. MFD STRIKES Page (Step-By-Step)

1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**.



2) Rotate ❶ to **STRIKES** and push to enter.

S 2.2. Page Screen Range

The following screen ranges may be selected with all distances representing the distance from the ownship symbol to the Strikefinder markings: 12.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, 100 NM, and 200 NM. The range ring is centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to displayed symbols. It has half the radius of the Strikefinder markings displayed indicating the range corresponding to the radius of the range ring such as (1.5 NM, 25 NM, 50 NM, and 10 NM.) The range ring is completely visible in arced display format for the pilot to ascertain the current strikes page setting.

S 2.3. Air Data and Ground Speed

Figure S-2: Air Data and Ground Speed in Upper Left Corner

S 2.4. Clock and Options

Zulu Time

Local Time

Figure S-3: Clock and Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the page:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time**: As specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **WX-500 Status**: When selected, displays cell mode lightning strikes in correct relationship to the ownship symbol with the limits in Table S-2.

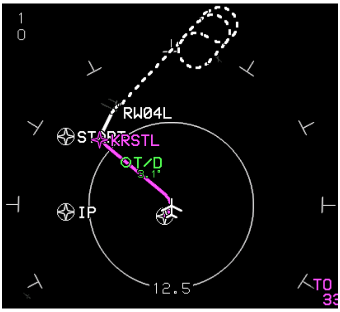
Table S-2: WX-500 Status

Condition	Annunciation
Strikes Page	
System Normal, Cell Mode	**CELL MODE** annunciates mode **RATE** ### depicts strike rate
System Normal, Strike Mode	**STRK MODE** annunciates mode **RATE** ### depicts strike rate
System Failed with "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled in EFIS Limits	**STRIKES** overlaid with red "X" Strike symbols removed
System in Test Mode	**STRK TST** shown Strike symbols removed
Traffic Page	
System Normal, Strikes Selected	**RATE** ### depicts strike rate Strike symbols shown
System Normal, Strikes Deselected with "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled in EFIS Limits	**STRIKES** overlaid with green "X" Strike symbols removed
System Failed with "Show Full Sensor Status Flag" enabled in EFIS Limits	**STRIKES** overlaid with red "X" Strike symbols removed
System in Test Mode	**STRK TST** shown Strike symbols removed

A new strike rate value is calculated every five seconds during normal operation, based upon strikes within the selected display range. The number of fresh strikes (less than 20 seconds old) is used to generate a strike rate representing strikes per minute. Strike rate increases are displayed immediately upon calculation, while decreases in strike rate are damped. Activating the strike clear function resets the strike rate to zero.

S 2.5. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is automatic, the flight plan path is shown on the strikes page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

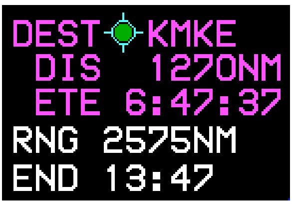


When there is an active waypoint and the GPS/SBAS OBS setting is manual, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint. The pointer matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

Figure S-4: Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

The active flight plan path's active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The strikes page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

S 2.6. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions



As defined in Section 3 Display Symbology.

Figure S-5: Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

S 3. MFD Faults Display (FAULTS) Menu

If WX-500 is enabled, loss of communications with the WX-500 is indicated with an "X" in place of "OK."

S 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

CLR STRKS (L2) or **WX LGND (L2)**: On ND or strikes page with WX-500 enabled, **CLR STRKS** activates the strike clear option.

S 5. MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu

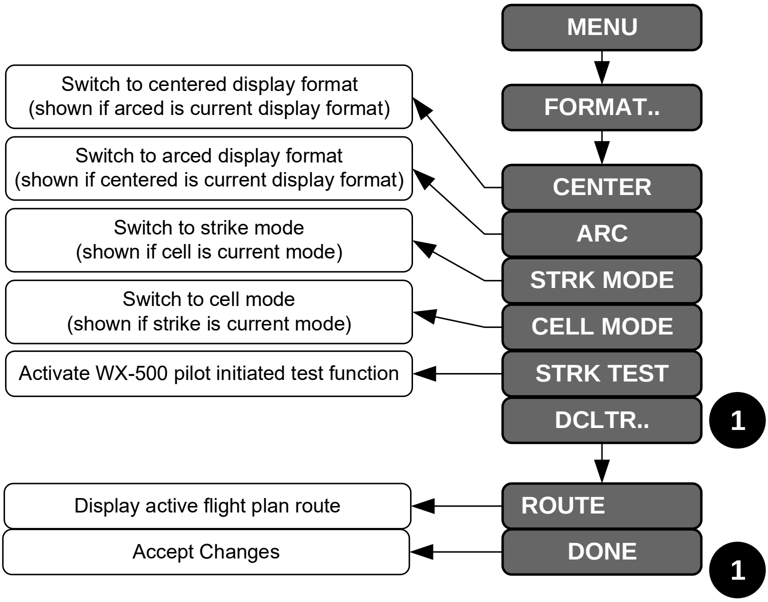


Figure S-6: MFD Strikes Format (FORMAT) Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu, **FORMAT (R4)** when in the strikes page, the following option list appears:

1) **CENTER/ARC**: Toggles centered and arced display format.

2) **STRK MODE/CELL MODE**: Toggles strike and cell mode.

3) **STRK TEST**: Activates the user initiated WX-500 test function.

4) **DCLTR**: Activates the following option list for toggling the active flight plan route ON or OFF.

S 6. Menu Synchronization

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

Table S-3: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.	
 	
MFD Strike (WX-500) Page Settings	

Datalink

D 1. Datalink Symbology

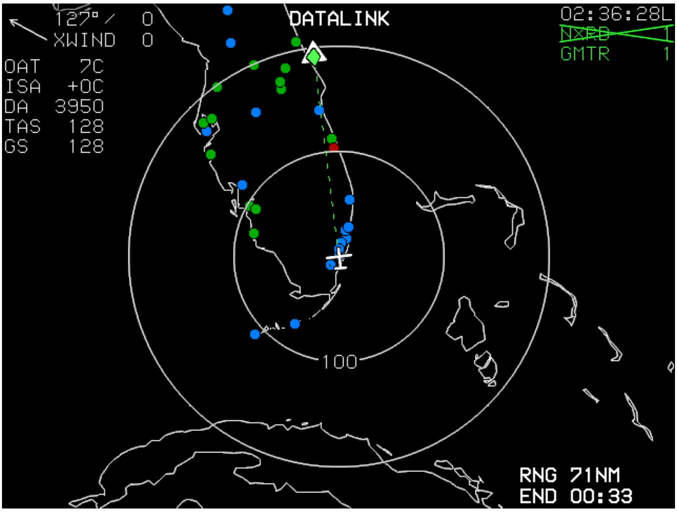


Figure D-1: Datalink Symbology with G METAR On

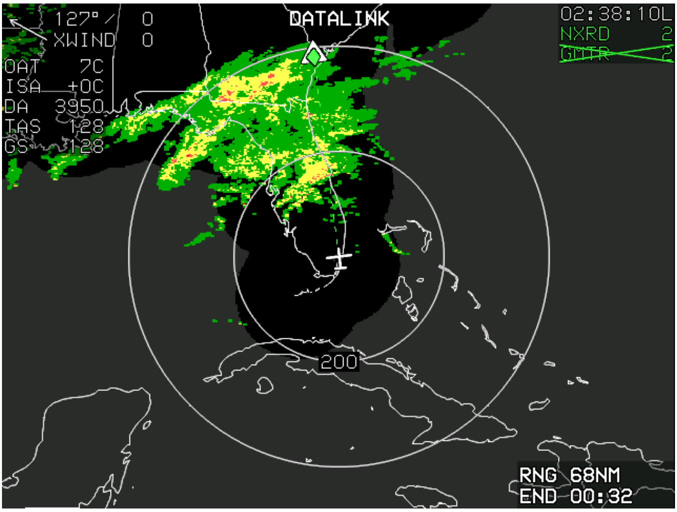


Figure D-2: Datalink Symbology with NEXRAD On

Table D-1: ADS-B Data	
NEXRAD Data	Available if included in user subscription.
Graphical METAR Data	Available if textual METAR data is included in user subscription. Derived from textual METAR data using EFIS algorithm.

NEXRAD data is displayed on the ND in correct relationship as colored regions of precipitation using the convention.

Table D-2: Datalink NEXRAD Data

Color	Meaning
Gray Shading	Areas beyond the limits of radar coverage or areas with missing data
Magenta	Rain ≥ 50dBZ
Red	Rain ≥ 45dBZ and < 50dBZ
Light Red	Rain ≥ 40dBZ and < 45dBZ
Amber (Yellow)	Rain ≥ 30dBZ and < 40dBZ
Green	Rain ≥ 20dBZ and < 30dBZ
Cyan	Snow ≥ 20dBZ
Light Cyan	Snow ≥ 5dBZ and < 20dBZ
Magenta	Mixed Precipitation ≥ 20dBZ (Area is distinguishable from rain ≥ 50dBZ by graphical context)
Light Magenta	Mixed Precipitation ≥ 5dBZ and < 20dBZ

Graphical METARs are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as a large color-filled circle as follows. If the airport has an available datalinked METAR, the circular part of the airport symbol is colored-fill with the following coloring convention.

Table D-3: Graphical METAR Symbols

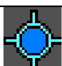
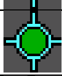
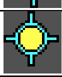
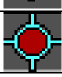
Color	Meaning
Sky Blue 	Visual Flight Rules (VFR)
Green 	Marginal Visual Flight Rules (MVFR)
Amber (Yellow) 	Instrument Flight Rules (IFR)
Red 	Low Instrument Flight Rules (LIFR)

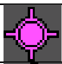
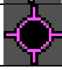
Table D-3: Graphical METAR Symbols	
Color	**Meaning**
Magenta 	Less than Category 1 Approach Minimums
Black 	No Data

Table D-4: Graphical METARS (G METARS) Screen Range	
Screen Range	**Display**
50 NM	All G METARS with Airport Symbol and ID
100 NM	All G METARS with Airport Symbol only
200 NM	All G METARS
400 NM	VFR G METARS are decluttered
800NM and 1,600 NM	VFR and MVFR G METARS are decluttered

Graphical METARs are also displayed in the menu system “nearest airport,” “nearest weather,” and “info” functions.

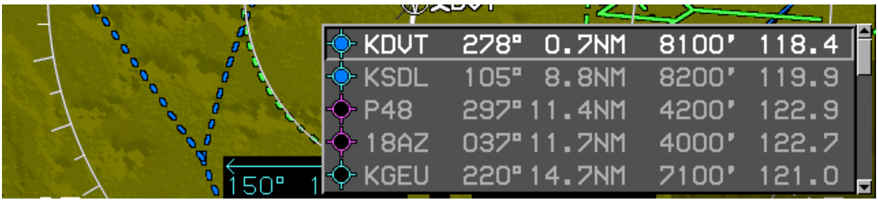


Figure D-3: NRST Airport INFO

Graphical weather conditions data are displayed in the menu system “info” function as large colored squares per the following convention.

Table D-5: Datalink Graphical METAR Precipitation	
Color	**Meaning**
Sky blue	Visual Flight Rules (VFR)
Green	Marginal Visual Flight Rules (MVFR)
Yellow	Instrument Flight rules (IFR)
Red	Low Instrument Flight rules (LIFR)
Magenta	Less than Category 1 Approach Minimums
Black	No data

The following may be displayed on the datalink page:

Textual METAR and TAF data are displayed when appropriate in the menu system "info" function. Time of observation and forecast are contained within the text.

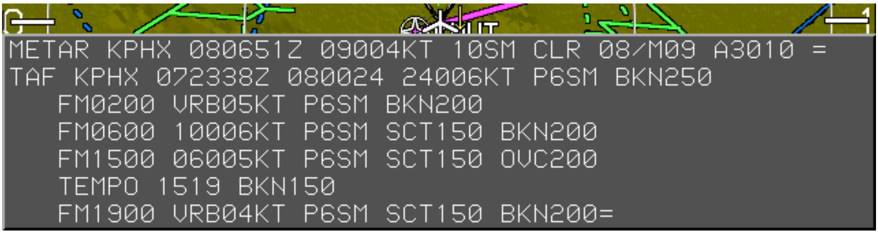


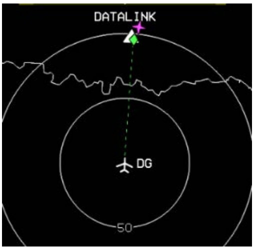
Figure D-4: METAR and TAF Report for KPHX

D 2. Dedicated Datalink Page

D 2.1. MFD Page (PAGE) Menu

DATALINK: Shows the Datalink page.

D 2.2. Ownship Symbol



When not panning with AHRS in the DG mode, "DG" appears right of the ownship symbol. The datalink page is always displayed in a north-up orientation with a boundary circle in place of the compass rose. If not in pan mode, the ownship symbol is aligned with the aircraft heading.

Figure D-5: Datalink Symbology Ownship Symbol

D 2.3. Datalink Page Legend

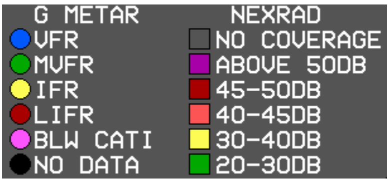


Figure D-6: ADS-B Datalink Legend

D 2.4. Air Data and Ground Speed

Air data and ground speed are displayed in the upper left corner of the datalink page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

D 2.5. Clock and Options

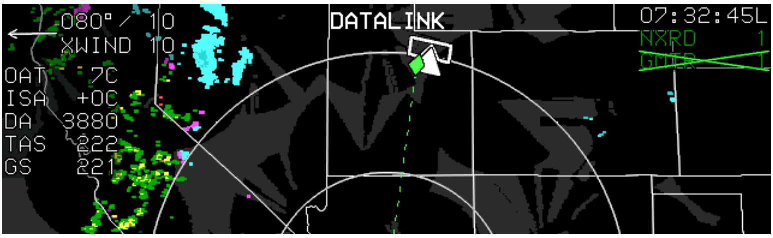


Figure D-7: Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner of the page:

1) **Zulu Time or LCL Time:** As in Section 3 Display Symbology.

2) **Datalink Weather Status**: When status of NEXRAD, and graphical METARs.

Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status

Condition	Status Annunciation	
	***NEXRAD**	**Graphical METAR**
Never completely downlinked	No Annunciation	
Downlinked within last 5 minutes and selected for display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display). “Show Full Sensor Status” enabled.	“NXRD ##” in green. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	“GMTR ##” in green. ## is age in minutes. G METARS shown.
Downlinked within last 5 minutes and deselected from display (*if installed, weather radar selected for display). “Show Full Sensor Status” enabled.	“NXRD ##” in green. ## is age in minutes. “NXRD ##” overlaid with green “X” NEXRAD not shown.	“GMTR ##” in green. ## is age in minutes. “GMTR ##” overlaid with green “X” G METARS not shown.
Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and selected for display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display). “Show Full Sensor Status” enabled.	“NXRD ##” in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	“GMTR ##” in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. G METARS shown.

Table D-6: Datalink NEXRAD Status		
Condition	**Status Annunciation**	
	***NEXRAD**	**Graphical METAR**
Not downlinked within last 5 minutes but downlinked within last 10 minutes and deselected from display (*if installed, weather radar selected for display). "Show Full Sensor Status" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. "NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X" NEXRAD not shown.	"GMTR ##" in amber (yellow). ## is age in minutes. "GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X" G METARS not shown.
Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and selected for display (*if installed, weather radar deselected from display).	"NXRD ##" in red. ## is age in minutes. NEXRAD shown.	"GMTR ##" in red. ## is age in minutes. G METARS shown.
Not downlinked within last 10 minutes but downlinked within last 75 minutes and deselected from display (*if installed, weather radar selected for display). "Show Full Sensor Status" enabled.	"NXRD ##" in red. ## is age in minutes. "NXRD ##" overlaid with green "X" NEXRAD not shown.	"GMTR ##" in red. ## is age in minutes. "GMTR ##" overlaid with green "X" G METARS not shown.
Not downlinked within last 75 minutes (timed-out). "Show Full Sensor Status" enabled.	"NXRD XX" in red "NXRD XX" overlaid with red "X" NEXRAD not shown.	"GMTR XX" in red "GMTR XX" overlaid with red "X" G METARS not shown.

D 2.6. Datalink Page Screen Orientation

When selected, the following screen ranges (all distances represent distance from the ownship symbol to the boundary circle) are available. Radius of the range ring is presented on the inner range ring with the outer ring representing double the value of the inner ring.

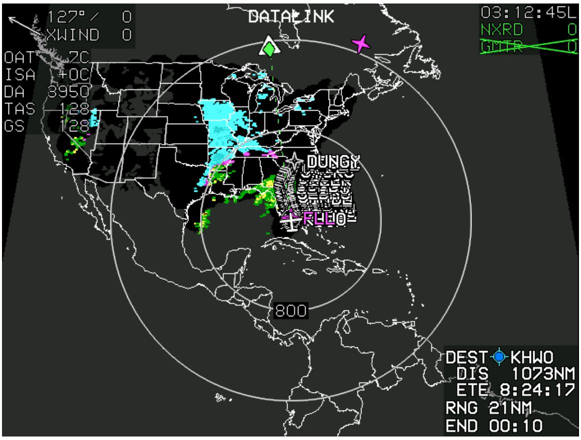
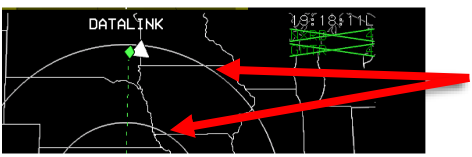


Figure D-8: Datalink Page Screen Range

Table D-7: Datalink Page Screen Ranges	
Ownship to Boundary Circle	**Radius Range Values**
50 NM	25 NM
100 NM	50 NM
200 NM	100 NM
400 NM	200 NM
800 NM	400 NM
1600 NM	800 NM

D 2.7. Boundary Circle Symbols



Boundary Circles

Figure D-9: Boundary Circle Symbol

A white triangular heading pointer aligned with the longitudinal axis of the ownship symbol appears on the boundary circle with a green diamond-shaped track pointer aligned with the aircraft's track across the earth. A green dashed lubber line connects the center of the aircraft symbol and the track pointer.

If a target or VNAV altitude is set and not captured, an altitude capture predictor arc is displayed on the lubber line at a point corresponding with predicted climb or descent distance (based upon current VSI). The track pointer, lubber line, and altitude capture predictor arc are not displayed when ground speed is less than 30 knots. A user-settable heading bug geometrically interacting with the heading pointer appears on the boundary circle. A magenta, star-shaped waypoint pointer displayed on the boundary circle at a point corresponds with the active waypoint. The waypoint pointer turns amber (yellow) in the event of GPS LON caution. Boundary circle symbols are not drawn when in pan mode.

D 2.8. Active Flight Plan Path/Manual Course/Runways

When there is an active flight plan and automatic GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the flight plan path, when selected, is shown in correct relationship to the ownship symbol. The active flight plan path depiction meets all GPS/SBAS path definition requirements and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in automatic OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map). Active flight plan path fly-over waypoints symbols are distinct from fly-by waypoints and consist of the waypoint symbol within a circle. When there is a parallel offset, the active flight plan path depicts the parallel offset path, and the original flight plan path is shown with haloed gray dashed lines.

When there is an active waypoint and manual GPS/SBAS OBS setting, the course through the waypoint is shown as a pointer centered on the waypoint and matches the lateral navigation guidance on the PFD (GPS/SBAS CDI in manual OBS mode, skyway boxes, and mini-map).

The active flight plan path’s active leg/manual course and active waypoint are magenta but turn amber (yellow) in the event of a GPS LON caution. The datalink page displays airport runways in correct relationship and scale to the ownship symbol.

D 2.9. Borders

National and United States state borders are drawn in white in correct relationship to the ownship symbol.

D 2.10. Pan Mode

Use the pan mode to change the location of the center of the page away from current location and view weather conditions along the route of flight and at the intended destination or alternate destination. When pan mode is active, rotate ❶ to pan north, south, east, and west. When pan mode is active, a line is drawn from the map center to the aircraft's current position, and bearing and distance to the map center is always displayed above the ownship symbol when the aircraft is more than 0.5 NM away. If referenced to magnetic north, (as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology) when panning, the nearest displayed graphical METAR symbol within the inner range ring is highlighted with a flashing circle. When such a point is highlighted, dedicated buttons are present to allow the user to view and hide the waypoint information (including datalink weather information) associated with that point.

D 3. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions

See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for top-level menu option descriptions. Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to buttons under the specified conditions.

Table D-8: Tile Legend and Action in Order of Precedence

L1	When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **PN OFF** appears. Press to disable pan mode.
L2	When Datalink page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for the nearest highlighted waypoint is shown; and (c) airport weather information is present in the information block; **WX** appears. Press to display textual METAR and TAF data for the airport.
L3	When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **NORTH** appears. Press to shift center of page in the specified direction.
L4	When Datalink page with pan mode enabled. **SOUTH** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
R2	When ND page or Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **INFO** or **HIDE** appears. Press to toggle information for nearest highlighted waypoint.
R3	When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **EAST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.
R4	When Datalink page with pan mode enabled, **WEST** appears. Press to shift the center of the page in the specified direction.

D 4. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

WX LGND (ACTV) (L2): Activates datalink weather legend.

D 5. MFD Datalink Format Menu

Upon selecting the MFD format menu **FORMAT.. (R4)** on Datalink page, a list appears with the following options:

1) **ROUTE ON/ROUTE OFF**: Toggles active flight plan route.

2) **PAN ON/PAN OFF**: Toggles pan mode.

3) **DCLTR**: Only available when Datalink weather products are available for display. Allows the user to select individual Datalink weather products for display.

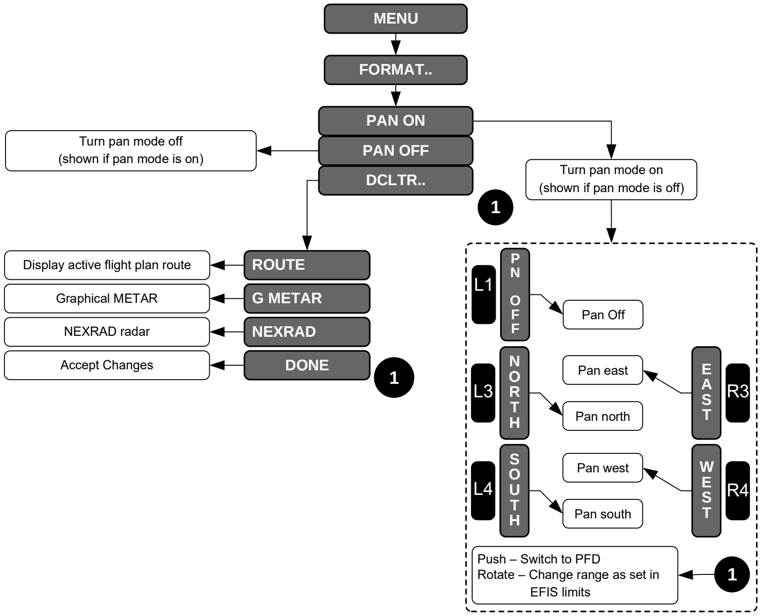


Figure D-10: MFD Datalink Format Menu

D 5.1. MFD DATALINK Page (Step-By-Step)

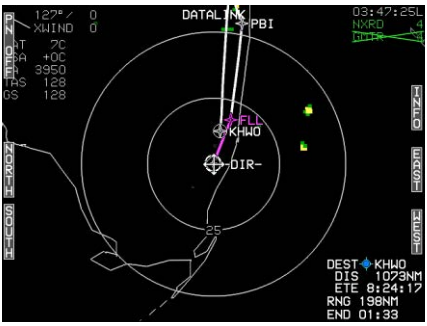
1) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, **PAGE (R3)** and rotate ❶ to **DATALINK** and push to enter.

2) Example shows MFD with DATALINK.

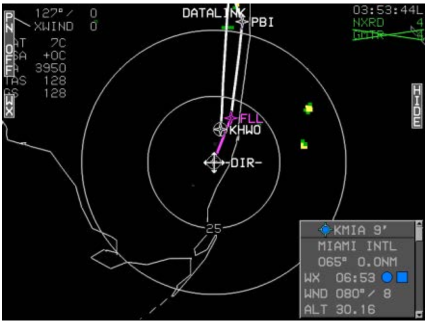
3) Press **MENU (R1)** within 10 seconds, **FORMAT.. (R4)** to format Datalink page.

4) Push ❶ to enter **PAN ON..**

5) In pan mode, press **NORTH (L3)**, **SOUTH (L4)**, **EAST (R3)**, or **WEST (R4)** to move aircraft in desired direction.



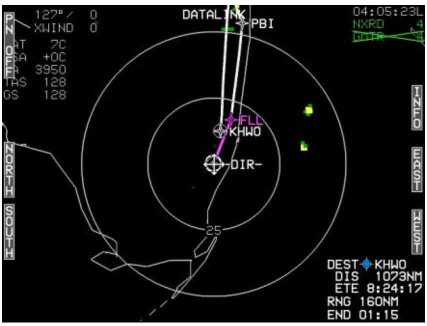
6) When panning and a METAR symbol appears within the inner range ring, it becomes highlighted and flashes. Press **INFO (R2)** to view data.



7) To hide information, press **HIDE (R2)**.

8) To view available graphical METAR and or TAF reports, press **WX (L2)** to toggle on or off.

9) Press **WX (L2)** to toggle OFF graphical METAR and TAF reports or press **HIDE (R2)**.



10) Press **PN OFF (L1)** to turn off Pan Mode and return to normal Datalink page.

D 6. Active Flight Plan (ACTV) Menu Options

NRST APT (L2): WX LGND and **EXPND WX** are available to show a weather symbol legend and highlighted result METAR and TAF text respectively.

Identifier Entry Box: Highlighted result information may include datalinked weather information when available.

D 7. Information (INFO) Menu

When airport weather information is presented in the information block, **WX LGND (L2)** displays an airport graphical METAR legend, and **EXPND WX (L3)** displays textual METAR and TAF data for the airport.

D 8. MFD Fault Display Menu

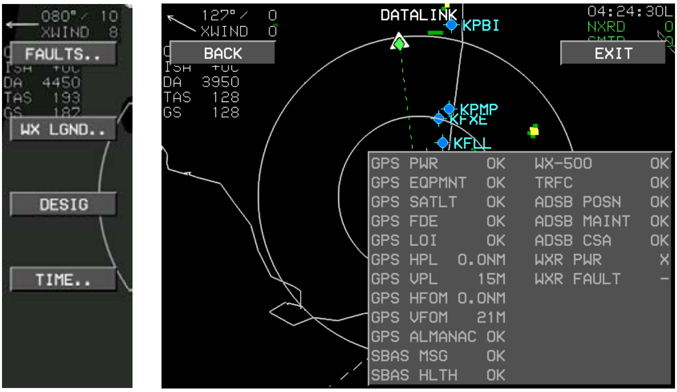


Figure D-11: FAULTS Menu with ADS-B Status

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu with ADS-B datalink enabled, an indication of ADS-B position validity (ADSB POSN), indication of whether ADS-B receiver maintenance is required (ADSB MAINT), and indication the conflict situational awareness algorithm is working (ADSB CSA) appear.

D 9. Menu Synchronization

See Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

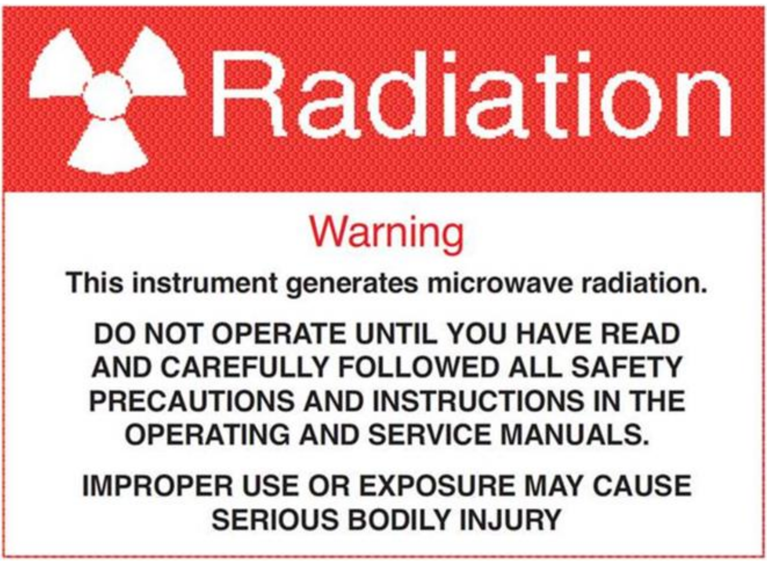
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table D-9: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are independent between displays. These are used to support non-PFD display options to give the pilot maximum MFD operating flexibility.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Datalink Page Settings</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Selected Page</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Map Page Settings</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Weather Radar

WX 1. Weather Radar

This Weather Radar appendix is primarily for the Honeywell RDR-2100 installed with no external control panel. The EFIS controls the WX RDR from the EFIS MFD(s) equipped with a Weather Radar Module (WRM and configured for weather radar. Since there is only one RDR-2100 installed in the aircraft, only one display area at a time can show the WX RDR menu.

WARNING:



CAUTION:

Maintain prescribed safe distance when standing in front of operating antenna. (Reference FAA Advisory Circular #20-68)

Never expose eyes or any part of the body to an unterminated wave guide.

Figure WX-1: Weather Radar Image on Map

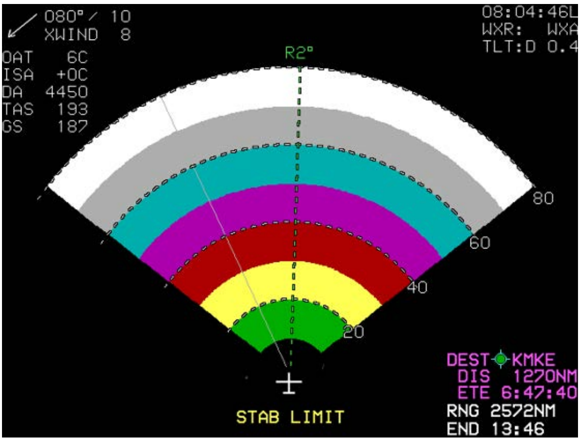


Figure WX-2: MFD Weather Radar Page

Weather radar automatically declutters when weather radar returns are selected for display on the ND map page in correct relationship to the ownship symbol unless inhibited during active FLTA alerts. When weather radar is selected, Datalink NEXRAD is automatically deselected. Table WX-1 defines all inhibited factors with display.

Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions
During Active FLTA alerts
ND Moving Map Pan Mode
When North Up orientation is selected
When RDR-2100 is in vertical profile mode

Table WX-1: Weather Radar Inhibited Conditions
When screen range is too small to effectively show the weather returns (defined as when the length of the weather radar scan line is longer than 512 pixels given current weather radar scale setting, screen range, and screen mode)

WX 2. PFD Weather Radar Page

On MFD, press **MENU (R1)**, and then within 10 seconds press **PAGE.. (R3)**. Rotate ❶ to **WX-RDR** and push to enter.

WX 2.1. Ownship Symbol

The ownship symbol appears in horizontal and profile depictions on the weather radar page.

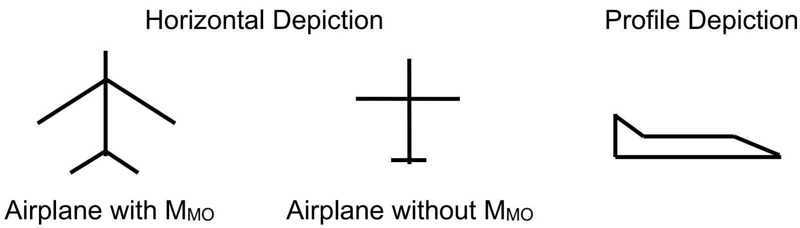


Figure WX-3: Ownship Symbol

WX 2.2. Weather Radar Page Format

In a horizontal depiction, the weather radar page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered in the bottom of the display with the weather area depicted as an arc ahead of the ownship symbol.

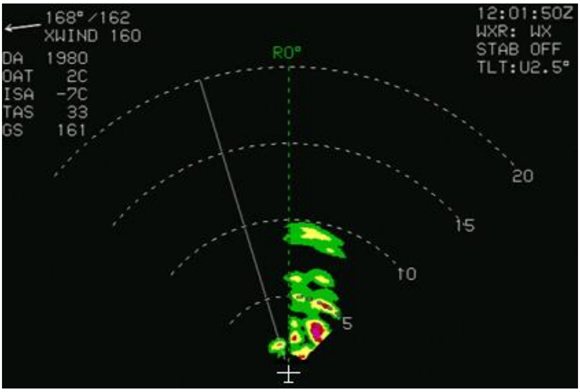


Figure WX-4: Radar Image in Arc Format

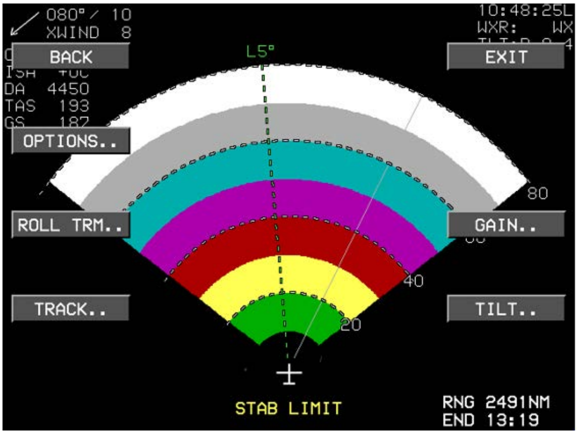


Figure WX-5: Radar Image in Arc Format (STAB LIMIT)

In a profile depiction, the weather radar page uses an arced format with the ownship symbol centered on the left side of the display and the weather area depicted as an arc to the right of the ownship symbol.

To select profile depiction, use the weather radar control panel connected to the IDU (when equipped). The IDU ensures at least one weather radar-enabled display is showing the weather radar page prior to entering into profile depiction and disables profile depiction if the pilot sets the display for no weather radar page on any weather radar-enabled page. The purpose is to maximize the availability of weather radar information on the ND. The ND only shows a horizontal depiction and disables profile depiction if the weather radar mode is set to off or standby via radar control panel.

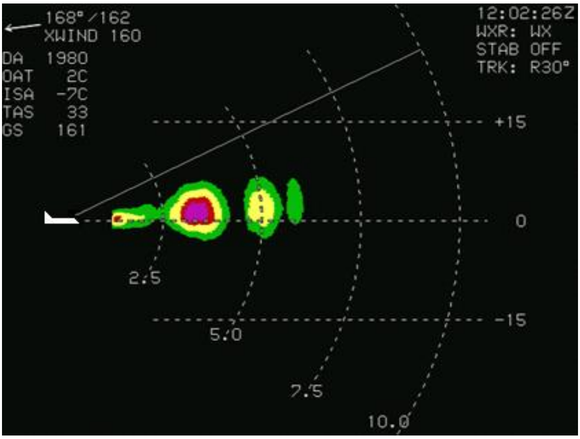


Figure WX-6: Radar Image in Profile Depiction

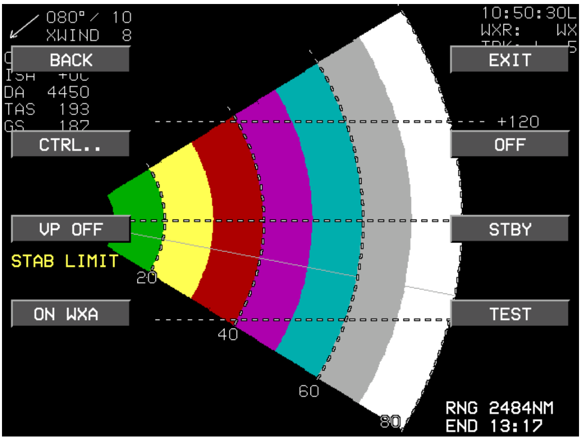


Figure WX-7: Radar Image in Profile Depiction (STAB LIMIT)

WX 2.3. Weather Radar Page Screen Range

Weather radar page screen range is user-selectable with either ❶ (RDR-2000 and RDR-2100 weather radar types) or a control panel directly attached to the weather radar receiver-transmitter. Weather radar page screen range is displayed as a series of equidistant dashed arcs centered upon the ownship symbol to help judge range to the displayed weather radar returns. All distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc: 5NM, 10NM, 20NM, 40NM, 80NM, 160NM, 240NM, and 320NM.

For most screen ranges, there are four equidistant dashed arcs. Each arc is labeled with distance in nautical miles at its right-most point (horizontal depiction) or bottom-most point (profile depiction). In profile depiction, there are also three horizontal altitude lines drawn relative to the aircraft's altitude to help judge the vertical distance to the displayed weather radar returns. The center line is level with the ownship symbol to represent the aircraft's altitude. The other two lines are equally spaced above and below the center line to represent altitude differences above and below the aircraft. The number of feet above and below the aircraft varies with the selected range to compensate for the radar scan width at the different ranges.

In the case of RDR-2000, RDR-2100 or RDR-1600 weather radar type, screen range is an internally controlled parameter and the following weather screen ranges are available (all distances represent the distance from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc):

Table WX-2: Weather Radar Screen Range

Range (NM)	RDR-2000	RDR-2100	RDR-1600
0.5			X
1			X
2			X
5	X	X	X
10	X	X	X
20	X	X	X
40	X	X	X
80	X	X	X
160	X	X	X
240	X	X	X
320		X	
Note: "X" indicates range is available			

WX 2.4. Track Line

When the weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 and the horizontal depiction is shown, a dashed track line emanates from the ownship symbol to the outer dashed arc. The value of the track line in whole degrees left or right of aircraft heading is displayed adjacent to the outer end of the track line.

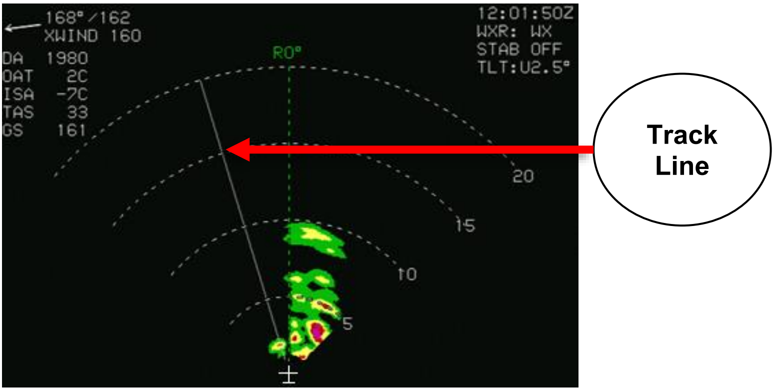


Figure WX-8: Radar Track Line

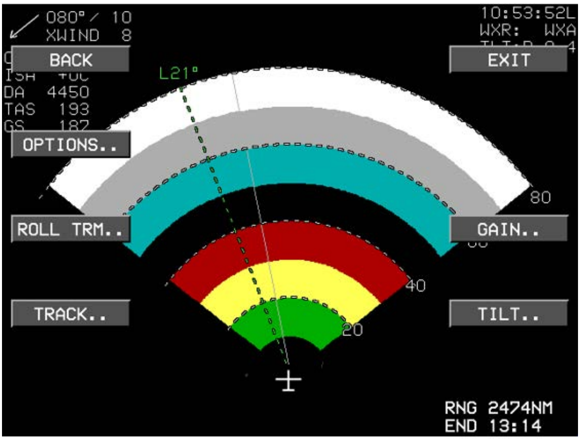


Figure WX-9: Radar Track Line with Menus

WX 2.5. Active Flight Plan Path/ Manual Course/ Runways

The active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, and manual course appear, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction. The weather radar page displays airport runways, when the weather radar page is showing horizontal depiction.

In horizontal depiction, the active flight plan path (when selected), waypoints, manual course appear and airport runways appear.

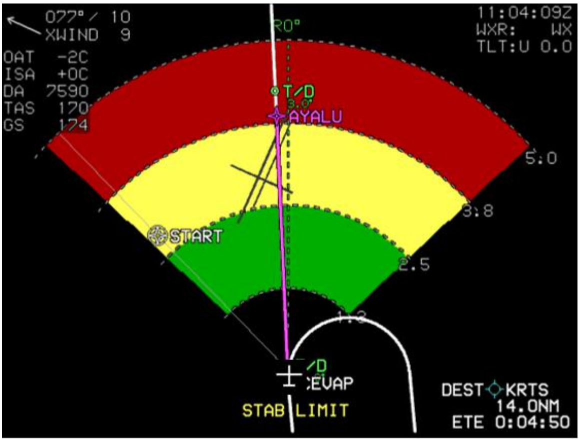


Figure WX-10: Radar Active Flight Plan

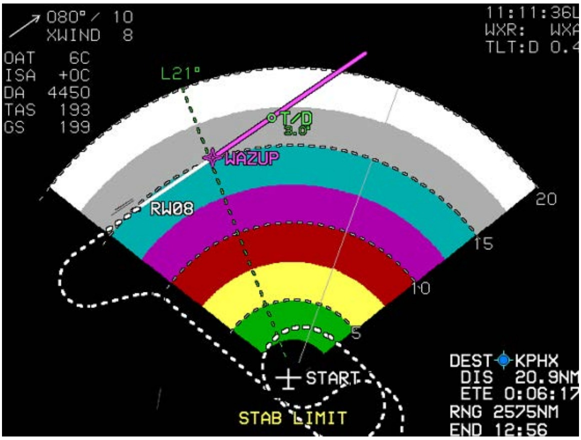


Figure WX-11: Radar Active Flight Plan

WX 2.6. Weather Radar Return Data

Weather radar return data are displayed in correct relationship to the ownship symbol as colored regions according to the value of the ARINC 453 3-bit range bins.

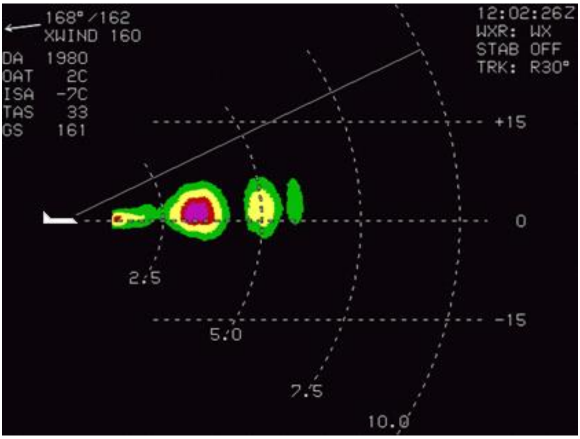


Figure WX-12: Radar Return Data

Table WX-3: Weather Radar Return Data		
ARINC 453 3-Bit Range Bin	**Color**	**Meaning**
000b	BLACK	No returns
001b	GREEN	Low-level weather or low-level ground returns
010b	YELLOW	Mid-level weather or mid-level ground returns
011b	RED	Third-level weather returns. Color is black when in MAP mode.
100b	MAGENTA	Fourth-level weather or third-level ground returns. With RDR-2000 or RDR-2100 weather radar type, color alternates between magenta and black at 1Hz when internal sub-mode is WXA.
101b	CYAN	Automatic range limit returns. Indicates areas of unreliable returns due to radar power absorption.
110b	LIGHT GRAY	Moderate turbulence returns
111b	WHITE	Severe turbulence returns

The following weather radar-specific warnings appear in a conspicuous area adjacent to weather radar return data so they do not conflict with the weather radar return data. Only one warning appears at any given time, with the following order of precedence:

1) **WX ALRT**: Weather alert condition is active.

2) **TURB ALRT**: Turbulence alert condition is active.

3) **STAB LIMIT**: Aircraft attitude has moved to a point where the weather radar antenna can no longer be effectively stabilized.

4) **ANT FAULT**: Weather radar antenna is temporarily dislodged by turbulence.

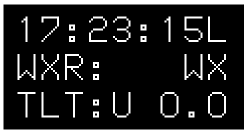
WX 2.7. Clock/Options

The following are displayed in the upper right corner:

1) **Zulu Time or Local Time**: As in Section 3 Display Symbology;

2) **Weather Radar Mode Annunciation**: As in Table WX-4 and Table WX-5.

Zulu Time



Local Time

Figure WX-13: Radar Clock/Options

Table WX-4: RDR 2100 Applicability

Mode	Annunciation
Off	**WXR:OFF**
Standby	**WXR:STBY**
Weather only	**WXR:WX**
Weather alert	**WXR:WXA**
Ground map	**WXR:GMAP**
Test	**WXR:TEST**
Not defined	**WXR:----**

Table WX-5: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation

Annunciation	Conditions
Overlaid with Red X	Weather radar mode is off or not defined. Cooling fault condition exists. Attitude or range fault condition exists. T/R fault condition exists.

Table WX-5: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation

Annunciation	Conditions
STAB OFF (Stabilization)	Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; Mode not standby or forced standby; and Weather radar indicates stabilization is off.
TGT ALERT (Target Alert)	Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; Mode not standby or forced standby; Weather radar presenting horizontal depiction.
“TLT:UXX.X” or “TLT:AUTO” (TILT)	U = Up or Down (either U or D, but not both, may appear – use “U” for 0°); XX.X represents absolute value of the tilt angle in degrees truncated to the nearest tenth; “TLT:AUTO” used where weather radar reports a value of -16°, representing automatic tilt. Weather radar tilt annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar not in vertical profile depiction.
TRK:LXX (TRACK)	L = Left or Right (either L or R, but not both, may appear – use “R” for 0°); and XX represents absolute value of the track angle in degrees. Weather radar track annunciation only appears when all following conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”; 2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Radar in vertical profile depiction.
“GN:SXXDB,” “GN:CAL,” or “GN:MAX” (GAIN)	S = Sign (either “+” or “-,” but not both, may appear – use “+” for 0°); and XXDB represents the manual gain setting in decibels. “GN:CAL” represents the calibrated condition “GN:MAX” represents maximum manual gain Weather radar manual gain annunciation only appears when all following weather radar mode conditions are true: 1) Mode annunciation not overlaid with a red “X”;

Table WX-5: RDR 2100 Mode Annunciation	
Annunciation	**Conditions**
	2) Mode not standby or forced standby; and 3) Mode is ground map.

WX 2.8. Air Data and Ground Speed

Air data and ground speed are displayed in upper left corner of the weather radar page as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

WX 2.9. Fuel Totalizer/Waypoint Distance Functions

Displayed as specified in Section 3 Display Symbology.

WX 3. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

WX RDR.. (L2): If a Weather Radar page is displayed on the MFD, activates the Weather Radar menu for controlling Honeywell RDR-2000/2100.

❶ **Encoder**: On an MFD (IDU #2, #3 or #4) showing the Weather Radar page, rotate ❶ to change the display RNG (direction of rotation is dependent upon EFIS limits settings.)

DCLTR.. (R4): Activates Weather Radar Declutter menu option. Toggles active flight plan route.

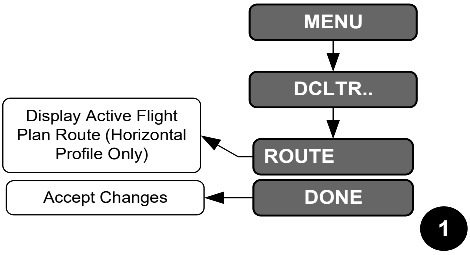


Figure WX-14: WX RDR Declutter (DCLTR) Menu

WX 3.1. Top-Level Menu Automatic Pop-Up Function Descriptions

Soft menu tiles appear adjacent to buttons under specified conditions.

Table WX-6: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions	
Note 1	**Tile Legend and Action**
L2	When ND Page with: (a) pan mode enabled; (b) information for nearest highlighted waypoint shown; and (c) airport weather information present in the information block; **WX** displays textual METAR and TAF data for the airport.

WX 3.2. MFD Weather Radar (WX RDR) Menu

Upon selecting WX RDR menu in the WX RDR page, the following options appear:

1) **CTRL.. (L2)**: Activates control menu.

   a) **OPTIONS.. (L2)**: Anti-clutter, sector scan, automatic range limit, and stabilization options:

      i) **ACLTR ON/OFF (L2)**: Toggles anti-clutter on or off.

      ii) **SCTR ON/OFF (L3)**: Toggles sector scan on or off.

      iii) **ARL ON/OFF (R2)**: Toggles automatic range limit on or off.

      iv) **STAB ON/OFF (R3)**: Toggles stabilization mode on or off.

   b) **ROLL TRIM.. (L3)**: Rotate ❶ to change roll trim in 0.125° increments between +3.875° and -4.000°

   c) **TRACK.. (L4)**: Rotate ❶ CW to increase and CCW to decrease changes in track in increments of 1° in the following limits settings.

      i) Scan width 80° (+/- 40°)

      ii) Scan width 90° (+/- 45°)

      iii) Scan width 100° (+/- 50°)

      iv) Scan width 120° (+/- 60°)

   d) **GAIN.. (R3)**: Change radar gain in 1 dB increments of between 0-31.5 dB.

   e) **TILT.. (R4)**: Toggles tilt mode between auto tilt (RDR-2100 only) and manual tilt. Also toggles auto-step-scan option between on and off. When in manual tilt mode, changes tilt angle in increments of 0.25°.

i) **ASTEP ON/OFF (R2)**: Toggles auto step scan on or off. Begin by adjusting tilt to +15° or -15°.

ii) **AUTO/MAN (R3)**: Toggles manual or manual mode.

iii) **TILT = AUTO (❶)**: Set tilt automatically.

iv) **(❶)**: Set desired tilt in 0.25° increments. Push to set tilt.

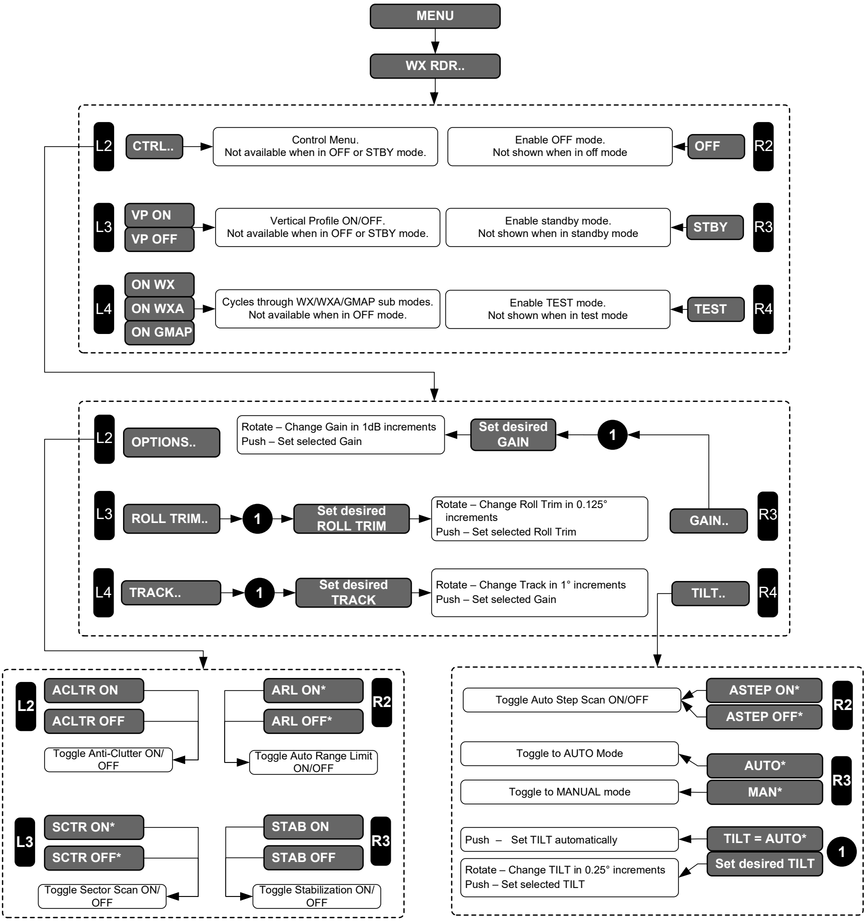
2) **OFF (R2)**: Turns off WX RDR.

3) **VP ON/OFF (L3)**: Toggles vertical profile on or off. (When VP is OFF, horizontal profile is ON.)

4) **STBY (R3)**: Toggles WX RDR to standby mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to turn on WX RDR.

5) **TEST (R4)**: Toggles radar into test mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to return to normal operation.

6) **ON WXA**, **ON WXA**, or **ON GMAP (L4)**: Toggles WX, WXA, or GMAP sub-modes.



* Applicable only to Honeywell RDR-2100

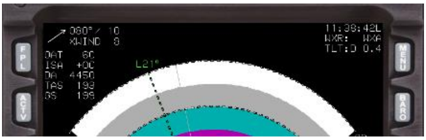
Figure WX-15: WX RDR Page Menu

> **NOTE:**
>
> The weather radar modes are mutually exclusive and therefore selecting one turns off the other modes with the exception of vertical profile, which appears in the selection box only when the selected weather radar mode is not OFF or STBY.

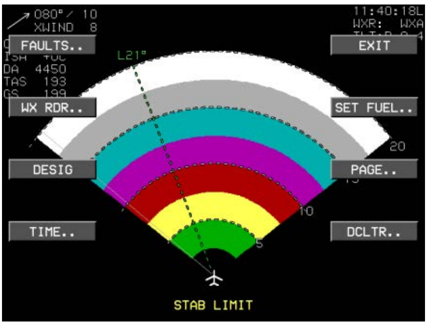
WX 3.3. Managing RDR-2100 Weather Radar Menus (Step-By-Step)

1) On MFD, press **MENU (R1)** and then **PAGE.. (R1)**.

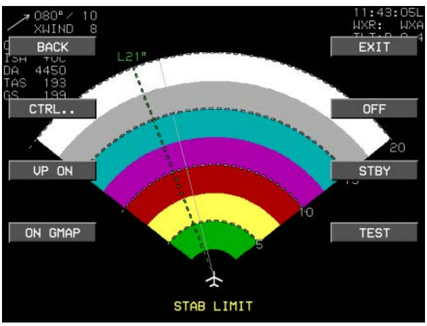
2) Rotate ❶ to **WX-RDR** and push to enter.



3) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds…

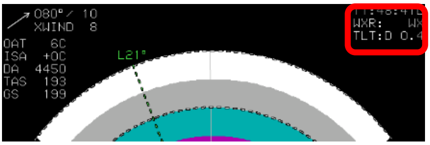


4) Press **WX RDR.. (L2)**.

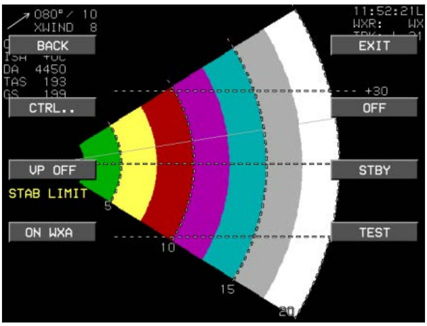


5) Press **OFF (R2)** to enable OFF mode. (This option is not shown when in OFF mode.)
6) Press **STBY (R3)** to enable standby mode. (This option not shown when in standby mode.)
7) Press **TEST (R4)** to enable test mode. (This option not shown when in test mode.)

8) While in STBY mode, press **ON WX (L4)** to return radar to ON mode.

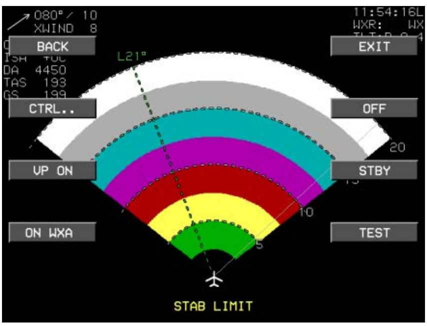


9) Current mode status is displayed in upper right corner of radar display.



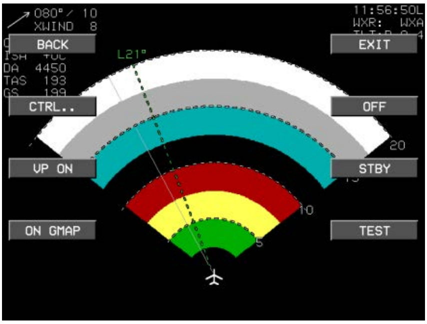
10) Press **MENU (R1)**, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, and then **VP ON (L3)** to toggle between horizontal and vertical modes.

11) Press **VP OFF (L3)** to toggle back to horizontal profile.



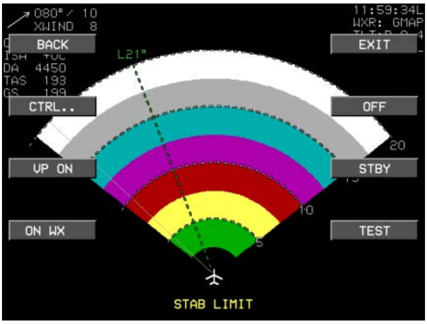
12) Press **ON WX (L4)** to enable Weather-Alert sub-mode. Press **ON WXA (L4)**. Press **ON GMAP (L4)** to toggle through modes.

13) Weather-Alert sub-mode annunciated in upper right corner.



14) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, **WX RDR.. (L2)** and then **ON GMAP (L4)** to enable Ground Map sub-mode.

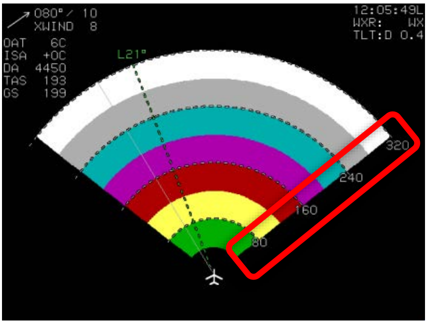
15) Ground Map sub-mode annunciated in upper right corner.



16) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, **WX RDR.. (L2)** and then **ON WX (L4)** to resume normal weather radar mode of operation.

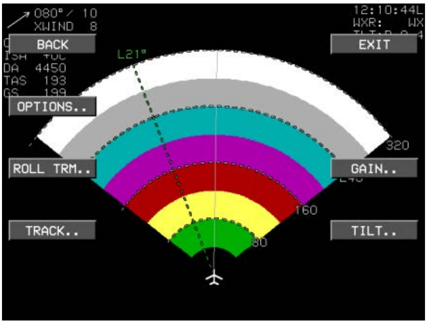
17) Radar mode of operation annunciated in upper right corner.

18) Rotate ❶ to alter range of weather radar from 5.00 NM to 320.00 NM. Rotation direction dependent upon EFIS limits setting.



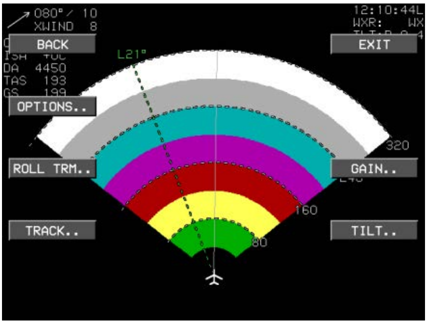
19) Range rings are located on the right side of the arc.

20) Press **MENU (R1)**, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, and then **CTRL.. (L2)** to enter radar control menu. (Not shown when in OFF or STBY mode.)

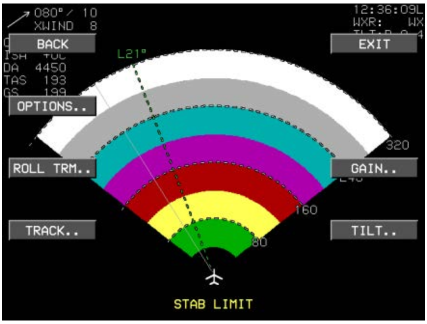


21) Press **OPTIONS.. (L2)** and then **ACLTR ON (L2)** to toggle anti-clutter option ON and OFF.

22) Press **SCTR ON (L3)** to toggle Sector Scan option ON and OFF.



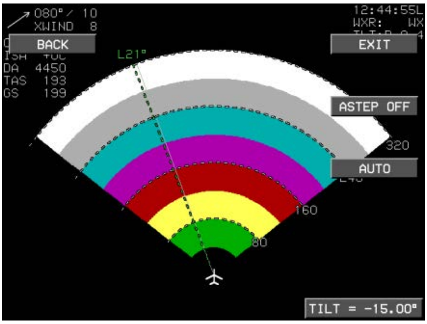
23) Press **MENU (R1)**, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, **CTRL.. (L2)**, **ROLL TRIM (L3)** and then rotate ❶ to desired roll trim angle (increments of 0.125°) and push to enter.



24) Press **MENU (R1)**, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, **CTRL.. (L2)**, and then **TILT.. (R4)**

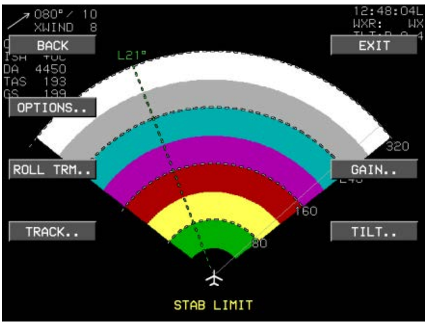
25) Rotate ❶ to set tilt angle between ±15°. Set angle is annunciated above ❶ and in upper right corner.

26) When in **TILT MAN** mode, annunciation is above ❶.



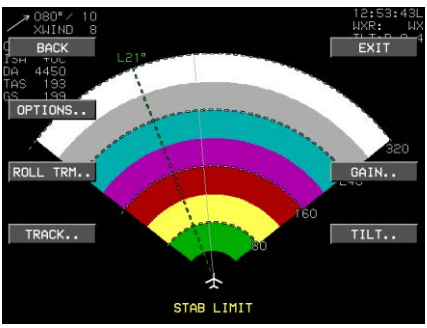
27) Press **ASTEP ON (R2)** or **ASTEP OFF (R2)** to toggle antenna tilt to sequentially step in 4° increments. (Auto step scan is entered initially by adjusting the tilt to +15° or -15°.)

28) Press **BACK (L1)** or **Exit (R1)** to exit out of TILT sub-mode.



29) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, **CTRL.. (L2)**, and then **TRACK.. (L4).**

30) Rotate ❶ and rotate or begin by rotating to set new TRACK angle in 1° increments between limits set in EFIS limits. Read new TRACK in two places.



31) Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds, **WX RDR.. (L2)**, **CTRL.. (L2)**, and then **GAIN (R3)** to open GAIN menu.

32) Rotate ➊ to change gain in 1 dB increments. Push to set selected gain value.

NOTE:

When using EFIS menu system for RDR-2XXX control, the weather radar mode received from the offside system is used to update onside weather radar mode as follows. This is to ensure weather radar power on/off is synchronized between both sides.

When offside mode is commanded to STBY, TEST, or ON and if onside mode is OFF, then the onside mode is set to STBY.

When offside mode is commanded to OFF, then the onside mode is also set to OFF.

WX 4. MFD Fault Display Menu

Upon selecting the MFD faults menu, the status of the following system parameters are displayed if weather radar is enabled:

1) If WX-500 enabled, loss of communications with WX-500.

2) Indicates weather radar power/communication status (WXR PWR X or WXR PWR OK). Status failed (WXR PWR X) reflects any one of the following conditions is true:

   a) Loss of weather radar communication.

   b) Weather radar mode is OFF.

3) Indicates weather radar fault status (WXR FAULT –, WXR FAULT X, or WXR FAULT OK). Status failed (WXR FAULT –) indicates it is not possible to determine weather radar faults. Status failed (WXR FAULT X) reflects any of the following conditions is true:

   a) A cooling fault condition exists.

   b) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6 or Collins 800/840, a display or control bus fault condition exists.

   c) For weather radar types ARINC 708-6, Collins 800/840, or Honeywell PRIMUS, a calibration or air data fault condition exists.

d) An attitude or range fault condition exists.

e) A control fault condition exists.

f) A T/R fault condition exists.

4) If weather radar type is RDR-2000 or RDR-2100, indicates radar control panel status (WXR RCP X or WXR RCP OK). Status failed (WXR RCP X) indicates loss of communication or a failure status using same test as invalid data.

WX 5. Menu Synchronization

Section 5 Menu Functions and Step-by-Step Procedures for additional information.

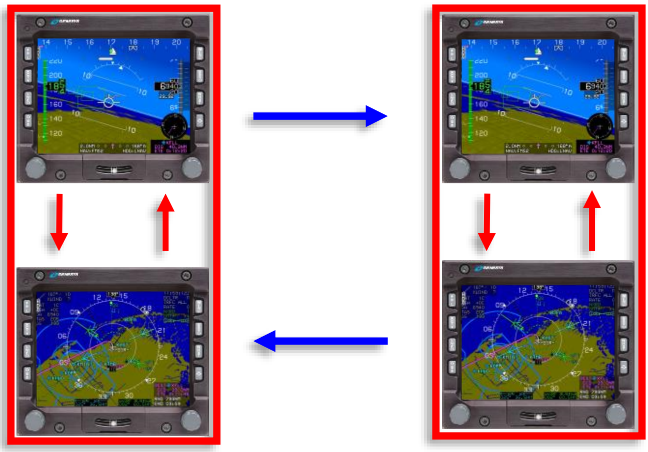
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table WX-7: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are synchronized across all displays at all times. These are bugs and fundamental aircraft values that should never have independence. Intra-System or Inter-System communications.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>WX RDR Control Menu mode parameter</td><td>Used to synchronized certain RDR-2100 modes</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference. Intra-System communications.</td></tr>
</table>

Table WX-7: Menu Synchronization

Menu Parameter	Notes
	
WX-RDR Control Menu parameters	Synchronizes onside when Honeywell RDR-2100 is installed
Weather Radar Scale	Onside because range is controlled by the weather radar

Video

V 1. Video Input Page

Press **MENU (R1)**, within 10 seconds then press **PAGE.. (R3)** Push ❶ **VIDEO** – opens Video Input page.

The video input page is an image of 640 by 480 pixels and accepts video input signals in the RS-170 composite format. The system is configurable to the NTSC, PAL (including the PAL-m and PAL-nc variants), or SECAM versions of RS-170 separately for each video input. In addition, an auto-detection mode, which programs the video input chip to process most standard RS-170 formats, is configurable for each video input.

When no video signal is detected, the video input page is black and **NO VIDEO IMAGE AVAILABLE** is displayed in white on the center of the page. To aid in diagnosing problems with undetected video signals, the following annunciations are also displayed:

1) **NO INTERLACED SIGNAL**: No interlaced signal detected.
2) **NO HORIZ OR VERT SYNC**: No horizontal or vertical synchronization detected.
3) **NO COLOR SIGNAL**: No video chroma signal detected.
4) **LOAD ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a load error.
5) **TRIGGER ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a trigger error.
6) **PROGRAMMING ERROR DETECTED**: Video chip reports a programming error.

V 1.1. Video Input Status Display

The following are optionally displayed in the upper right corner of the Video page:

1) **Name (Label)**: Identifies video input source and is configurable to one of a set of predefined labels in the EFIS limits. If no label is configured, the label is **VIDEO-n** where **n** is the video input source number.
2) **ZOOM**: Amount of pixel expansion is displayed as **ZOOM nnX** where **nn** is the ZOOM level. The user can set ZOOM levels from 1 (no pixel replication) to 10 in increments of 1.
3) **Brightness**: Displayed as **BRT nnn%** where **nnn** is the brightness setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

4) **Contrast**: Displayed as **CTRST nnn%** where **nnn** is the contrast setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

5) **Saturation**: Chroma saturation is displayed as **SAT nnn%** where **nnn** is the saturation setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

6) **Hue**: Chroma hue is displayed as **HUE nnn%** where **nnn** is the hue setting as a percentage of the maximum value.

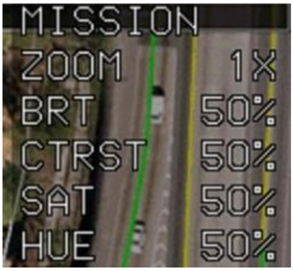


Figure V-1: Video Status

V 1.2. Top-Level Menu Option Descriptions

❶: If showing the Video page, rotate to change the zoom level (clockwise = increase, counterclockwise = decrease).

V 1.3. MFD Page First-Level Option Descriptions

FORMAT.. (R4): If showing the Video page, activates the page format menu.

V 1.4. MFD Video Page Format Menu

1) **CONTROLS.. ❶**: Activates list of video settings to adjust individually (Table V-1).

Table V-1: Video Controls Settings

Setting	Definition	Notes
BRT	Adjust brightness setting	**DFLT (R4)** resets to nominal default (50%) value.
CTRST	Adjust contrast setting	
SAT	Adjust chroma saturation (color intensity) setting	
HUE	Adjust chroma hue (red-green balance) settings	

Figure V-2: Video Controls Settings

2) **SOURCE.. ❶**: Displays selected video input, only if more than one video input is enabled.

3) **DCLTR.. ❶**: Activates list of video input status settings to individually select or deselect which Video Input status settings are displayed in the upper right corner. All declutter settings are common to all video inputs (Figure V-1):

   a) **NAME**: Video input label

b) **ZOOM**: Current amount of image expansion

c) **BRT**: Current brightness setting

d) **CTRST**: Current contrast setting

e) **SAT**: Current chroma saturation setting

f) **HUE**: Current chroma hue setting

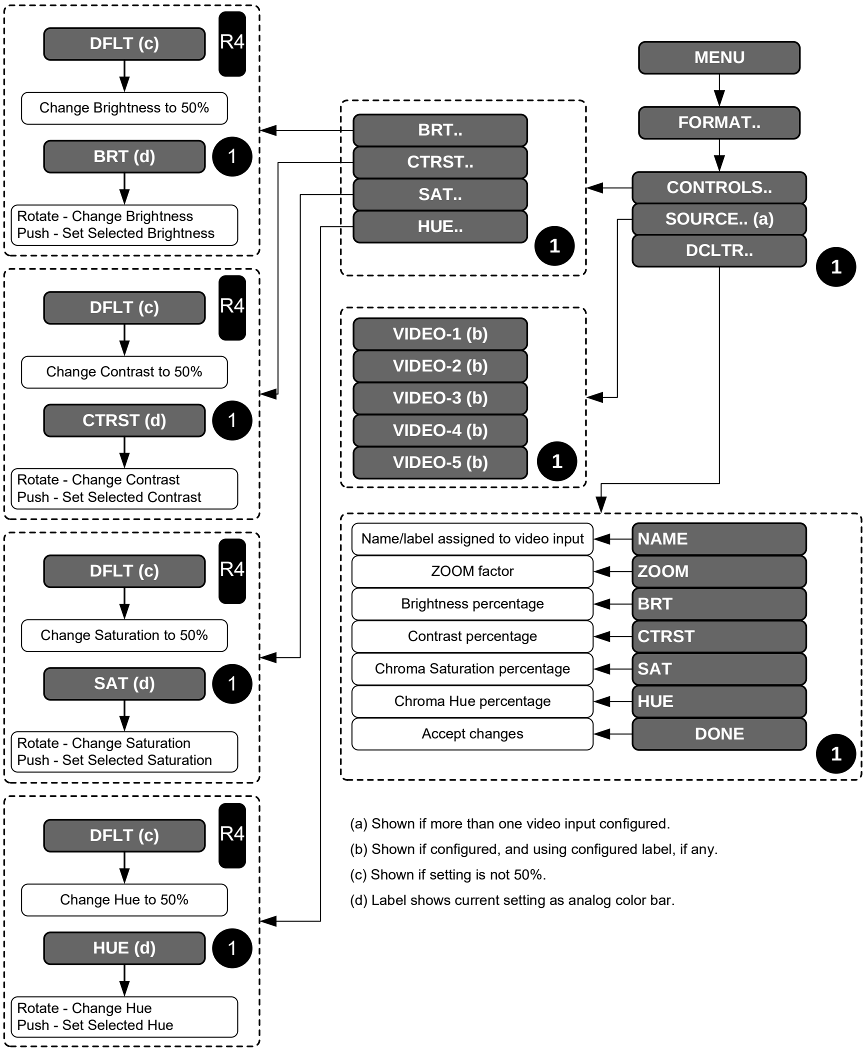


Figure V-3: MFD Video Input Format Menu

V 1.5. Pan Mode

When enabled in EFIS limits, and the ZOOM level is greater than 1, the Video page has a pan mode for selecting the portion of the video image displayed by replicating pixels. When pan mode is active, controls are present to allow moving the portion displayed up, down, left, and right.

Figure V-4: Video Pan View

A mini map of the displayed image's position in the full video image is displayed for 10 seconds after:

1) Entering pan mode;

2) Changing the zoom level to a value greater than 1;

3) Panning the zoomed image.

Exiting pan mode removes pan mode controls and mini map, if any.

Table V-2: Top-Level Auto Pop-Up Function Descriptions With Pan Mode Enabled		
Button	**Tile Legend**	**Action**
L2	**UP**	Press to move the section of video image displayed in specified direction.
L3	**DOWN**	
R2	**LEFT**	
R3	**RIGHT**	

V 2. Menu Synchronization

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Table V-3: Menu Synchronization</th></tr>
<tr><th>Menu Parameter</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">The following menu parameters are only synchronized onside. These parameters are usually sensor selections or PFD options used to keep the appearance of any pilot's PFD consistent in the case of PFD reversion. The onside characteristic means that individual pilots can still adjust their PFD settings to their preference. Intra-System communications.
 </td></tr>
<tr><td>MFD Video Page Settings</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

Round Dials

RD 1. PFD Primary Flight Instrumentation

The following, details round dial display symbology used on the IDU-450 PFD and MFD (in reversionary PFD mode). The round dials option is only available with pure digital ADC configured. Not all combinations of possible views are represented. See Section 3 Display Symbology for further information on the following display symbology. This appendix was created from an aircraft interfaced with an autopilot configured in EFIS limits.

RD 1.1. Pitch Scale

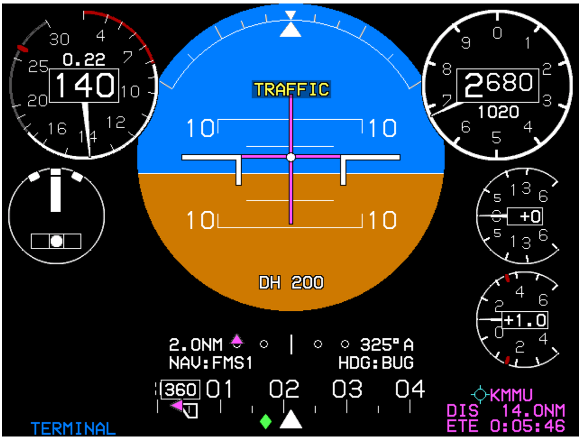


Figure RD-1: Pitch Scale

The white pitch scale and horizon rotates about the large aircraft symbol reference marks according to the aircraft's roll angle. The pitch scale has 5° with major increments and pitch scale labels every 10°. Pointer bars at the ends of each major increment indicate the direction to the horizon. Pitch scale increments automatically declutter to present the fewest possible increments needed.

RD 1.2. Flight Director Symbology

A pilot-selectable flight director is available through the menu system or integrated autopilot/flight director avionics. When selected, one of the above symbology examples appear when valid steering commands are received.

FD-1 Single Cue **FD-2 Dual Cue**

Figure RD-2: Flight Director

RD 1.3. Marker Beacon Indicators

When enabled and valid marker beacon indicators with appropriate coloring and markings are displayed in the lower central portion of the PFD. During a built-in-test, more than one marker beacon can be active. Marker beacons acquired from NAV VLOC1 or VLOC2. Marker beacons are disabled when the NAV source is FMS.

Outer Marker **Middle Marker**

Figure RD-3: Marker Beacon Indicators

RD 1.4. Unusual Attitude Mode

Unusual attitude mode is enabled when the pitch attitude exceeds +30° or -30° or bank angle exceeds 65° left or right. Once enabled, unusual attitude mode remains engaged until pitch attitude returns to within 5° of the horizon and bank attitude returns to within 10° of the horizon.

Pitch up 21° Recovery Chevrons Only

Pitch up 31° Unusual Attitude Mode

Figure RD-4: Unusual Attitude Mode

RD 1.5. Bank Angle Scale

The bank angle scale and roll pointer are centered upon the waterline. Either a roll pointer or sky pointer can be selected during EFIS limits configuration.

Roll Pointer

Sky Pointer

Figure RD-5: Bank Angle Scale Types

RD 1.6. Pitch Limit Indicator

When enabled in either category of airplane, a yellow pitch limit indicator appears at 20 KIAS above stall speed. Stall speed is defined as the following:

1) Part 23 airplanes, the higher of the aircraft’s 1-G $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ or $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ corrected for G-loading; or

2) Part 25 airplanes, if pilot-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ is valid, the higher of the aircraft's 1-G $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$ or $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$ corrected for G-loading where $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$ is calculated by dividing the user-input $\mathbf{V_{REF}}$ by 1.23.

20 Knots before Stall **5 knots before Stall Speed**

Figure RD-6: Pitch Limit Indicator

The pitch limit indicator merges with the large aircraft reference symbol at stall speed and continues moving downward as indicated airspeed further decreases.

RD 1.7. AGL Indication

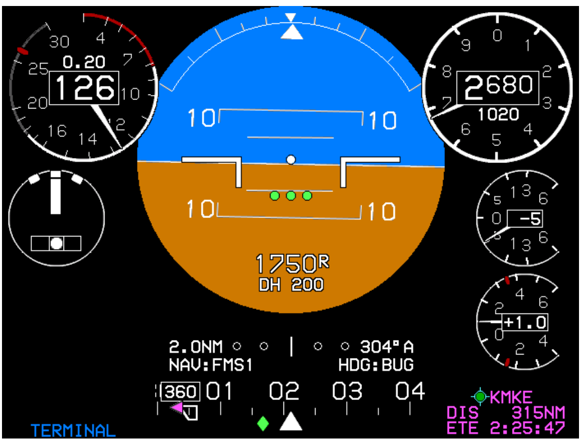


Figure RD-7: AGL Indicator

AGL altitude is displayed as in Figure RD-7 at the bottom of the display or above the CDI. The source for AGL indication is the source being used for the TAWS, which is designated as follows:

R = Radar Altitude

G = GPS/SBAS geodetic height less database found elevation.

B = Barometric altitude less database ground elevation.

AGL altitude is not displayed when it is greater than the radar altimeter maximum valid altitude as set in the EFIS limits and is not displayed when it is invalid. This area also includes a decision height set with the PFD bugs menu.

Table RD-1: AGL Altitude Values

Value	Resolution	Color
<300’	10’	White
<100’ >300’	5’	
>100’	1’	
Decision Height	10’	 White but turns amber (yellow) and flashes at and below DH.

RD 1.8. Landing Gear Indication

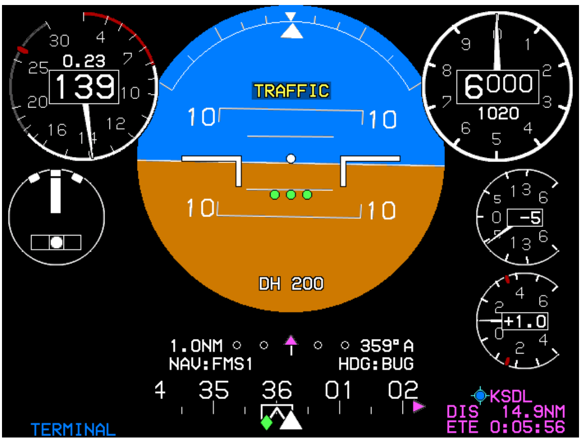


Figure RD-8: Landing Gear Indication

When configured as retractable gear in the EFIS limits, the landing gear is shown as three small “tires” below the large aircraft reference marks. This symbology is driven by discrete inputs.

RD 1.9. Airspeed Display

The airspeed display digitally displays indicated airspeed in knots, miles per hour, or kilometers per hour as set in the EFIS limits. The display is scaled to show the entire operating range of the aircraft. CW movement corresponds to increasing speed. When an ADC sensor fails, the display appears as shown in Figure RD-18.

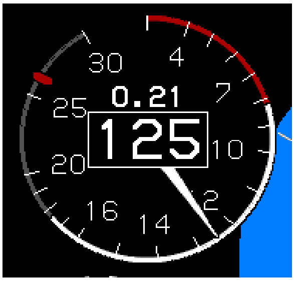
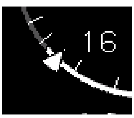


Figure RD-9: Airspeed Display

Without Airspeed Bugs | **IAS Bug Set to 170 and Indicating 170 KIAS** | **IAS Bug Set to 170 and Indicating 150 KIAS**

Figure RD-10: Airspeed Display Limits and BUGs

<table>
<tr><th colspan="3">Table RD-2: Airspeed BUGs</th></tr>
<tr><th>Airspeed Bug</th><th>Limits</th><th>Notes</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>The higher of 1.2 x V_S or 60KIAS at the low end, and red-line airspeed (V$\mathbf{V_{NE}}$, $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$, or $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$)</td><td>** Can be used as a visual reference.
Mutually exclusive with VSI bug.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">** When integrated with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs and descents. When vertically integrated with an autopilot, the airspeed bug is filled-white when in airspeed climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the airspeed bug is hollow-white. When not vertically integrated, the airspeed bug is filled-white at all times.</td></tr>
</table>

RD 1.9.1 Airspeed Readout

When enabled the Mach indicator is displayed above the airspeed readout with a resolution of .01 Mach.

Figure RD-11: Airspeed Readout with Mach Number

If in air mode, a red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the dial to $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$.

If in ground mode, a gray area from the bottom of the dial to $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$. The airspeed readout is gray but otherwise white in this area.

If a valid $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ exists, a white flap-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$. The airspeed is white in this area.

A gray safe-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{FE}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{MO}/M_{MO}}$ and the airspeed readout is green in this area.

For aircraft with $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$:

1) A green safe-operating area from $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$/$\mathbf{M_{NO}}$. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) A yellow caution area from $\mathbf{V_{NO}}$/$\mathbf{M_{NO}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$/$\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed is yellow in this area.

3) A red radial line at $\mathbf{V_{NE}}$/$\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is red at or above the radial line.

For aircraft with $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$:

1) A grey safe-operating area from V_{FE} (if existing) to $\mathbf{V_{SO}}$ to $\mathbf{V_{MO}}$/ $\mathbf{M_{MO}}$. The airspeed is green in this area.

2) A red radial line at $\mathbf{V_{MO}/M_{MO}}$. The airspeed readout is red at or above this radial line.

The airspeed dial for Part 23 airplanes have additional airspeed markings as follows:

1) For reciprocating multiengine-powered aircraft 6,000 pounds or less, a red radial line at $\mathbf{V_{MC}}$.

2) For reciprocating multiengine-powered aircraft 6,000 pounds or less, a blue radial line at V_{YSE}.

The airspeed dial for part 25 airplanes have additional airspeed markings as follows:

1) If in air mode with a pilot-input V_{REF} value:

   a) A red low-speed awareness area from the bottom of the dial to G-compensated 1.1 X V_{SO}. The airspeed is readout is red in this area.

   b) A yellow low-speed awareness area from G-compensated 1.1 X V_{SO} to G-compensated 1.2 X V_{SO}. The airspeed is yellow in this area.

   c) If a valid V_{FE} exists, a white flap-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 X V_{SO} to V_{FE} and a gray normal-operating area from V_{FE} to the lower of V_{MO} or M_{MO}. The airspeed is white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

   d) If a valid V_{FE} does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from G-compensated 1.2 X V_{SO} to the lower of V_{MO} or M_{MO}. The airspeed readout is green in this area.

2) If in ground mode or without a pilot-input V_{REF} value.

   a) If a valid V_{FE} exists, a white flap-operating area from the bottom of the dial to V_{FE} and a gray normal-operating area from V_{FE} to the lower of V_{MO} or M_{MO}. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 but otherwise white in the flap-operating area and green in the normal-operating area.

   b) If a valid V_{FE} does not exist, a gray normal-operating area from the bottom of the dial to the lower of V_{MO} or M_{MO}. The airspeed readout is gray at 0 otherwise white below 60 and green at or above 60 in this area.

3) A red radial line at the lower of V_{MO} or M_{MO}. The airspeed readout is red at or above the red radial line.

RD 1.9.2 Takeoff and Landing Speed Bugs

In airplanes Part 23 or 25 airspeed scale, V_1, V_R, V_2, V_{ENR}, V_{REF}, and V_{APP} can also be shown on the airspeed dial when set. The V_1, V_R, and V_2 symbols automatically declutter when above 2000 feet AGL.

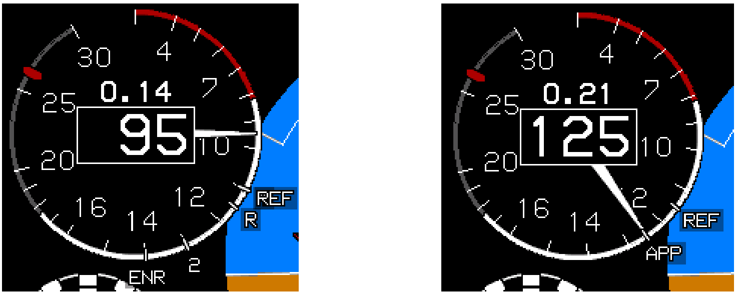


Figure RD-12: Takeoff and Landing Speed Bugs

RD 1.10. Altimeter

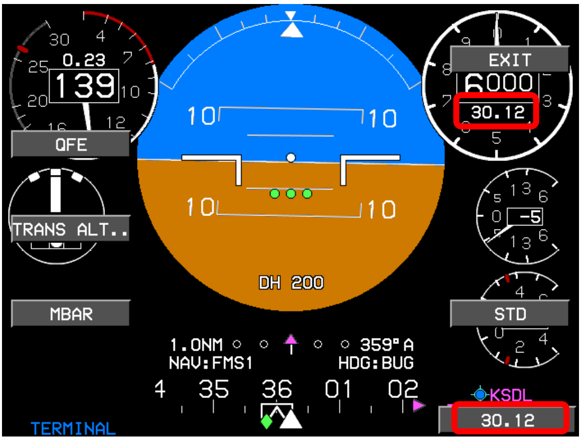


Figure RD-13: Altimeter Setting

The altimeter setting digitally displays the altimeter setting in either inches of mercury (inHg) or millibars (mbar) according to the user-selected units.

Figure RD-14: Altimeter QNH

The mode is annunciated as QFE operations. Otherwise, no mode is annunciated

Figure RD-15: Altimeter QFE

QFE: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (i.e., airport or runway threshold).

QNE: Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure altitude for flight above the transition altitude.

QNH: Barometric setting resulting in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

RD 1.11. Altitude Display

The altitude readout digitally displays barometric altitude to the nearest ten feet as adjusted by an altimeter setting and shows a 1000-foot range with labels and graduations every 100 feet. Clockwise rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing altitude. All graduations are removed when below sea level.

Figure RD-16: Altitude Display

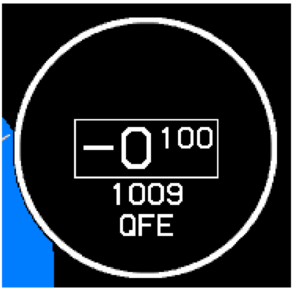


Figure RD-17: Altitude Display (When Below Sea Level)

RD 1.11.1 Loss of ADC Sensor Indication

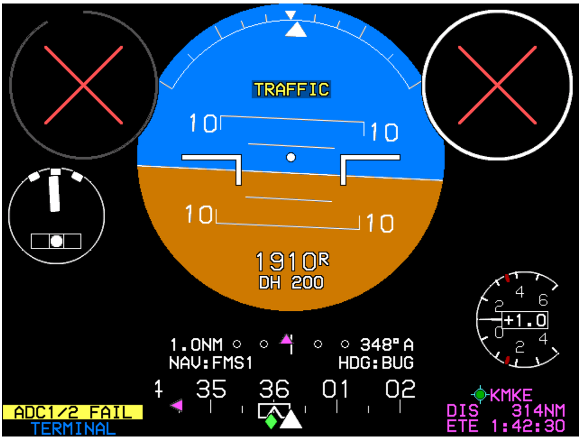


Figure RD-18: Airspeed and Altitude with Loss of ADC

RD 1.11.2 Altitude Sub-Mode

Altitude sub-mode user-selectable triangular target altitude bug shown here at 4,400’. The bug is limited to -1,000’ up to 50,000’ and is removed when more than 500’ away from current altitude.

Figure RD-19: Target Altitude Bug

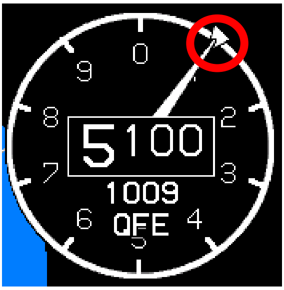
The target altitude bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input, as a climb control parameter for climbs or descents, the bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

1) Filled-white when in altitude hold mode.

2) Hollow-white when in a climb or descent mode.

3) Filled-white during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS, the target altitude bug is filled-white at all times.



When in VNAV sub-mode, the VNAV altitude bug appears when within 500' from the current altitude. In this example, the VNAV altitude is 5,100'.

Figure RD-20: VNAV Sub-Mode

The VNAV bug can be used as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents. The following bug characteristics indicate the following modes:

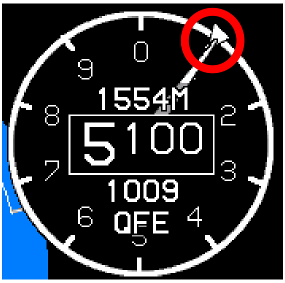
1) Filled-magenta when in altitude hold mode.

2) Hollow-magenta when in a climb or descent mode.

3) Filled-magenta during altitude hold capture.

When not vertically integrated with the Genesys/S-Tec DFCS, the VNAV bug is filled-white at all times.

RD 1.11.3 Metric Altitude



Metric altitude values may be selected from within the declutter menu with a resolution of 1 meter.

Figure RD-21: Metric Altitude

RD 1.12. Vertical Speed Indicator

The VSI located below the altitude display with a readout and dial pointer and scale of ±6,000 feet per minute. The integral scale graduations are ±500, ±1,000, ±3,000 and ±6,000 feet per minute for airplanes with VMO or airspeed scale type FAR part 25, or in applications where TCAS-II is enabled. Otherwise, the scale is ±3,000 with graduations of ±500, ±1,000, ±3,000. CW (upward) rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing vertical speed while CCW corresponds to decreasing speed digitally displaying vertical speed rounded to the nearest 100 feet per minute.

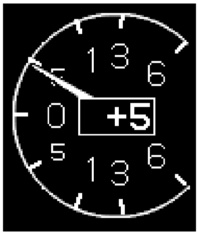


Figure RD-22: Vertical Speed Indicator

When TCAS-II is enabled, the background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red colored regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.

Figure RD-23: Vertical Speed Indicator RA Display

Table RD-3: Scale Graduations and Display

Type Traffic Installed	Scale Limit	Scale Graduations and Display
With TCAS-II	±6,000 fpm	±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, ±4,000, and ±6,000 fpm Background of the VSI functions as an RA display with green and red regions to provide RA maneuver guidance.
Without TCAS-II	±3,000 fpm	±500, ±1,000, ±2,000, and ±3,000 fpm

The vertical speed bug is mutually exclusive with the IAS bug and can be used either as a visual reference or when vertically integrated with the Genesys S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the vertical mode discrete input as a control parameter for climbs or descents. When vertically integrated, the vertical speed bug is filled-white when in VSI climb or descent mode. Otherwise, the vertical speed bug is hollow-white as shown above on the left. When not vertically integrated with an autopilot, the vertical bug is filled-white at all times.

VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled

VSI bug set to +1,000 fpm without Genesys/S-TEC DFCS enabled

Figure RD-24: VSI Bugs

RD 1.13. Heading Display

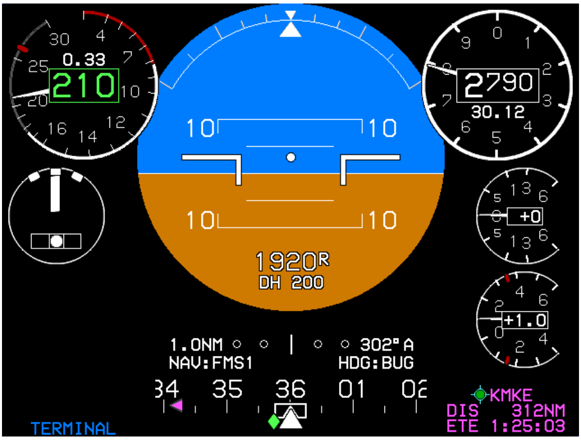


Figure RD-25: Heading Display

The heading display appears in a blacked-out area on the bottom to emulate a “Basic-T”. The heading display automatically declutters when a compass rose is shown in the bottom area.

When AHRS is in DG mode, heading indicator appears.

Figure RD-26: Heading Indicator when AHRS in DG Mode

RD 1.14. Heading Failure Mode

In addition, the equipment has a heading failure mode. With heading failed, the PFD heading scale and MFD compass rose align with track (if available) or are removed and replaced with a red-X.

In this failure mode, the PFD heading scale includes "GPS TRK" around the track marker to clearly delineate the failure mode.

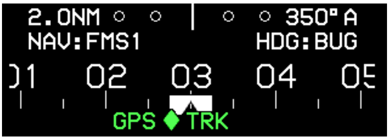


Figure RD-27: GPS TRK

Figure RD-28: Heading Indicator with Heading Failure and Good GPS

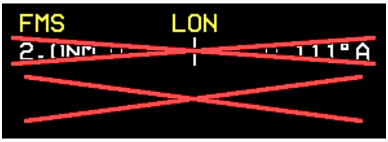
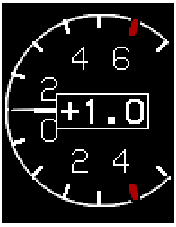


Figure RD-29: Heading Indicator with Heading Failure with GPS Failure

RD 1.15. G-Force Indicator



The G-Force indicator located below the VSI has a readout dial and pointer. The scale accommodates any G-Force limits with a minimum of +6/-4G. The dial is centered on 1G including labeled indices at even values and displays G-Force to the nearest tenth G. Clockwise (upward) rotation of the pointer corresponds to increasing G-Force while counter clockwise rotation corresponds to decreasing G-Force.

Figure RD-30: G-Force Indicator

The G-Force indicator includes positive and negative G telltales. The positive G telltale appears whenever positive G-Force exceeds 2.5G. The negative G telltale appears whenever negative G-force is less than 0G. Either G telltale is resettable by the user so long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded. If a G limit has been exceeded, the associated telltale can only be cleared by maintenance action. The G telltales automatically reset upon software initialization as long as the associated G limit has not been exceeded.

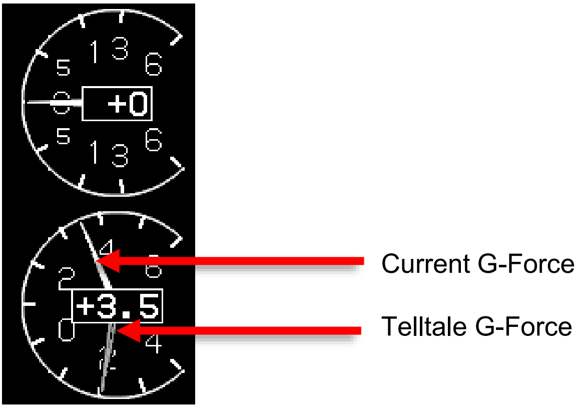
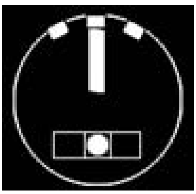


Figure RD-31: G-Force Telltale Indication

RD 1.16. Turn Rate Indicator



The turn rate indicator is displayed below the airspeed display. This standard "turn needle" displays marks representing a standard rate turn. The full scale for the turn needle is beyond the standard rate turn mark. This allows the user to fly a standard rate turn. The "balance ball" is driven from accelerometers within the AHRS.

Figure RD-32: Turn Rate Indicator

RD 1.17. Timer Indication

A countdown or count-up timer can be displayed above the large aircraft reference marks when selected through the menu as described in Section 3 Display Symbology.

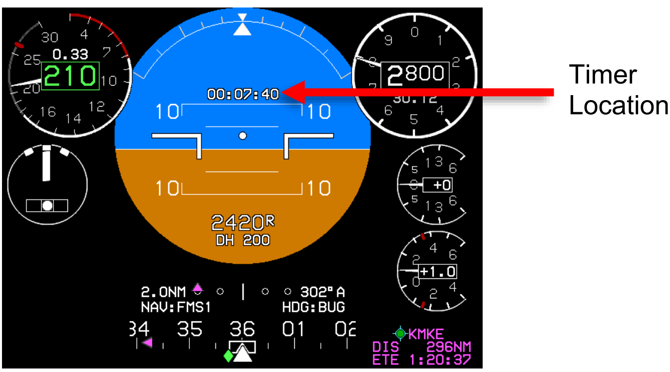


Figure RD-33: Timer Indication

RD 1.18. Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

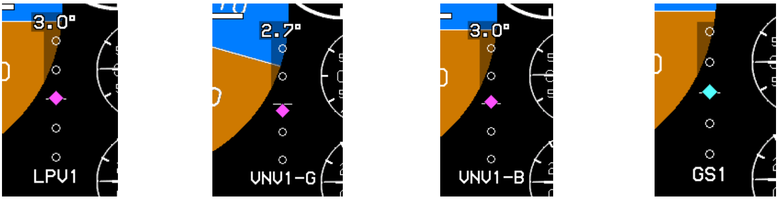


Figure RD-34: Vertical Deviation Indicator (VDI)

The vertical deviation indicator (VDI) on the right side displays vertical deviation for the selected vertical navigation source for displaying descent profile but disappears in unusual attitude mode.

1) **LPV Mode and LPV1 or LPV2**: When descending on final approach segment in LPV mode. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LPV minima regardless of temperature.

2) **LNAV Mode and VNAV1-G or VNAV2-G**: When descending on final approach segment in LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LNAV or RNP modes when using GPS VNAV. GPS altitude used to generate VDI; pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima regardless of temperature.

3) **LNAV Mode and VNV1-B or VNV2-B**: Default FMS barometric VNAV mode. Using barometric altitude to generate the VDI, pilot may follow guidance to LNAV minima as long as the specified temperature is within limits.

4) **GS1 or GS2**: Glide slope receiver #1 or #2 as indicated. Pilot follows guidance to published barometric DH.

Table RD-4: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior

Source (Below VDI)	Behavior/Condition	Pointer Color
FMS	Conforms to the VDI display	Magenta
Glide slope	Source must be valid when a valid glide slope is received.	Magenta
LPV or VNAV mode	Source is valid if: On VNAV descent segments when approaching top of descent point to provide descent anticipation as long as the following are true: 1) On VNAV descent segments; or	Magenta

Table RD-4: Vertical Deviation Indicator Behavior		
Source (Below VDI)	**Behavior/Condition**	**Pointer Color**
	2) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is enabled, on VNAV level segments; or 3) If the vertical deviations on VNAV level segments option is disabled, when approaching the Top of Descent point to provide descent anticipation; Providing: 1) Aircraft is within 2NM or twice the full scale deflection for the mode of flight (whichever is greater) of the lateral navigation route; and 2) Aircraft is in TO operation relative to the active VNAV waypoint (i.e., considering VNAV offsets); and 3) If on the final approach segment, aircraft is within a 35° lateral wedge of the azimuth reference point (either GARP or MAWPT + 10,000 ft.).	
LPV,VNV-G	During GPS LON or GPS VLON	Pointer and Text Color Amber (Yellow)

Figure RD-35: VDI Color during GPS/SBAS LON or VLON

RD 1.19. Course Deviation Indicator

NAV Source VLOC1

NAV Source FMS1 with LON

Figure RD-36: Course Deviation Indicator

The order of precedence of type accuracy used by the system from highest to lowest is as follows:

1) Manual RNP: The user may override the automatic accuracy types by setting a manual RNP value.

2) Automatic RNP: These are based upon RNP values, which are coded in the navigation database. The EFIS looks at the leg coding on all legs other than those on the final approach segment. On the final approach segment, the EFIS looks at the “Level of Service” record for those approaches, which have RNP transition legs, and then goes to LP or LPV minima for the final approach.

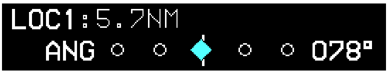
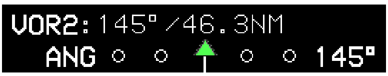
3) Default TSO-C146C operation: As specified as per Table RD-5 for enroute, terminal, and various approach modes according to the Level of Service record.

Table RD-5: CDI Behavior and Color

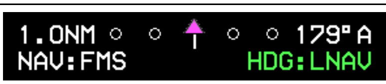
CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
Full Scale Deflection	Flash
Slaved to GPS/SBAS	Scale is appropriate FSD value for mode of flight: **Enroute**: ±2NM **From Enroute to Terminal**: Change from ±2 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD over distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering terminal mode. **From Terminal to Enroute**: Change from ±1 NM FSD to ±2 NM FSD over

Table RD-5: CDI Behavior and Color

CDI Pointer and Condition	Color or Behavior
	distance of 1 NM; start transition when entering enroute mode. **From Terminal to Approach**: If VTF, switch immediately. Otherwise, change from ±1 NM FSD to approach FSD over distance of 2 NM; start transition at 2 NM from FAWP. **From Approach to Terminal**: Change to ±1 NM. **From Departure to Terminal**: If initial leg is aligned with runway, change from ±0.3 NM FSD to ±1 NM FSD at the turn initiation point of the first fix in the departure procedure.
CDI images below represent installations with Genesys/S-TEC DFCS integrated autopilot or without an autopilot enabled.	
	Nav source FMS1 GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON) amber (yellow) OBS manual mode with a “FROM” indication.
	Nav source FMS1 GPS/SBAS (with GPS LON) amber (yellow) OBS automatic mode with a “TO” indication.
Normal conditions	Magenta
In sources other than FMS	Angular scale annunciation
	Nav source is localizer (course error exceeds 105°). Reverse sensing with distance to approach threshold
Lateral deviations in failed state	Red “X” displayed over CDI
	Nav source FMS1 in auto waypoint sequencing mode
	Nav source FMS1 in manual OBS mode with a “TO’ indication. Waypoint sequencing is suspended.
	Nav source Fms1 in manual OBS mode with a “FROM” indication. Waypoint sequencing is suspended.

Table RD-5: CDI Behavior and Color	
CDI Pointer and Condition	**Color or Behavior**
	Nav source FMS1 in automatic OBS mode with true north mode. Only applicable for CDI in this GPS/SBAS navigation source.
	Nav source VLOC1
	Nav source VLOC2
	Nav source VOR1 with "TO" indication. Currently on a bearing 289°/14.6NM to the VOR
	Nav source VOR1 with a "FROM" indication on a bearing of 344° to the VOR
	Nav source VOR2 with "TO" indication on a bearing of 145°/46.3NM to the VOR

When laterally integrated with an autopilot, either fully integrated Genesys/S-TEC DFCS or partially integrated through use of the NAV/APR mode discrete input with either the NAV, LOC, APPR or BC modes engaged, the selected navigation source is annunciated green to indicate that the autopilot is laterally coupled to he selected navigation source. Otherwise, the selected navigation source is annunciated white.

Table RD-6: CDI Lateral Mode Indication	
CDI Pointer and Condition*	**Color or Behavior**
	Heading bug sub-mode guidance
	LNAV sub-mode guidance
	Failure Sub-Mode
* Installations with an analog autopilot enabled.	

RD 1.20. Vertical Deviation Indicator (EFIS Coupled)

When vertically integrated with Genesys S/TEC DFCS enabled through glide slope mode discrete input with glide slope mode engaged, the selected vertical navigation source is green indicating the AP is vertically coupled. Otherwise, the source is white.

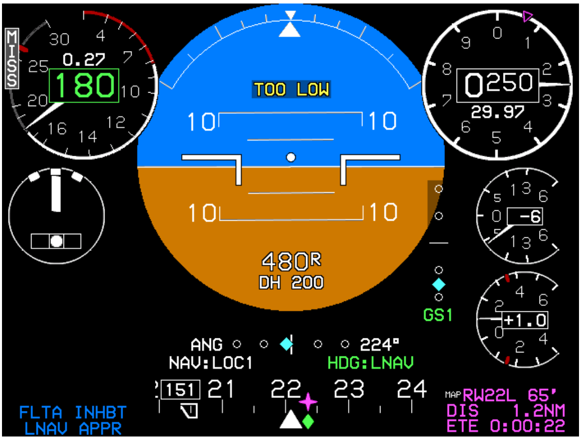


Figure RD-37: EFIS Coupled Vertically with Glide Slope Mode

When not decluttered, the PFD displays the active navigation route or manual OBS course and VDI path in conventional analog navigation symbology. See Section 7 IFR Procedures for details.

RD 1.21. Active Waypoint and Waypoint Identifier

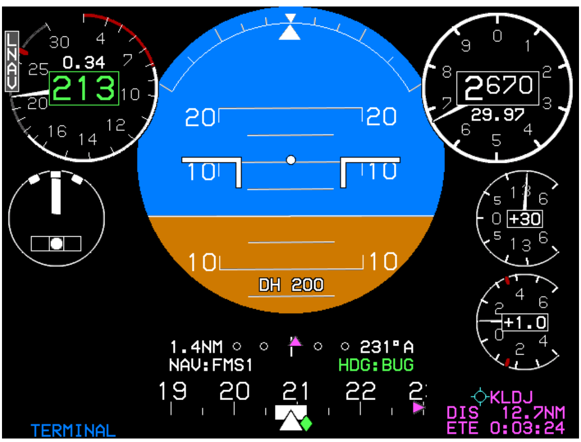


Figure RD-38: Active Waypoint

See Section 3 Display Symbology for more information.

RD 2. GPS Failure

GPS degrades or fails because of loss of satellite information or GPS equipment failure. When SBAS provides the integrity, the IDU provides a loss of integrity (LOI) caution within two seconds if the current horizontal protection level (HPL) exceeds the horizontal alert level (HAL).

LOI caution appears when there is no integrity monitoring and disappears when it is restored.

Figure RD-39: Loss of Integrity (LOI)

Further GPS degradation causes the EFIS to lose GPS updating of aircraft position, ground speed, and ground track, and the ability to calculate the wind information.

1) 

(Loss of Integrity) displayed with no time delay.

2) HPL > HAL for the phase of flight currently in. Position is still presented based upon a GPS navigation solution.

3) 

(Loss of Navigation) displayed with no time delay of the onset of the following:

   a) The absence of power;

   b) Equipment malfunction or failure;

   c) The presence of a condition lasting five seconds or more where there are an inadequate number of satellites to compute position solution;

   d) Fault detects a position failure that cannot be excluded within time-to-alert when integrity is provided by FDE;

   e) HPL > HAL on the final approach segment. Genesys Aerosystems EFIS does not transition to DR navigation at this stage. A GPS navigation solution is still presented; and

   f) Where HPL > HAL on the final approach segment, this position may still be satisfactory for GPS navigation. For example, an HPL of 0.31NM exists, which means as soon as a transition to terminal mode occurs, all alerts disappear. This is significantly important during a wind change if the system had been in a DR mode.

NOTE:

At any time, view HFOM on the FAULTS page to see the system-reported accuracy.

4) Loss of Vertical Navigation

Figure RD-40: Loss of Vertical Navigation (VLON)

RD 3. PFD Failure Mode 0

Figure RD-41: PFD Failure Mode 0 GPS, ADC and AHRS Normal

RD 3.1. PFD Failure Mode 1

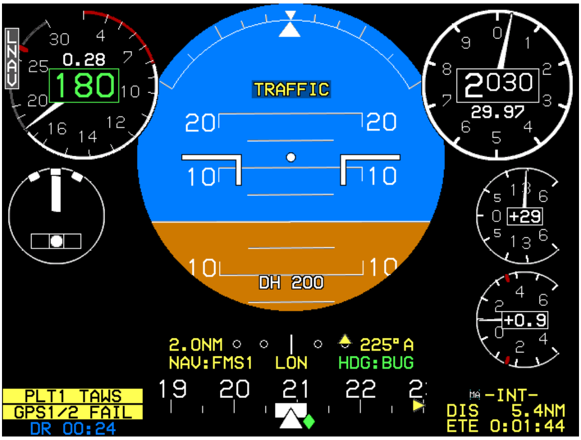


Figure RD-42: PFD Failure Mode 1 GPS/SBAS Failed, ADC and AHRS Normal

RD 3.2. PFD Failure Mode 2

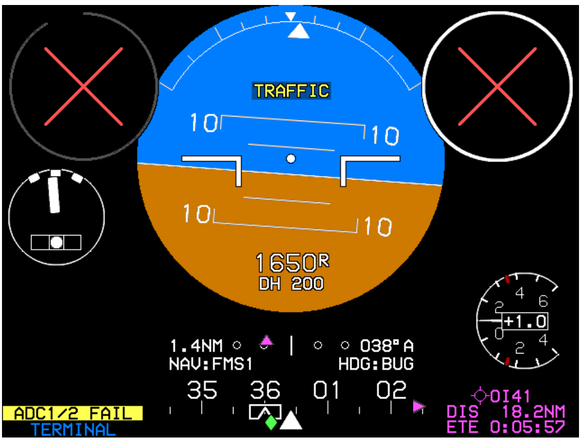


Figure RD-43: PFD Failure Mode 2 ADC Failed, GPS/SBAS and AHRS Normal

Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

SAR 1. Search and Rescue (SAR) Patterns

When enabled by EFIS system limits, the pilot can create one SAR pattern at an eligible flight plan waypoint and only one waypoint within the active flight plan. The current position of the aircraft is determined relative to that desired path for lateral deviation for display on the GPS/SBAS CDI. In most cases, the IDU auto-sequences from one waypoint to the next similar to all other flight plan sequencing along the flight path. All images in this appendix represent an Airplane with V_{MO}/M_{MO} is configured in EFIS limits.

The SAR option is available for any waypoint except the following:

1) Suppressed waypoint
2) Skipped waypoint
3) Manual termination waypoint
4) Waypoint that is part of an IFR or VFR approach
5) Holding pattern waypoint
6) SAR pattern exit waypoint
7) Waypoint that begins a departure procedure
8) Parallel offset entry or exit waypoint
9) Dynamic termination waypoint (altitude termination, DME termination, radial termination or intercept termination)

SAR patterns can be created in the **RUN DEMONSTRATOR/TRAINING PROGRAM** Ground Maintenance Page or the EFIS Training Tool. After the SAR pattern is created and saved, that flight plan can be uploaded to any IDU or all IDUs in an aircraft for later use.

The desired flight path is created from a sequence of straight, left, and right turning leg segments to provide smooth skyway, GPS/SBS CDI, and lateral autopilot guidance. SAR patterns are drawn at the lowest of holding or procedure speed.

NOTE:

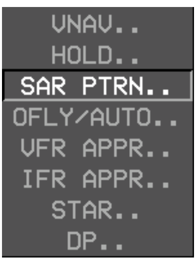
LOCK (L4) only appears on the EFIS Training Tool or Ground-Based Utility in GMF mode. This feature is never found on the IDUs installed in the aircraft operating in the flight mode.

Flight plans can be saved with a SAR between waypoints or at the end of the flight plan. When a saved flight plan includes an SAR pattern, the following route appears as:

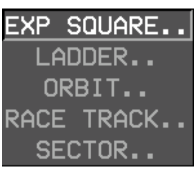
SAR 1.1. SAR Pattern Step-by-Step Procedures

To select a SAR pattern, follow these step-by-step procedures. Refer to subsequent sections for additional details and examples for the individual patterns.

1) Press **ACTV (L2)** and rotate ❶ to desired eligible waypoint to begin SAR pattern creation process and push to enter.



2) Press **ACTV (L2)** and then rotate ❶ to **SAR PTRN..** and push to enter.



3) Rotate ❶ to one of the five SAR pattern options and push to enter. *Pattern includes the option to select individual legs within the SAR pattern for navigation guidance.

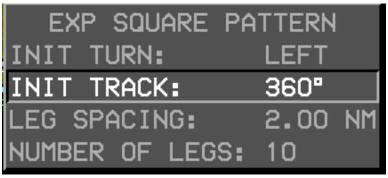
   a) Expanding Square*

   b) Rising Ladder*

   c) Orbit

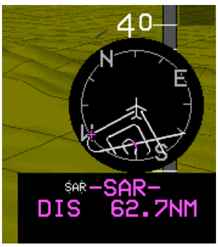
   d) Race Track

   e) Sector Search*



4) Rotate ❶ through each step, create the desired parameters (e.g., direction, track, leg length, leg spacing, and number of legs), and push to enter.

   See following sub-sections for more details for parameters of each pattern.



5) After SAR pattern is created, it appears on the MAP, MINI MAP, and active flight plan.

6) To select a SAR pattern individual legs rotate ❶ to SAR pattern EXIT WPT as it appears in magenta and push to enter.

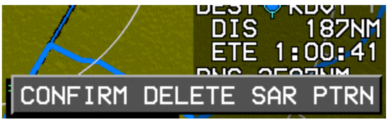
7) Rotate ❶ to **SAR SGMNT..** and push to enter.

8) Rotate ❶ to desired leg for navigation guidance.

9) Control the aircraft to new magenta line for maneuvering to begin following navigation guidance.

See § SAR 2, SAR 3, and SAR 6 for examples of selected segments.

10) To delete existing SAR pattern, Press **ACTV (L2)**. Rotate ❶ to SAR pattern and press **DELETE (R3)**.



11) Push ❶ to confirm.

SAR 2. Expanding Square Pattern

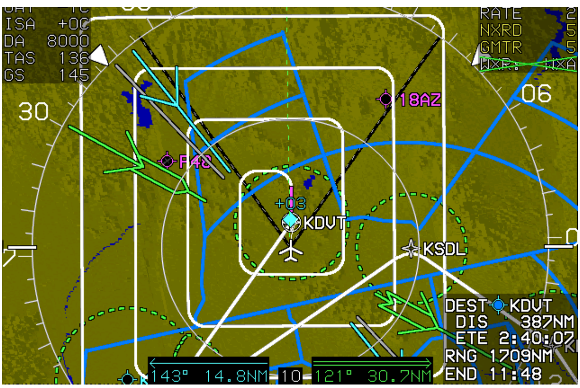


Figure SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern

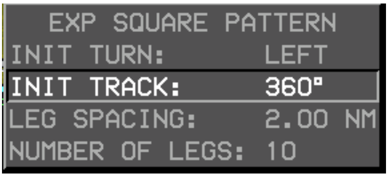


Figure SAR-2: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-1: Expanding Square Pattern Parameters		
Parameters	**Increments (Range)/Direction**	**Notes**
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)	
Number of Legs	1 to 50	

Figure SAR-3: Expanding Square Pattern-Turn and Leg

Figure SAR-4: Expanding Square Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

SAR 3. Rising Ladder Pattern

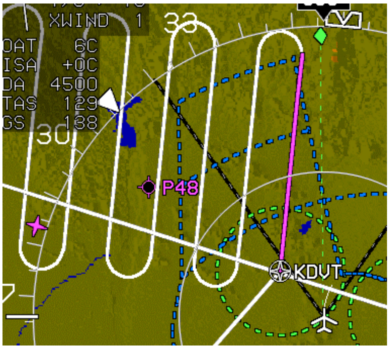


Figure SAR-5: Rising Ladder Pattern

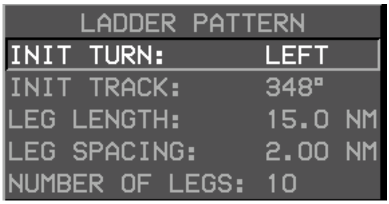


Figure SAR-6: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-2: Rising Ladder Pattern Parameters		
Parameters	**Increments (Range)/Direction**	**Notes**
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 25NM)	
Number of Legs	1 to 50	

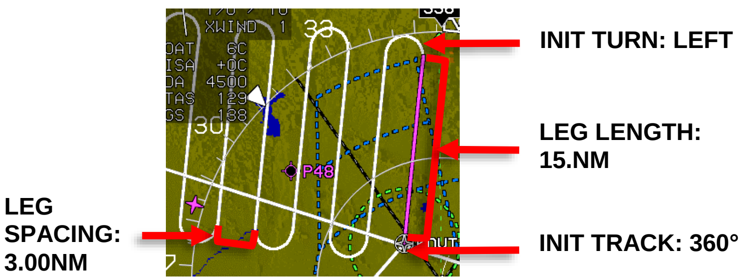


Figure SAR-7: Rising Ladder Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track

Figure SAR-8: Rising Ladder Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

SAR 4. Orbit Pattern

The SAR exit waypoint is a duplicate of the previous waypoint. This SAR pattern is unique in that the navigation path never goes through the waypoint. The path is a circle around the waypoint intercepted along tangents. With no other menus displayed on the PFD, **CONT (L2)** appears to allow for continuing out of the orbit and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.

Figure SAR-9: Orbit Pattern

Figure SAR-10: Orbit Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-3: Orbit Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction
Turn Direction	Left or Right
Radius	0.25NM (0.25NM to 10NM)

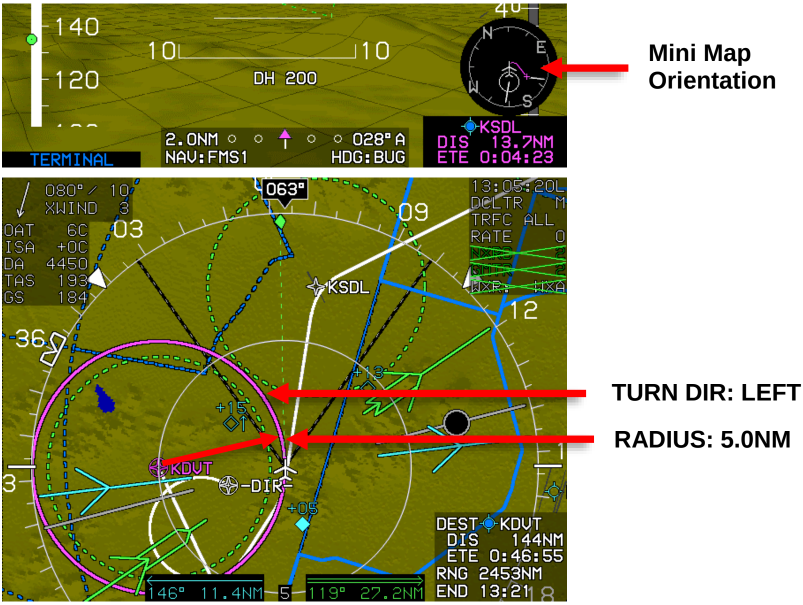
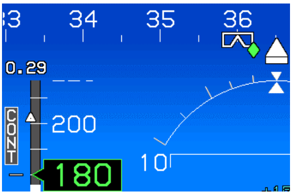


Figure SAR-11: Orbit Pattern-Turn and Radius

SAR 5. Race Track Pattern

Figure SAR-12: Race Track Pattern



With no other menus displayed, **CONT (L2)** appears for continuing out of the racetrack and normal sequencing in the active flight plan.

Figure SAR-13: Race Track Pattern CONT (L2)

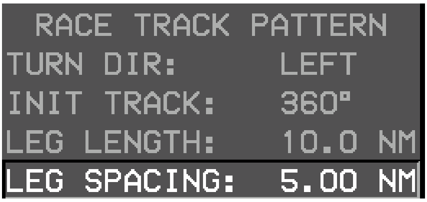


Figure SAR-14: Race Track Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-4: Race Tack Pattern Parameters		
Parameters	**Increments (Range)/Direction**	**Notes**
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	
Leg Spacing	0.25NM (0.25 to 10NM)	

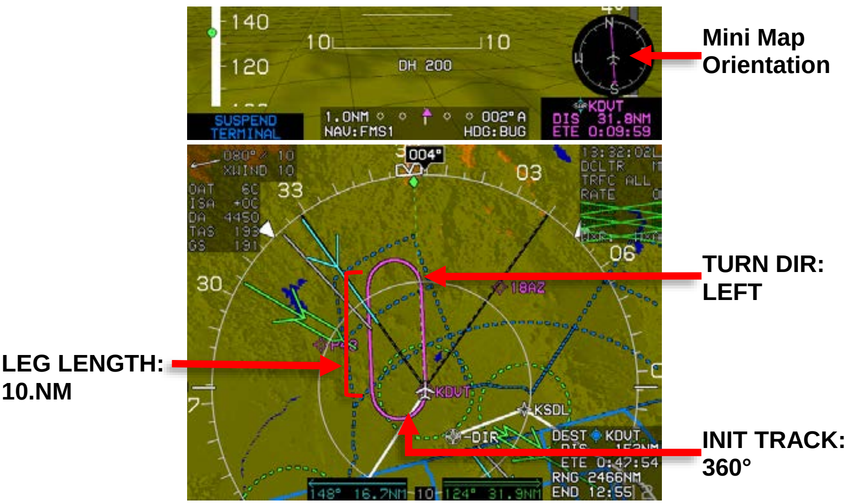


Figure SAR-15: Race Track Pattern-Turn, Leg, and Track

SAR 6. Sector Search Pattern

Figure SAR-16: Sector Search Pattern

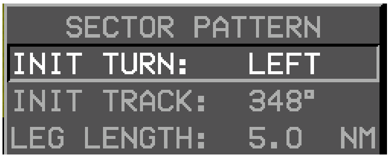


Figure SAR-17: Sector Search Pattern Parameters

Table SAR-5: Sector Search Pattern Parameters

Parameters	Increments (Range)/Direction	Notes
Initial Turn	Left or Right	
Initial Track	Outbound from previous waypoint in 1° increments	Magnetic or True
Leg Length	0.5 NM (1NM to 100NM)	

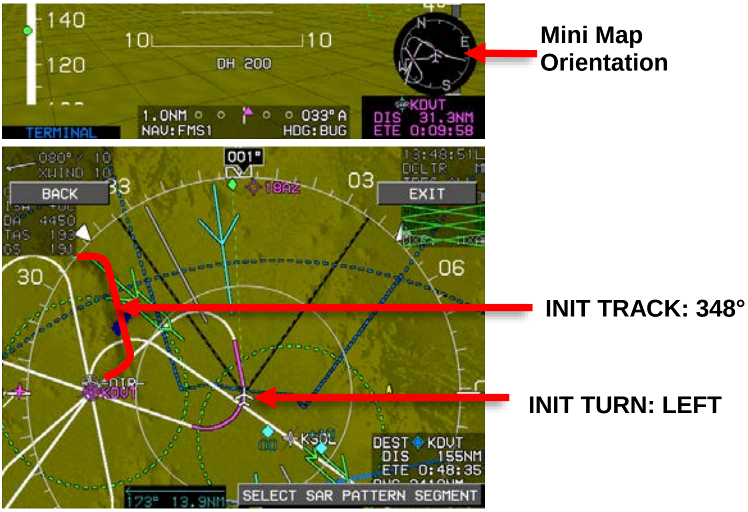


Figure SAR-18: Race Track Pattern-Turn and Track

Figure SAR-19: Sector Search Pattern-Individual Leg Selected

AGL Indication (Rad Alt, GPS Alt, Baro Alt) – Display of altitude above the ground, with designation of the altitude source as R (radio altitude), G (GPS SBAS/WAAS geodetic altitude less local ground elevation), or B (barometric altitude less local ground elevation).

Air Data and Ground Speed – Display of density altitude, outside air temperature, ISA temperature deviation, true airspeed, and ground speed.

Airspeed Information – Display of airspeed is the indicated airspeed tape and airspeed readout with associated data. The airspeed function includes color-coded caution bands for minimum and maximum speeds based on V-speeds set in the EFIS limits.

Altitude Information – Display of altitude information is the altitude tape and altitude readout.

Approach Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot approach mode signals are course error output, the left/right deviation signal (localizer output) and the up/down deviation signal (glide slope output). Signals are based on the selected ILS source.

Attitude Information – Display of attitude information includes pitch and roll. The bank angle scale may be set to auto-declutter by the user when the bank angle is less than 2.8°. The pitch ladder is limited to ±10° from the flight path marker or aircraft waterline, whichever is greater. The unusual attitude display appears when the aircraft pitch exceeds ± 30° or bank angle exceeds 65°.

Autosets – Automatically selects features or settings.

Azimuth – Angle between the north vector and the perpendicular projection of the star down onto the horizon. Usually measured in degrees (°).

Barometric Altimetry – Measurement of altitude based on the atmosphere (pressure and temperature).

Barometric Correction – Display and altitude correction for local barometric pressure.

Bezel – Faceplate of the IDU comprised of buttons along the sides and knobs along the bottom.

Chroma – Colorfulness relative to the brightness.

Conformally – Angle-preserving. Example: Traffic, terrain, and obstructions appear conformally on the PFD.

Course Deviation Indicator – Display of course deviation from selected course, including a To-From indicator and source of information.

Critical Flight Phase – Phase(s) of flight where the failure mode would result in a hazard condition using flight phases. For example, failure of ILS would only be a hazard condition during approach and landing.

Crossfill – Transfer of data and information between IDUs in a dual system with two PFDs configured.

Cross-linked – Synchronized across both pilot and co-pilot sides.

Datalinked – Display of received data such as weather or traffic from peripheral systems such as ADS-B.

dBZ – Decibel relative to radar reflectivity (Z). Composite reflectivity shows the highest dBZ (strongest reflected energy) at all elevations. Unlike base reflectivity, which only shows reflected energy at a single elevation scan of the radar, composite reflectivity displays the highest reflectivity of ALL elevation scans. If there is heavier precipitation in the atmosphere over an area of lighter precipitation (i.e. rain has yet to reach the ground), the composite reflectivity displays the stronger dBZ level.

Deadband – Neutral zone where no action or changes are made.

Directional Scale (Compass Rose or Arc) and Ownship Symbol – Display of general directional information. All MFD pages include a form of the compass rose with current heading pointer and aircraft "ownship" symbol.

Display of ADF – Display of single and or dual ADF bearing information in the form of an RMI needle (when enabled in EFIS limits).

Display of Glide Slope – Display of Glide Slope 1 or Glide Slope 2 on the PFD VDI or MFD HSI page.

Display of Lightning Cell Information – Display of lightning information from a WX-500 system and shown in the form of lightning cells. The user may show individual lightning strike data by selecting the dedicated WX-500 page.

Display of Localizer – Display of VLOC1 or VLOC2 in the form of horizontal deviation dots and deviation.

Display of Marker Beacon – Display of outer, middle, and inner marker beacons in the form of a color-coded circle with the corresponding letter 

.

Display of Traffic Information – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, the PFD and MFD display traffic information in two formats. One format is via traffic symbols as shown on the PFD, MFD Map page, and Traffic page. The second format is with the traffic pop-up thumbnail display showing traffic position in a full 360° format on the PFD.

Display of VOR RMI – Display of VOR1 and VOR2 bearing in the form of RMI pointers.

Dot – (CDI scale referenced) represents an additional 2° for VOR and 1.25° for Localizer.

EFIS-Coupled – The EFIS is coupled to an autopilot and controls the lateral and or vertical modes of the autopilot.

Failure Condition Hazard Description – A description of the failure mode to be analyzed.

Flight Director (Selectable Function) – Display of flight director in a single or dual cue format when selected for display on the PFD.

Flight Path Marker (Velocity Vector) – Display of aircraft's actual flight path, showing where the aircraft is going as opposed to where the aircraft is pointed.

Flight Plan and Navigation Display – Display of the active GPS SBAS/WAAS-based flight plan, including course line, waypoints, ground track, glide range, projected path, altitude capture predictor, approach procedure, missed approach procedure, and the aircraft present position on the active leg.

Geodetic – Set of reference points used to locate places on the earth.

Geodesic – A generalization of the notion of a straight line to curved spaces. The shortest route between two points on the Earth's surface.

Geoid – Global mean sea level.

G-Force – Indications to show the G-force on the aircraft.

Glide Slope Sidelobes – False glide slope signals.

GPS SBAS/WAAS Course Deviation Indicator (CDI) – Display of CDI relative to selected course, either automatic based on active flight plan or manual based on user-selected OBS when in OBS manual mode. When following an FMS path, the bearing indication is the instantaneous desired bearing to follow the magenta line.

GPS SBAS/WAAS Functions – The EFIS meets the GPS SBAS/WAAS navigation and flight planning/management requirements of TSO-C146c (RTCA/DO-229D) for Class Gamma 3 equipment. These functions include navigation, flight planning (function select, flight plan generation and editing, selected waypoints, user waypoints, etc.), path definition including approach and departure paths, GPS altitude, dead reckoning, navigation modes with automatic mode switching, loss of navigation monitoring, loss of integrity monitoring, etc. The database used with the GPS SBAS/WAAS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Ground-Based Utility – The compatible program used for the creation, deletion, editing, or reversing of locked flight plans, routes and User Waypoints for later uploading into the IDU.

Heading Bug – Display and control of selected heading using a bug. May be used to drive heading bug output to autopilot for HSI-based heading mode or visual reference.

Heading Display – Display of heading with directional scale is provided at the top of the PFD in SVS mode and as defined in section 3. This is the same heading information provided on the ND or MFD.

Heading Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot heading mode signal is a heading error output based on the difference between the EFIS desired heading and the actual aircraft heading. The EFIS desired heading is either the user-selected heading bug or a heading designed to achieve and maintain the active GPS-based flight plan.

Hectopascal (hPa) – International System of Units (SI) unit measure of pressure, equals one millibar (mbar).

Horizontal Situation Indicator (Selectable Function) – Display of GPS, VOR or localizer and glide slope deviation when selected for display on the ND, or MFD top or bottom areas.

HOTAS – Hands On Throttle And Stick

Inches of Mercury (inHg) – Unit of atmospheric pressure used in the United States. Named for the use of mercurial barometers which equate height of a column of mercury with air pressure. IN HG

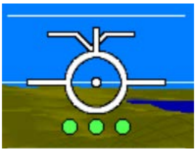
Inhibit – Prevention of activity or occurrence. Examples are: XFILL INHBT, TAWS INHBT, FPM INHBT, FLTA INHBT, and TAS INHBT.

Integrated Peripherals – Internal devices of the essential unit.

Ionosphere – Region of the atmosphere between the stratosphere and exosphere, 50 to 250 miles (80 to 400 km) above the surface of the earth.

International Standard Atmosphere (ISA) – Standard model of the change of pressure, temperature, density, and viscosity over a wide range of altitudes or elevations.

Landing Gear Indication – When enabled on retractable landing gear aircraft PFD shows indication of landing gear extended.



Level of Service – Standard Positioning Service (SPS) for general civil use. With Selective Availability (SA), SPS provides predictable accuracies of 100m in the horizontal plane and 146m in the vertical plan 95% of the time. Without (SA) SPS, accuracy would be approximately 25m in the horizontal plane and 43m in the vertical plane 95% of the time. ARINC-424 "Level of Service" indicates a particular type approach minimum is approved, e.g. LP APPR, LPV APPR, RNP: 0.10A RNP: 15.0A.

Lubber Line – Line marked on the compass showing the direction straight ahead.

Mach Display – Display of Mach number when the aircraft is traveling at or above 0.35 Mach. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file.

Magnetic Declination (MAGVAR) – Sometimes called magnetic variation; the angle between magnetic north and true north.

Map Data – Display of map data, including airspace, VFR/IFR airports, VHF navaids such as VOR/NDB/DME, H Airway and L Airway, and display range rings.

Menu Functions – The EFIS includes menus to access functions on both the PFD and the MFD.

Mesocyclonic – Contains a vortex of air within a convective; air rises and rotates around a vertical axis, often in the same direction as low pressure systems.

Millibar (mbar) – Metric (not SI) unit of pressure, one thousandth of a bar, which is about equal to the atmospheric pressure on Earth at sea level - 1013 millibars. MBAR

Miscompare – Disparity of data or information. Examples are:

ALT MISCOMP, GS MISCOMP, LOC MISCOMP, ATT MISCOMP, HDG MISCOMP, PLT MISCOMP, CPLT MISCOMP, GPS MISCOMP, IAS MISCOMP, RALT MISCOMP, and BARO MISCOMP.

NavData® – Jeppesen's aeronautical database to navigate the global airspace system.

Navigation Display – Display of active waypoint, bearing to waypoint, and ground track based on active flight plan. The user may also select flight plan information as a mini map (thumbnail map). These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS SBAS/WAAS functions not the PFD functions.

Navigation Log – Display of navigation information based on active flight plan, including next waypoint, destination, estimated time remaining, and fuel totalizer-based range and endurance. This function may be deselected by a setting in the IDU configuration (limits) file. These functions are analyzed as part of the GPS SBAS/WAAS functions not the MFD functions.

Navigation Mode Signal Output – Conventional autopilot Navigation mode signals are the course error output and the left-right deviation signals. Course error output is based on the difference between the EFIS selected course (OBS) and the actual aircraft heading. These signals are based on the selected navigation signal (VOR, LOC, TAC, ADF or GPS).

Nondirectional – Functions in all directions.

Nanoteslas (nT) – A unit of measurement of the strength of the magnetic field. Earth's strongest magnetic field is located at the poles, and the weakest field is near the equator.

Obstructions Display – Obstructions beyond the greater of 8.5 NM or the current TAWS FLTA range in any cardinal direction are not depicted. Obstructions whose tops are lower than 2000 feet below aircraft altitude are not depicted. Obstructions whose tops are within 2000 feet but at or below aircraft altitude are depicted in amber. Obstructions whose tops are above aircraft altitude are depicted in deep red.

Omnibearing – Magnetic bearing of an omni-range station.

Offset – When referring to parallel track of an active flight plan, "offset" implies the distance paralleling the original track. When referring to VNAV altitudes, "offset" refers to the distance before or after the waypoint the VNAV altitude must be reached. When referring to time UTC offset (local) refers to the user-selected time.

Ownship – Principal eye-point; referring to icon of aircraft represented on PFD mini map/traffic map or MFD (ND), HSI, Map, Traffic, WXR-RDR, WX-500 Lightning, or Datalink pages.

Pitch Limit Indicator – The pitch limit indicator first appears above the applicable reference symbol (either the FPM or the large aircraft symbol reference marks) and converges upon the applicable reference symbol as indicated airspeed decreases. Pitch Limit Indicator Appearance Limits: 1-G $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ or $\mathbf{V_{S1}}$ corrected for G-loading.

Projected Path (Noodle) – Navigation Display (ND) projected; curving path based upon the aircraft bank angle and ground speed used effectively to assist in course interception and making small adjustments to bank angle for proper roll out.

Q-Routes – Published RNAV routes, including Q-Routes and T-Routes, can be flight planned for use by the Genesys EFIS, subject to any limitations or requirements noted on enroute charts, in applicable advisory circulars, or by NOTAM. RNAV routes are depicted in blue on aeronautical charts and are identified by the letter "Q" or "T" followed by the airway number, e.g., Q35, T-205. Published RNAV routes are RNAV-2 except when specifically charted as RNAV-1.

QFE – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying height above a reference elevation (e.g., airport or runway threshold).

QNE – Standard barometric setting (29.92 inHg or 1013 mbar) used to display pressure attitude for flight above the transition attitude.

QNH – Barometric setting that results in the altimeter displaying altitude above mean sea level at the reporting station.

Recency – State of occurrence, appearance, or origin.

Selection and Display of Selected Course – Omnibearing Select (OBS) function for the user to select the course for navigation. Selected course is displayed for reference.

Settable V-Speeds, Targets – The user may set certain V-speeds for reference during flight found in two categories, TAKEOFF and APPROACH. TAKEOFF speeds are V_1, V_R, V_2 and V_{ENR} (as applicable). APPROACH speeds are V_{REF} and V_{APP}.

Side in Command – Side of aircraft control responsible for its operation. This display of steady green arrow in the center of the PFD mode annunciation area is displayed on Dual-sided systems only to show which side is commanding the autopilot.

Skipped Waypoint – A skipped waypoint is a waypoint associated with a dynamic termination leg with a zero length. These are either:

1) An altitude termination leg when current aircraft altitude is above the termination altitude; or

2) System-created (i.e., not NavData® specified) intercept to a “Course to a Fix” leg where there is insufficient distance to calculate an intercept heading.

Skyway VNAV/LNAV Guidance (Synthetic Vision) – Display of GPS-based active navigation route, flight plan, procedure, or OBS course in a three-dimensional series of skyway boxes. Also known as Highway in the Sky (HITS).

Slip Indicator – Display of aircraft lateral accelerations via an integral slip/skid indicator function. The slip indicator is a rectangle just below the heading pointer that moves left and right to indicate the lateral acceleration sensed by the AHRS in the same manner as the ball in a mechanical slip indicator.

Strikefinder – Lightning detector system (WX-500) connected to EFIS and enabled through Optional Sensor Settings.

Suppressed Waypoint – A suppressed waypoint (designated by brackets) is an airport associated with an IFR or VFR approach procedure.

Symbology – Use of symbols.

T-Routes – T-Routes are available for use by GPS or GPS/SBAS equipped aircraft from 1,200 feet above the surface (or in some instances higher) up to but not including 18.000 feet MSL. T-Routes are depicted on enroute low altitude charts and considered to include the same attributes of Low altitude airways in the Genesys Aerosystems EFIS declutter menus.

Terrain Display (PFD Artificial Horizon) – Conformal display of surrounding terrain presented with the artificial horizon, shown in the correct scale and perspective for the aircraft’s current position and altitude. Includes conformal display of known runway locations, direction, scale, and perspective based on aircraft’s current position and altitude.

Terrain Display and TAWS– Display of terrain, including identification and annunciation of threatening terrain in accordance with Terrain Awareness Warning System (TAWS) requirements. Coloring scheme for SVS-TAWS PFD and MAP has been simplified as follows:

Terrain at or below 100 feet less than aircraft altitude – Olive Shades

Terrain above 100 feet less than aircraft altitude – Brown Shades

TAWS FLTA Caution Terrain – Amber (Yellow)

FLTA alerts – Amber and Red

Obstacles Below aircraft – Amber (Yellow)

Obstacles at and above aircraft – Red

When over water – Deep Blue

Threatening terrain is determined by the requirements of TAWS TSO-C151b. Threatening terrain is shaded amber (yellow) for caution situations or shaded red for warning situations per TSO-C151b. TAWS cautions and warnings are accompanied by an amber (yellow) or red flag and an aural annunciation. TAWS Class A, TAWS Class B, and TAWS Class C. The database used with the TAWS functions meets the integrity requirements of RTCA/DO-200A.

Time Indication – User-selected function for count-up or countdown timers, flight time, UTC Offset (local time).

Traffic Display – When integrated with an appropriate traffic system, traffic is shown using standard TCAS symbology showing relative position, altitude, climb/decent, and color. The user may also show traffic information by selecting the dedicated traffic display page.

Transmit-Enabled – IDU providing data to external sensors and generating aural alerts. IDUs depend upon intra-system communications to determine which IDU on a side takes over transmit-enabled responsibilities. Only one transmit-enabled per side, two transmit-enabled in a dual-side system, and a master PFD when considering aircraft limits. Any IDU may become transmit-enabled through auto reversionary means in the event of the PFD failing.

Vertical Speed Display – Display of altitude rate of change (vertical speed or climb rate).

V_{HOLD} (Holding Speed) – The aircraft's normal speed (in knots and configured in EFIS limits) for flying holding patterns. This value is used for calculating the turn radius of holding patterns.

V_{PROC} (Procedure Speed) – The aircraft's normal speed (in airspeed units and configured in EFIS limits) for flying instrument approaches (DPs, IAPs, STARs). This value is used for calculating the turn radius used for instrument procedure legs. This speed is not seen on the airspeed tape and only found in the aircraft speed settings inside the limits.

Warning, Caution, and Advisory Flags – All warnings, excluding time-critical warnings, activate the warning (red) light (if configured) and master caution light. All cautions, excluding time-critical cautions, activate the caution (yellow) light and master caution light. Once acknowledged, the flashing behavior stops, the audio alert is interrupted.

Waterline – Indication of the aircraft's longitudinal axis or waterline (attitude).

Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS) – Developed by Federal Aviation Administration to provide accurate positioning part of the Satellite Based Augmentation System (SBAS). Other countries have similar systems: Europe: European Geostationary Overlay System (EGNOS); Japan: MTSAT Satellite-based Augmentation System (MSAS); India: GPS Aided GEO Augmented Navigation system (GAGAN).

Wind Information – Display of wind direction, wind speed, and cross wind component.

Zulu – Display of Zulu time (based on GPS data).

64-000103-090A

To stay up to date with current Genesys product news and information, visit **https://genesys-aerosystems.com/support/warranty-information**.